PEARSON-LAWRENCE-RAYNOR

LATIN-I

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Jack Hallingsworth
10-1

INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LATIN I

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON

Formerly Principal of the Horace Mann School
Teachers College, Columbia University

LILLIE MARIA LAWRENCE

AND

NINA FRANCES RAYNOR

Instructors in Latin, Horace Mann School

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO
BOSTON ATLANTA

COPYRIGHT, 1929, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY
All rights reserved

P. L. R. LATIN I
E. P. 11

MADE IN U.S.A.

PREFACE

THIS book presents a progressive but practical course of study for the first year of Latin, following the major recommendations of The Classical Investigation. The following points of that report have been especially emphasized:

Syntax and Forms. The study of many forms and principles of syntax that are difficult and of infrequent use has been postponed until after the first year. This reduction of the amount of new material reduces the confusion of the beginner and insures a better mastery of the essentials. The material that is introduced, however, is not taught in a formal manner, but is presented in connection with an immediate use and is frequently and systematically reviewed.

Reading Material. Passages of connected Latin for translation are provided from the very beginning, and furnish the setting for the new syntax and forms that are taught in each chapter. The subject matter of these connected passages deals with such topics as the home life of the Romans, anecdotes and fables of Roman life and thought, traditions and dramatic events of Roman history, and stories from classical mythology.

The Relation of Latin to English. This book is unusually rich in material that shows the great contribution of Latin to English. Every chapter contains a section giving interesting comments on Latin words that have found their way into our language together with sentences that show the use of these related words in English expression. Several special chapters are devoted to the study of derivatives and of suffixes and prefixes. Directions to the pupil for keeping an individual notebook provide a practical method for organizing and preserving all this valuable information.

The various chapters into which the material is divided are in no sense lesson units. The authors believe it is impossible to

divide a beginner's book into such definite lesson units as will meet the varying conditions and differing degrees of pupil ability found in our schools. Almost all the chapters are organized in accordance with the following plan:

Preparation. This part teaches the new forms, the principles of syntax, and the vocabulary necessary for an intelligent and easy reading of the Latin passage that follows. This preparatory material comes first so that the pupil will not be overwhelmed with difficulties in his attempt to translate, for no pupil can develop good habits of translation when the obstacles to getting the thought are greater than he can reasonably be expected to surmount.

Connected Latin Passage. This is a passage of reasonable difficulty and generous length usually dealing with some worthwhile aspect of the life and times of the Romans.

Notes. These contain helps to translation and interesting comments on matters mentioned in the Latin passage.

Relation of Latin Words to English. This section gives valuable information concerning those Latin words of the chapter that have become a part of our language.

Exercises for Drill and Review. In this portion of the chapter are found exercises for fixing thoroughly in the pupils' minds the words, forms, and principles of syntax presented in the chapter.

In the selection of the basal vocabulary of this book the authors have availed themselves of the more important scholarly studies in this field. The 521 words that have been chosen are based upon Stephen A. Hurlbut's *Selected Latin Vocabularies* and Professor Gonzalez Lodge's *Vocabulary of High School Latin.* Careful comparison has also been made with Lindsay's *Study of the Thorndike Word List,* and with the word list issued by the College Entrance Examination Board.

The authors are deeply indebted to Professor Gonzalez Lodge of Teachers College, Columbia University, and to Mr. Royal A. Grosenbaugh, Head of the Latin Department, East Orange High School, New Jersey, for their valuable advice in planning this book and for their criticism of the manuscript.

CONTENTS

		PAGE
	INTRODUCTION	
I.	REASONS FOR STUDYING LATIN	xvii
II.	THE ROMANS	xix
III.	HOW ENGLISH HAS BEEN INFLUENCED BY LATIN	xxi
IV.	HOW LATIN IS PRONOUNCED	xxii
V.	HOW LATIN DIFFERS FROM ENGLISH	xxv
CHAPTER		
I.	OUR SCHOOLROOM. First Declension, Nominative Case, singular and plural, as Subject and as Predicate Noun. Agreement of Adjectives. Verbs **est** and **sunt**	1
II.	OUR SCHOOLROOM (*Continued*). First Declension, Genitive Case to denote Possession. Possessive Adjectives	7
III.	THE MAP OF EUROPE. First Declension, Ablative Case with preposition **in**. Vocative Case. Present Tense of **sum**	11
IV.	A ROMAN VILLA. First Declension, Accusative Case as Direct Object, and with preposition **ad**	18
V.	A ROMAN VILLA (*Continued*). First Conjugation, Present Indicative. Personal Endings. Present Stem	25
VI.	TWO ROMAN GIRLS. First Declension, Dative Case as Indirect Object. Summary of First Declension	32
VII.	REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES. Directions for Notebook	38
VIII.	A ROMAN SCHOOL. Second Declension, Masculine Nouns in **–us** and **–er**. Masculine form of Adjectives	43
IX.	A VISIT TO A ROMAN FARM. Second Declension, Neuter Nouns. Neuter Adjectives. Appositives	53
X.	A ROMAN HOUSE IN THE CITY. Second Declension, Nouns in **–ius** and **–ium**. Imperfect and Future Tenses of **sum**	61
XI.	ROMAN WARS. Summary of Nouns and Adjectives, First and Second Declensions. Ablative of Means	69
XII.	ENGLISH DERIVATIVES: LATIN WORD FORMATION. Noun Suffixes **–ia, –tia**; Adjective Suffixes **–idus, –icus, –ānus, –īnus, –īvus, –ōsus**	78
XIII.	REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES	82

CHAPTER		PAGE
XIV.	MARCUS TELLS HIS FRIENDS A STORY. Principal Parts of Verbs. Formation of Present, Perfect, and Participial Stems. First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative and Present Imperative	86
XV.	THE TEACHER TELLS HIS PUPILS A STORY (*Translation at Sight*). First Conjugation, Future Tense. Questions, use of **-ne, nōnne,** and **num.** Interrogative Pronoun **quis, quid.** Interrogative Adjective **quī, quae, quod**	94
XVI.	THE GODS OF ROME. First Conjugation, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses	102
XVII.	THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS. Place *in which, to which* and *from which*	111
XVIII.	A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS. Second Conjugation, Indicative Active, all Tenses, and Present Imperative	118
XIX.	REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES	128
XX.	ROMULUS AND REMUS. Suggestions for Translation. Latin Word Order. Third Declension, Nouns with Nominative like the Base	134
XXI.	THE SABINE WOMEN. Third Declension, Nominatives Formed by Modification of the Base. Ablative of Manner	144
XXII.	ENGLISH DERIVATIVES: LATIN WORD FORMATION. Noun Suffixes of the Third Declension, **-or, -tor** (**-sor**), **-tūdō, -tās, -tiō** (**-siō**)	152
XXIII.	THE VALOR OF HORATIUS. Third Declension, Vowel Stems. Ablative of Accompaniment	155
XXIV.	THE PUNISHMENT OF NIOBE. Passive Voice, First and Second Conjugations, Tenses on the Present Stem. Ablative of Personal Agent	164
XXV.	ROMAN ROADS. Passive Voice, First and Second Conjugations, Tenses on the Participial Stem	174
XXVI.	REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES	182
XXVII.	THE KINGS OF ROME AND BRUTUS THE LIBERATOR. The Relative Pronoun. Relative Subordinate Clauses	188
XXVIII.	PHAETHON DRIVES THE CHARIOT OF THE SUN. Adjectives of the Third Declension with Three Terminations. Ablative of Time	198
XXIX.	PHAETHON DRIVES THE CHARIOT OF THE SUN (*Concluded*). Adjectives of the Third Declension with Two Terminations. Dative with Special Adjectives	205

CHAPTER		PAGE
XXX.	English Derivatives: Latin Word Formation. Adjective Suffixes of the Third Declension, **–ōx, –āx, –ilis, –bilis, –īlis, –ālis, –āris.** The Punishment of Tarpeia (*Translation at Sight*)	212
XXXI.	Cincinnatus. Demonstrative Pronouns **hic, is, ille.** Causal Subordinate Clauses with **quod**	217
XXXII.	Review. English Derivatives	226
XXXIII.	Coriolanus. **Sum,** Tenses on the Perfect Stem, and Present Imperative. Conjugation of **possum.** Complementary Infinitive	232
XXXIV.	Castor and Pollux. Third Conjugation, Active and Passive. Temporal Subordinate Clauses with **dum**	241
XXXV.	Daedalus and Icarus. Third Conjugation, Verbs in **–iō**	252
XXXVI.	The Patriotic Devotion of the Decii. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. Possessive Adjectives	259
XXXVII.	Orpheus and Eurydice. Adjectives of Special Declension. Demonstrative Pronouns **īdem** and **ipse**	271
XXXVIII.	Review. English Derivatives	280
XXXIX.	Atalanta. Fourth Conjugation, Active and Passive. Ablative of Separation	286
XL.	The Sibylline Books. Numerals: Cardinals to 20. Ordinals to 10. Declension of **duo, trēs,** and **mīlia**	295
XLI.	The Roman Military System. Fourth Declension. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space	303
XLII.	The Devotion of Mettius Curtius. Fifth Declension. Conjugation of **volō** and **eō**	312
XLIII.	Review. English Derivatives	318
XLIV.	A Roman Triumph. Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of Comparatives. Use of **quam**	324
XLV.	The Courage of Mucius Scaevola. Comparison of Adjectives in **–er** and **–lis.** Ablative of Comparison	333
XLVI.	The Toga of Manhood. Ablative of Degree of Difference. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	340
XLVII.	Appius Claudius' Reply to Pyrrhus. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. Ablative of Specification	349
XLVIII.	Review. English Derivatives	357
XLIX.	The Integrity of Fabricius. Temporal Subordinate Clauses with **ubi, postquam, simul atque,** and **priusquam**	363

CHAPTER		PAGE
L.	The Punic Wars. Infinitives: Complementary, Objective, and Subjective	370
LI.	The Honor of Regulus. Genitive of the Whole, Conjugation of **nōlō** and **mālō**. Negative Commands. Conditional Subordinate Clauses with **sī** and **nisi**	380
LII.	The Gracchi. Expressions of Place without Prepositions. Locative Case. Adverbs of Place	389
LIII.	Review. English Derivatives	397
LIV.	Marius and Sulla. Infinitives, Formation of all Tenses. Concessive Subordinate Clauses with **etsī**	403
LV.	The Victories of Pompey. Indirect Statements	411
LVI.	English Derivatives: Latin Word Formation. Verb Prefixes **ab–, ad–, con–, in–, ex–, ob–, prae–, prō–, re–, sub–, trāns–**. Caesar's War in Gaul	419
LVII.	The Civil War of Caesar and Pompey. Summary of Subordinate Clauses	429
LVIII.	Augustus. Participles: Formation, Declension, and Agreement. Use of Participles as Equivalents of Subordinate Clauses	437
Appendix.	Tables of Declension, Conjugation, etc.; Summary of Rules of Syntax	451
Latin-English Vocabulary		485
English-Latin Vocabulary		504
Index		515

LIST OF PRINCIPAL ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
Interior of a Roman House (*Frontispiece*)	ii
Map of the Mediterranean World	xii–xiii
Map of Italy	xiv
Forum Rōmānum	xxviii
Villa Rōmāna	18
Lūdus Rōmānus	43
Domicilium Rōmānum (Roman House at Saratoga, New York)	61
Plan of the House of Pansa at Pompeii	66
Plan of a Roman Camp	72
Rōmānī Incolās Galliae Proeliō Superant	74
Porta Sebastiāna	78
Maison Carrée (A Roman Temple at Nîmes, France)	102
Plan of Rome and of the Forum	108

PAGE

Lūdī Gladiātōriī in Circō Māximō 111
Plan of the Circus Maximus 115
A Roman Amphitheatre at Nîmes, France 118
Quadrīgae circum Spīnam Currunt 122
View of the Roman Forum 128
Pāstor Rōmulum et Remum Videt 134
Fēminae Sabīnae Proelium Māgnō Dolōre Spectant 144
The Arch of the Emperor Constantine 152
Cūnctī Etrūscī cum Horātiō Sōlō Pūgnant 155
Niobē et Ūltima Fīlia 164
The Pont du Gard, near Nîmes, France 174
Brūtus Fīliōs Mortis Condemnat 188
Phaethōn Quadrīgās Sōlis Agitat 198
The Tarpeian Rock 212
Lēgātī Cincinnātum Dictātōrem Salūtant 222
"Serva, Cāre Coniūnx, Mātrem et Uxōrem Tuam" (Coriolanus) . . 232
Columnae Castoris et Pollūcis in Forō Rōmānō 241
Daedalus et Īcarus 252
Decius Sōlus in Mediōs Hostēs Sē Iacit 259
Orpheus et Eurydicē 271
Pōns Rōmānus 280
Atalanta Alterum Pōmum Tollit 289
Sibylla ad Tarquinium Venit 295
Rōmānī Māgnum Oppidum Oppūgnant 306
Mettius Curtius Equum in Rīmam Agit 312
Pompa Triumphālis 328
Mūcius Manum Dextram in Īgnī Pōnit 333
Mārcus Togam Virīlem Recipit 344
Appius Claudius Graviter Senātōrēs Monet 353
Mūrus Rōmulī 357
Fabricius Elephantō Nōn Terrētur 363
Hannibal Difficillimum Iter In Ītaliam Facit 374
Rēgulus ad Urbem Carthāginem Redit 384
Carthāgō Antīqua 386
"Haec Sunt Mea Ōrnāmenta" 393
The Appian Way as it is To-day 397
Pompēius Latrōnēs ē Tōtō Marī Expellit 415
Newport Arch at Lincoln, England 419
Caesar Exercitum Flūmen Rubicōnem Trādūcit 429
Augustus 443

THE MEDITERRANEAN WORLD

Showing extent of Roman Empire at the death of Augustus, A.D. 14

Scale of Miles

0 100 200 300 400 500

States in alliance with Rome

20
30
40
50
SARMATIA
DACIA
Danuvius
MOESIA
THRACIA
PONTUS EUXINUS
Caucasus Mons
BITHYNIA
PONTUS
ARMENIA
Byzantium
GALATIA
Halys
CAPPADOCIA
Euphrates
Philippi
MACEDONIA
Mons Olympus
THESSALIA
EPIRUS
MARE AEGAEUM
ASIA
LYDIA
LYCAONIA
PAMPHYLIA
CILICIA
Antiochia
SYRIA
Delphi
Thebes
Actium
Athenae
Icarus
GRAECIA
Sparta
LYCIA
CYPRUS
Damascus
PHOENICIA
CRETA
JUDEA
Jerusalem
ARABIA
Alexandria
CYRENAICIA
Memphis
AEGYPTUS
Nilus
Sinus Arabicus (Red Sea)
Greenwich
20
30
40

10
14
18
48
44
40
36
GERMANIA
Rhenus
Danuvius
RAETIA
NORICUM
Helvetii
Dravus
ALPES
PANNONIA
Alpes Pennin.
GALLIA
VENETIA
Aquileia
ISTRIA
TRANSPADANA
Mediolanum
Alpes Cottiae
Savus
Padus
(Eridanus)
GALLIA
CISPADANA
LIGURIA
Genua
Alpes Maritimae
MARE
ADRIATICUM
Rubico
ILLYRICUM
APENNINUS
ETRURIA
UMBRIA
PICENUM
LATIUM
SAMNIUM
CAMPANIA
APULIA
Brundisium
CORSICA
Roma
Alba Longa
Corioli
Cumae
Neapolis
CALABRIA
LUCANIA
Tarentum
MARE
TYRRHENUM
SARDINIA
BRUTTIUM
SICILIA
Syracusae
Carthago
MARE INTERNUM
NUMIDIA
AFRICA
ITALY
At the time of Augustus
Scale of Miles
0 50 100 150 200
Longitude 10 East from 14 Greenwich

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS

1. **Subdivision of Chapters.** The chapters of this book are units with a central topic of connected narrative and the grammatical construction related to it, but they are not intended as units for daily lesson assignments. The arrangement is such that teachers may omit portions of each chapter at their discretion, and subdivide the remainder into lesson units to suit their own convenience. The completion of a typical chapter should probably occupy about three days' time, depending upon the amount of material omitted. The following subdivision is suggested as a possible one:

First day. Careful explanation and study of the Preparation and Required Vocabulary, with possibly the reading of a part of the Latin text.

Second day. Reading of the Latin text and explanatory notes, as indicated below.

Third day. The section on Relation of Latin Words to English, and the Exercises.

2. **Amount of Material.** An attempt has been made to supply abundant and varied material from which teachers may select certain parts as the minimum requirement for their classes, and have material remaining to occupy and stimulate those able pupils who are capable of more than this minimum. The amount of material contained in the book is thought to be ample for the maximum requirement of any class. The exercises in each chapter may be cut, and those contained in review chapters omitted altogether, without interfering with the integrity or continuity of the work; it is not probable that all the pupils of every class will do each exercise in its entirety. Some exercises may be assigned for outside preparation, others done in class, orally or in writing; the exercises requiring Latin answers to Latin questions are in-

tended for oral work. The sections on the interrelation of Latin and English words, which appear in each chapter, including reviews, are meant to be merely suggestive. They may be used as they stand or abridged if so desired. The work on Latin word formation given in Chapters XII, XXII, XXX, and LVI, together with the notebook work on English derivatives, indicated in review chapters, is optional, though considered highly important by the authors.

3. **The Latin Text.** The narratives throughout the book are given in Latin that presents little difficulty, in order to *increase the quantity* of Latin read by the pupil, thereby arousing the interest that comes from a sense of power. The reading of the Latin text should be done only after the Preparation and the Required Vocabulary of the chapter have been carefully explained by the teacher and thoroughly mastered by the pupil. The text and the explanatory notes may often be read by teacher and pupils together, after which the translation may be assigned for careful review preparation for the next day. By this method rather long passages of connected Latin may be covered in a reasonably short time, and may be so used as to afford another opportunity for minimum and maximum attainment. The abler pupils will very soon acquire the ability to read new Latin quickly, with occasional assistance from the teacher, and the slower minds will do a fair proportion of the work, and get the benefit of the class discussion and the review drill.

4. **Vocabularies.** The Required Vocabularies contain the words with which the pupil should be thoroughly familiar at the end of the first year's study of Latin. The Reference Vocabularies contain words whose use is necessitated by the nature of the reading material, but which do not belong to the vocabulary usually assigned for mastery during the first year. These vocabularies are for reference and for that reason they are placed after the text. Beginning with Chapter XXXIX no reference vocabularies are given, as it is thought advisable that pupils should at an early date learn the proper use of the general vocabulary.

INTRODUCTION

I

REASONS FOR STUDYING LATIN

Latin was the language of the ancient Romans. It has long been studied in the schools of Europe and America; in fact, an investigation showed that in 1924 more pupils of the American secondary schools were studying Latin than all other foreign languages combined. The following are some of the reasons why the study of Latin is valuable, and why it is generally considered to be an important part of a sound education.

1. **The study of Latin helps you to understand and use English better.** Since the principles of English grammar are derived largely from Latin, the study of Latin will help you to a clearer understanding of the grammar of your mother tongue, and will therefore enable you to speak and write English more correctly. Furthermore, constant practice in translating Latin into good idiomatic English will add to your power of using your own language effectively. Over half of all our English words come from Latin. Therefore, a knowledge of Latin will increase your stock of English words, enabling you to understand better the meanings of many English words that were more or less unfamiliar, and to comprehend more accurately the true meaning of many familiar words. English abounds in Latin phrases and quota-

tions, such as *in memoriam* and *e pluribus unum*, which will become more intelligible with even an elementary knowledge of Latin. Finally, the study of Latin will enable you to appreciate the frequent references in English literature to Latin mythology and to the life and times of the Romans.

2. **Latin helps you to understand many of the technical terms used in the learned professions.** Many years ago Latin was the common language used by the learned men of all civilized countries. Consequently there still remain hundreds of Latin words and phrases in common use by scientists, doctors, lawyers, and engineers. Latin is to-day the official language of the Roman Catholic church.

3. **Latin is an excellent preparation for the study of many modern languages.** As the Roman empire spread, Latin soon came to be the language in common use over a large part of what is now modern Europe. French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, and Roumanian are called *Romance* languages, because they are derived so directly from the language of the Romans. Over ninety per cent of the vocabulary of these languages is Latin in origin. They are so similar to Latin that they may almost be called Latin dialects.

4. **Latin helps you to understand better the civilization and culture of the Romans.** The story of the early history of the Romans and how they built up their great empire will be told in the following chapter. The civilization and culture of the Romans — by which we mean their ideas about literature, language, art, science, religion, law, government, and ideals of conduct — have come to

us through Italy, France, England, and Spain. But the Romans, in turn, received many of their ideas from the Egyptian, Greek, and other ancient civilizations, so that it may be said that we are indebted to the Romans for those priceless treasures of thought from the ancient civilizations which have had such an important influence on the development of modern life.

II

THE ROMANS

About twenty-six hundred years ago Rome was a little settlement on the river Tiber in central Italy. The early Romans were a primitive people, who had to fight constantly against warlike neighbors for their very existence. Gradually they overcame their neighbors and extended their territory until after many years they ruled the whole civilized world. The history of Rome may be divided into three periods.

1. Under kings from about 750 B.C. to 500 B.C.
2. A republic from 500 B.C. to 31 B.C.
3. Under emperors from 31 B.C. until the empire crumbled and fell into a subordinate place in Europe during the fifth and sixth centuries A.D.

While Rome was ruled by kings, only a small amount of territory around the city was conquered, but when Rome became a republic, her power spread more rapidly. By about 250 B.C. through wars of offense and defense the Romans became masters of the Italian peninsula. Later they won a decisive victory over the Carthaginians, who lived in northern Africa. Carthage had become the chief naval power of that day, and had not the Romans been able to defeat her, the

Mediterranean Sea could never have come under Roman influence. Gradually, through the conquests of Caesar, Pompey, Augustus, and other leaders, the Romans became masters of France, Spain, parts of England and Germany, northern Africa, and the countries bordering the eastern shores of the Mediterranean. They reached the period of their greatest territorial expansion under the Emperor Trajan (A.D. 98–117). Their empire then included all of the world that was then civilized. Trace the expansion of Rome on the map.

While Rome was a republic, especially in its earlier years, the spirit of the people was marked by deeds of great personal heroism and self-sacrifice on behalf of the republic. During this period there were performed many deeds of valor and endurance that have made the Roman heroes famous. The bravery of Horatius at the bridge, the self-sacrifice of Mettius Curtius, the courage of Mucius Scaevola, and the story of Regulus, who considered honor more important than life, are examples of those fine qualities that characterized the early Romans. But later in their history, during the days of the Empire, when personal indulgence and the love of luxury became common, the Romans forgot the virtues of their ancestors and were unable to withstand the invasions of the more vigorous peoples from the North.

There are many fascinating books that tell the story of the Romans, the brave deeds of their heroes, and their well-known myths, which in large part they borrowed from the Greeks. You will find all of the following books most interesting and profitable reading:

Guerber, *The Story of the Romans*
Haaren and Poland, *Famous Men of Rome*
Davis, *A Day in Old Rome*

Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome*
Hawthorne, *The Wonder Book* and *Tanglewood Tales*
Sabin, *Classical Myths that Live Today*

III

HOW ENGLISH HAS BEEN INFLUENCED BY LATIN

Language is constantly changing. The English of Chaucer, who lived about five hundred years ago, is so different from the English you speak to-day that you would not be able to understand it. It will be interesting to see how our language has been influenced by Latin. There are at least five sources from which the large Latin element in our mother tongue has come.

1. Rome ruled a part of Britain as a colony for about four centuries. When the Romans withdrew, a few Latin derivatives continued to be used. Some of these are the ending *chester* (Latin, **castra,** *camp*), which survives in such place names as *Winchester*, *Lancaster*, *Chester; street* (Latin, **strāta**); *mile* (Latin, **mīlle passūs**).

2. Christianity became the religion of England about A.D. 600. Since Latin was the official language of the church, many Latin words were brought into the English language, such as *pastor* (Latin, **pāstor**) and *temple* (Latin, **templum**).

3. Probably the largest contribution of Latin to English results from the Norman conquest. When William the Conqueror invaded England, A.D. 1066, he united England and France under one ruler. The language of France, which was descended from Latin, became the official language of the conquered country. The two languages, French and English, gradually intermingled,

with the result that many words of Latin origin became a part of the speech of the English people.

4. In more recent years a large number of new words containing Latin or Greek elements have been added to our language. These are largely words made up to name new inventions or new ideas. For example, *dirigible* (Latin), *automobile* (half Greek, half Latin), *megaphone* (Greek), *radio* (Latin).

5. Finally, there are in common use to-day many words and phrases that have just the same forms as the Romans used. Do you know the meaning of the following? *memorandum, post mortem, alumni, per diem, vice versa, versus, bona fide, Anno Domini, finis.* Can you mention any others?

A study has recently been made by scholars [1] to discover the sources of the words of our English vocabulary. Their investigations reveal the fact that 52.5 per cent of the most commonly used English words are derived from Latin, 26 per cent from Anglo-Saxon, 11 per cent from miscellaneous sources, and 10.5 per cent from Greek. These facts will give you a very clear idea of the great influence that Latin has had on your mother tongue.

IV

HOW LATIN IS PRONOUNCED

The method of pronunciation that was used by the Romans differs from the way the same words would be pronounced in English. The Roman method is best learned by imitation

[1] *The Thorndike-Grinstead Study*, based on a counting of over 7,000,000 running words.

of your teacher. The following rules are given for reference, but they need not be memorized:

1. **Alphabet.** — The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *y* or *w*. **I** is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u.** The other letters are consonants. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one. The most common are **ae, oe, ui, au.**

2. **Roman Method of Pronunciation.**

Long Vowels	Short Vowels
a like *a* in *father*	**a** like the first *a* in *aha*
e like *e* in *prey*	**e** like *e* in *step*
i like *i* in *machine*	**i** like *i* in *pit*
o like *o* in *holy*	**o** like *o* in *wholly*
u like *oo* in *root*	**u** like *u* in *pull*

Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. But note the following points:

c and **g** are hard, as in *come* and *go*.

i consonant is like *y* in *yes*.

t is hard, as in *tin*.

v is like *w* in *wine*.

s is a hissing sound, as in *sin;* never like *z*, as in *ease*.

ch is like *ch* in *chorus*.

ph is like *ph* in *alphabet*.

qu is almost like *kw*.

th is practically like *t*.

The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.

oe like *oi* in *toil*.

eu is *eh-oo*.

ui is almost like *we*.

au like *ou* in *house*.

3. **Quantity of Vowels.** — Vowels are long (–) or short (⏑). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels (except in diphthongs) must be considered short.

The following are a few general rules for determining the quantity of vowels:

a. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**; **cō-pi-a,** *abundance.*

b. Vowels resulting from contraction are long: **cō-gō** (**coagō**), *I collect.*

c. Vowels are long before **nf, ns, nct, ncs**: **īnferō,** *I bring in;* **īnsānus,** *mad.*

d. Diphthongs are long: **causa,** *cause.*

4. **Syllables.** — A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong either alone or with one or more consonants. Therefore, a word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: **ae-di-fi-cō,** *I build.*

A single consonant between two vowels belongs with the following vowel: **a-mī-cus,** *friend.*

If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, divide before the last consonant, except that when a mute [1] is followed by a liquid [2] both consonants are pronounced with the following vowel: **hospes,** *guest;* **pa-tris,** *father's.*

Compound words are divided into their component parts: **ad-est** (**ad,** *near;* **est,** *he is*), *he is present.*

Doubled consonants are separated: **pu-el-la,** *girl.*

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the next to the last, the *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult.*

[1] The following consonants are called *mutes:* Labial or lip-mutes — *p, b, f* (*ph*). Lingual or tongue-mutes — *t, d, th.* Guttural or throat-mutes — *c* (*k*), *g, ch.*

[2] The consonants *l, m, n, r* are called *liquids.*

5. **Quantity of Syllables.** — Quantity is the amount of *time* taken in pronunciation. Therefore, some syllables are long because they take longer to pronounce than others, just as some vowels are longer than others.

a. A syllable is long *by nature* if it contains a long vowel or diphthong: **lēgēs,** *laws;* **aedēs,** *temple.*

b. A syllable is long *by position* if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or by the double consonant *x* (= *cs* or *gs*). The vowel, however, is still pronounced short, but the length of time is consumed in the two consonant sounds: **vocant,** *they call;* **dux,** *leader.*

6. **Accent.** — The following principles determine what syllable of a word receives the stress of the voice:

a. The ultima, or last syllable, is never accented.

b. Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult: **tem′plum,** *temple.*

c. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, otherwise the antepenult: **a mā′re,** *to love;* **mit′te re,** *to send.*

d. Certain words like **-ne,** the sign of a question, and **-que,** *and,* called *enclitics,* are so closely joined to the preceding word that its last syllable has an accent: **a mat′ne,** *does he love?* **ho mi nēs′que,** *and the men.*

V

HOW LATIN DIFFERS FROM ENGLISH

As a language Latin differs from English in many respects. While these differences will be clearer to you as you proceed

with the study of this new language, it will be helpful to call your attention to a few of them at the very outset.

1. **Endings.** — In English there are relatively few changes in the endings of words, such as, *boy*, *boy's*, *boys*, *boys'* or *love*, *loves*, *loved*. In Latin, however, there are a large number of such changes in the endings, and these endings are most important in determining the meaning and use of the word in its sentence. *Therefore, always notice the ending of a Latin word.*

2. **Nouns.** — Most English nouns form their endings in the same manner, but Latin nouns are divided into five classes, called *declensions*, each of which has a different set of endings for the various cases.

3. **Verbs.** — Likewise, in English there are only two main classes of verbs, regular and irregular. In Latin, however, you will find that regular verbs are divided into four classes, called *conjugations;* there are, in addition, a number of irregular verbs.

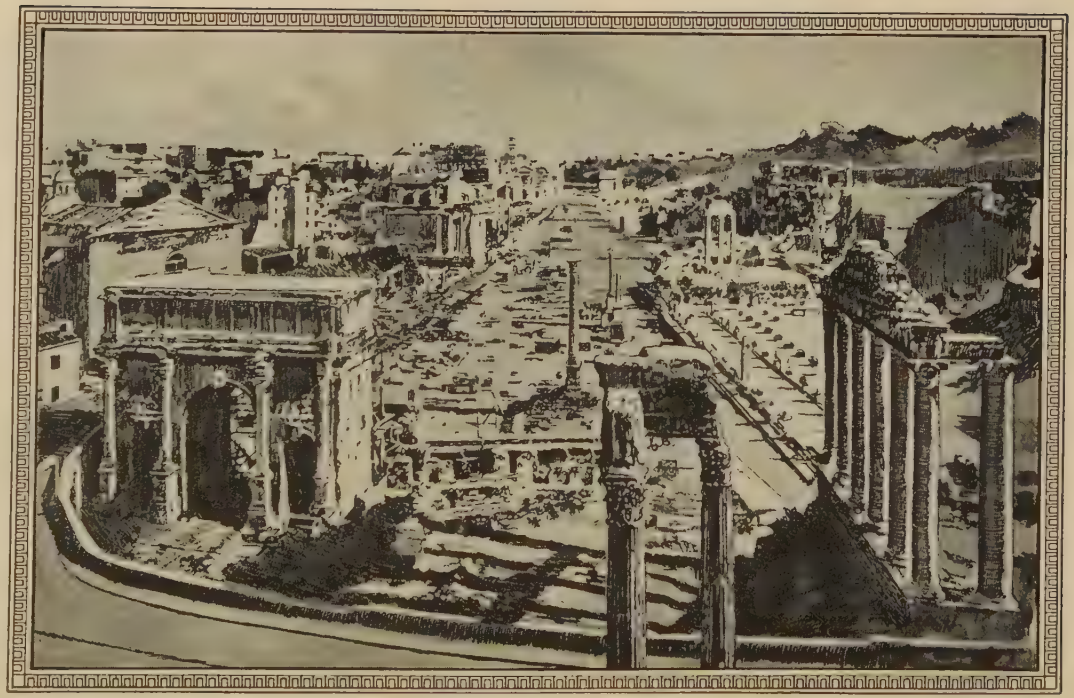
4. **Gender of Nouns.** — In Latin you will at first be puzzled by the gender of nouns. In English it is comparatively easy to distinguish masculine or feminine nouns from neuter nouns, but in Latin you will be surprised to find that **rīvus,** *stream*, is masculine, while **rīpa,** *bank of a stream*, is feminine. The gender of nouns in Latin must be learned partly by rule and partly by memory. This is true of the gender of nouns in almost all foreign languages.

5. **Order of Words.** — In an English sentence the order of the words is very important, because of the comparatively

few different endings that words have. A change in the order may change entirely the meaning of the sentence. For example:

Caesar praises the farmer.
The farmer praises Caesar.

In Latin a change in the order of the words does not change the meaning of the sentence, but merely shows the *emphasis* which the writer wishes to give to a particular word or phrase. There are, however, certain rules of order that are usually followed in a Latin sentence unless there is a reason for changing on account of emphasis. Two differences from the English order which you will notice early in your study of Latin are (1) that the verb regularly stands at the end of the sentence, unless it is a form of the verb *to be*, and (2) that the adjective often follows its noun.



FORUM RŌMĀNUM

CHAPTER I

OUR SCHOOLROOM

Would you like to be able to use Latin immediately to talk and read about something familiar to us all? It will take but a little preparation to enable you to converse about the schoolroom and the objects it contains, and to read the Latin passage which follows in this chapter.

PREPARATION

Nominative Case, First Declension

1. In paragraphs 3 and 5 you will find lists of Latin words which we may use for this purpose. Pronounce these words carefully after your teacher, and try as you do so to fix in mind the English meaning of each one. It is much easier to learn the pronunciation of Latin than of English, for each consonant has always the same sound, and each vowel has but two slightly differing sounds, depending on whether it is long or short. The rules for pronunciation are given in the Introduction, Section IV, and we shall have frequent need to refer to them.

2. Before we can understand the use of these words in the Latin passage which follows, we need to compare Latin usage with a few grammatical rules you have learned in English. Note carefully the following points:

1. Ways in Which Latin and English Are Alike
   - *a.* Latin has the same parts of speech as English: nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc.
   - *b.* The subject of a sentence is in the nominative case.

c. The nominative case is also used for a predicate noun, or attribute complement, meaning the same person or thing as the subject.

Puella est discipula. *The girl is a pupil.*

Puella is nominative case, the subject.

Discipula is nominative case, a predicate noun.

d. Nouns have a different ending when they become plural. English plurals are made in various ways; so too in Latin. All the nouns in the vocabulary of this chapter belong to the first declension, and have the plural ending **-ae** (see Rules for Pronunciation, Introduction IV, 2) instead of the ending **-a** which is used for the singular, *e.g.*, **fenestra,** *window;* **fenestrae,** *windows.*

e. The verb of a sentence must be singular or plural, to agree with the subject.

Puella est discipula. *The girl is a pupil.*

Puellae sunt discipulae. *The girls are pupils.*

f. Adjectives are used in two ways. An attributive adjective is closely attached to the noun which it describes; a predicate adjective is used to complete the predicate after a copulative verb.

Alba rosa est pulchra. *The white rose is beautiful.*

Alba, attributive adjective

Pulchra, predicate adjective

Discipula est bona puella. *The pupil is a good girl.*

Bona, attributive adjective

2. Ways in Which Latin and English Differ

a. There is no article in Latin. **Puella** means *girl, a girl,* or *the girl.*

b. Adjectives, both attributive and predicate, have singular and plural endings to agree with the nouns they modify.

Puella parva est bona. *The little girl is good.*

Puellae parvae sunt bonae. *The little girls are good.*

Do you know how French, or German, compares with Latin and English in this respect?

c. Many nouns which in English would be neuter, because they do not refer to living beings, are in Latin masculine or feminine. All the nouns and adjectives in this chapter are feminine. Do you know whether gender in French, or in German, is *natural*, as in English, or *grammatical*, as it often is in Latin?

3. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Always study the vocabulary with great care, and associate the Latin words with those in English derived from them, wherever this is possible. The more thoroughly you learn new words, the more quickly and easily you will read new Latin passages. Translation will thus become a pleasure, not a task.

NOUNS

fīlia, *daughter*
puella, *girl*

VERBS

est, (*he she, it*) *is*
sunt, (*they*) *are*

ADVERB

nōn, *not*

CONJUNCTION

et, *and*

ADJECTIVES

aperta, *open*
bona, *good*
lāta, *broad, wide*
longa, *long*
māgna, *large, great*
mala, *bad*
nova, *new*
parva, *small, little*

4. Camera Nostra

Camera est māgna. Camera est lāta et longa. Iānua est clausa. Fenestra aperta est.[1] Māgna fenestra est aperta, et parvae fenestrae sunt clausae. Mēnsa est lāta et māgna. Nova mēnsa est pulchra. Sellae sunt lātae. Parva sella nōn[2] est lāta. Tabula lāta[3] est nigra. Crēta nōn[2] est nigra. Crēta est alba. Crēta alba est longa. Crēta est rubra et longa. Alba rosa est pulchra. Rubrae rosae māgnae et pulchrae sunt.[4]

Puella est bona. Parva puella est bona. Bona puella est pulchra. Puellae bonae parvae sunt. Puella est fīlia. Puella est discipula. Parva puella est fīlia bona.[3] Malae puellae bonae fīliae nōn sunt. Discipulae sunt pulchrae puellae. Puella parva bona discipula est.[4] Māgna charta est longa et lāta. Pīctūra est parva et pulchra. Māgna et pulchra est camera.

5. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

camera, *room*
charta, *map*
crēta, *crayon*
discipula, *pupil*
fenestra, *window*
iānua, *door*
mēnsa, *table, desk*
pīctūra, *picture*
rosa, *rose*
sella, *seat, chair*
tabula, *blackboard, tablet, list, record*

ADJECTIVES

alba, *white*
clausa, *closed*
nigra, *black*
pulchra, *pretty, beautiful*
quālis, m. and f. sing., **quālēs,** m. and f. plur., *of what kind?*
rubra, *red*

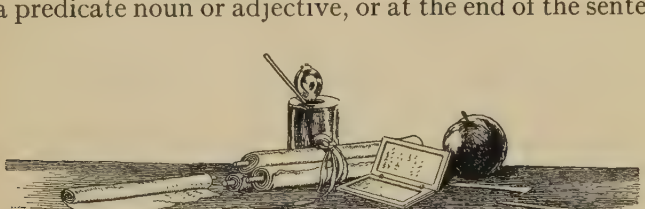
6. NOTES

1. The meaning of a Latin sentence is not shown by the order of words, as in English, but by the endings of words.

2. **Nōn,** like other adverbs, directly precedes the word which it modifies.

3. Adjectives may in most cases either precede or follow their nouns.

4. The verbs **est** and **sunt** may stand between the subject and a predicate noun or adjective, or at the end of the sentence.



A Roman Boy's School Materials

7. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following English words are almost exactly like their Latin originals: *chart, picture, rose, long.*

2. Why is a photographer's apparatus called a *camera?*

3. The ending *-tude* in English is from a Latin ending **-tūdō,** meaning " -ness." Give the meanings of these English words: *magnitude, latitude, longitude.*

4. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

   a. The great philosopher had many *disciples.*

   b. There was a huge *aperture* in the wall.

   c. Such a task cannot be well executed by a *novice.*

   d. The sight of an aëroplane is no longer a *novelty.*

   e. The microscope *magnifies* objects seen through it.

5. A *janitor* was originally a doorkeeper.

6. To tell the *quality* of a thing is to tell what kind of thing it is.

7. Why was England's *Magna Charta* so called?

EXERCISES

8. Answer the following questions in Latin: (See Reference Vocabulary for new words).

1. Quālis est camera?
2. Quālis est tabula?
3. Quālis est rosa pulchra?
4. Quālēs sunt rosae pulchrae?
5. Quālēs sunt tabula et charta?
6. Quālis est parva puella?
7. Quālēs sunt longae crētae?
8. Quālēs sunt fenestrae et iānua?
9. Quālēs puellae sunt discipulae?
10. Quālis fīlia est parva puella?

9. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings or words:

1. Māgn— fenestr— sunt apert—.
2. Iānu— claus— nōn est.
3. Tabula —— nigr—.
4. Tabul— est long— et lāt—.
5. Long— crēt— sunt alb—.
6. Puellae —— bon— discipul—.
7. Mēnsa et sellae —— nov—.
8. Pulchr— rosae —— rubr—.

CHAPTER II

OUR SCHOOLROOM (*Continued*)

PREPARATION

Genitive Case, First Declension

10. In English the genitive (or possessive) case is used to show to whom or to what a thing belongs. The genitive case of nouns is made in the singular by adding *'s* to the nominative; in the plural by adding ', or *'s* if the nominative plural does not end in *s*. Latin nouns also have a genitive case, and as in English it is shown by special endings, **-ae** in the singular, **-ārum** in the plural, in the first declension. Sometimes the genitive case of a Latin noun is best translated by an English prepositional phrase with *of* instead of by the English genitive.

rosa puellae, *the girl's rose*
rosae puellārum, *the girls' roses*
iānuae camerae, *the doors of the room*

The accent of the genitive plural is always on the **ā** of the ending, as in **puellārum.** (See Rules for Pronunciation, Introduction IV, 6, *c*.)

11. Pronouns in English have genitive cases differing from the nominative, but not made with the genitive sign used for nouns; *e.g.*, *my, our, his, your.* The corresponding words in Latin are sometimes a pronoun in the genitive case, sometimes a possessive adjective, which must agree with the noun it

modifies, like any other adjective. Four of these possessive adjectives are given in the following vocabulary.

nostra camera, *our room*
meae rosae, *my roses*

12. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

In Latin the different declensions are distinguished from one another by the difference in the endings used for the genitive singular. Vocabularies, therefore, always give the nominative of a noun, its genitive singular ending, and its gender, as given below. In learning new nouns, you should always commit to memory " the vocabulary form," telling these three facts.

NOUN

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman*

CONJUNCTION

sed, *but*

ADJECTIVES

mea, *my, mine*
multae, plur., *many*
nostra, *our, ours*

ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

paucae, plur., *few*
tua, *your, yours* (used when speaking to one person only)
vestra, *your, yours* (used when speaking to more than one person)

13. **Camera Nostra**

Tua camera est māgna, sed parva est mea camera. Iānua camerae tuae [1] clausa est, sed aperta est iānua camerae meae.[2] Māgna fenestra pulchrae camerae [2] discipulārum nostrārum [1] est aperta. Parvae fenestrae multārum camerārum clausae sunt. Sella vestrae [1] magistrae est māgna. Sellae parvārum puellārum sunt parvae. Paucārum discipulārum sellae sunt lātae et māgnae. Lāta mēnsa magistrae bonae nōn est nova. Crētae nos-

trae sunt albae, sed crēta tua est rubra. Rosae vestrae sunt multae et rubrae. Rosae meae paucae et albae sunt. Rosae magistrae et puellārum sunt multae et pulchrae. Fīliae fēminae pulchrae[2] sunt puellae bonae. Nostrae discipulae sunt fīliae fēminārum bonārum.

14. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUN	PRONOUN
magistra, -ae, f., *teacher, schoolmistress*	**cūius,** genitive sing., **quārum,** genitive plur., *whose?*

15. NOTES

1. A possessive adjective, like any other adjective, when modifying a genitive noun, must have the genitive ending.

2. The fact that the same ending is used for the genitive singular and the nominative plural need cause no confusion. Explain how this is shown in the sentences to which this note refers.

16. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Why is the *feminine* gender so called?
2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. There was a *paucity* of good books in the collection.
   b. He was bewildered by the *multiplicity* of sounds which came to his ears.
   c. The man has a rather *effeminate* way of speaking.
   d. Mrs. Blank is very prominent in the *feminist* movement.
3. What does the word *multitude* mean? See **7**, 3.
4. How many arithmetical terms can you give that are derived from **multae**?

EXERCISES

17. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Cūius est crēta longa?
2. Cūius sunt crētae rubrae?
3. Quārum sunt sellae parvae?
4. Quārum sunt rosae pulchrae?
5. Quālis est mēnsa vestrae magistrae?
6. Quālēs sunt fenestrae nostrae camerae?
7. Cūius rosae sunt rubrae?
8. Quārum camera est māgna et pulchra?

18. Write in Latin:

1. Our teacher's map is new.
2. The windows of our room are open.
3. The little girls are the woman's daughters.
4. My rose is large and red.
5. The pupils' seats are not large.
6. Your teachers' desks are large.
7. The large door of my room is shut.
8. The picture of your little daughter is beautiful.
9. My daughters are the pupils of a good teacher.
10. What kind of pupil is the good woman's daughter?

A Roman Coin

CHAPTER III

THE MAP OF EUROPE

Ancient Rome at the period of her greatest power ruled over practically the whole world that was known at that time, including southern and western Europe. Many of our modern names of European countries are merely English forms of the Latin names used by the Romans. There are to be seen to-day in these European countries traces of former Roman occupation, such as roads, walls, aqueducts, temples, theatres, and baths.

PREPARATION

Ablative Case, First Declension

Present Tense of **sum**

19. Latin nouns have a case called the *ablative*, to which no English case exactly corresponds. The ablative expresses many ideas that in English are expressed by prepositional phrases with *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*, and similar words. The ablative is itself sometimes used with prepositions. In this chapter it is used as the object of the preposition **in**, meaning *in* or *on*, to denote the place where something is or where something is happening. The endings of the ablative in the first declension are **-ā** for the singular, and **-īs** for the plural.

in camerā, *in the room*
in mēnsā, *on the table*
in sellīs, *in (on) the chairs*

20. You have already seen that **est** and **sunt** are different verb forms in Latin for singular and plural meanings, just as

we use *is* and *are* in English. These forms belong to what is called in both languages the present tense, *tense* meaning "time." Let us review the other forms of the present tense of the English verb *to be*.

Singular	Plural
1. I am	1. we are
2. you are	2. you are
3. he (she, it) is	3. they are

The numbers 1, 2, and 3 give the person of the verb. The first person singular denotes the speaker; the second person, the person to whom one speaks; and the third person denotes the person about whom, or the thing about which, one speaks. The three persons in the plural have corresponding meanings. Latin verbs have the same three persons in both singular and plural. To *conjugate* a verb in any tense is to give in order the three persons of the singular and of the plural for that tense. The present tense of the Latin verb **sum**, meaning *to be*, is conjugated as follows:

Singular	Plural
1. **sum**, *I am*	1. **sumus**, *we are*
2. **es**, *you are*	2. **estis**, *you are*
3. **est**, *he (she, it) is, there is*	3. **sunt**, *they are, there are*

No word is needed in Latin to express the pronoun used as the subject of a verb; the person is sufficiently indicated by the ending of the verb.

21. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

aqua, -ae, f., *water*
īnsula, -ae, f., *island*
patria, -ae, f., *native country, fatherland*
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*
rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen*
terra, -ae, f., *land, earth, country*
via, -ae, f., *way, road, street*

ADJECTIVE

multa, *much,* plur., *many* (See 12.)

VERBS

erat, *he (she, it) was, there was*
erant, *they were, there were*
habitat, *he (she, it) lives*
sum, *I am*

ADVERBS

nunc, *now*
ubi? *where*

PREPOSITION

in (followed by the abl.), *in, on*

22. **Charta Eurōpae**

Nunc in māgnā camerā discipulārum sumus. In Americā sumus, et in camerā nostrā est charta māgna Eurōpae. Multae terrae et aqua multa sunt in chartā Eurōpae.

In Eurōpā sunt īnsulae māgnae et paenīnsulae[1] multae et māgnae Britannia[2] et Hibernia īnsulae sunt. Britannia antīqua erat[3] prōvincia[4] Rōmae antīquae. Sicilia et Sardinia īnsulae sunt et erant[3] prōvinciae Rōmae antīquae. Hispānia et Graecia paenīnsulae sunt et erant prōvinciae Rōmae antīquae. Rēgīna Hispāniae est fēmina pulchra et incola ōlim erat Britanniae. Britannia est patria rēgīnae Hispāniae, sed rēgīna nōn in Britanniā sed in Hispāniā nunc habitat.

Gallia[5] est terra pulchra Eurōpae. Gallia antīqua erat prōvincia Rōmae antīquae. In Galliā et in multīs

prōvinciīs Rōmae erant bonae viae.[6] Gallia est patria magistrae nostrae, sed magistra nostra nōn in Galliā sed in Americā nunc habitat. "In Americā," inquit[7] magistra nostra, "es nunc, Maria,[8] et incola bona Americae es, et America est patria tua. Incolae, discipulae meae,[8] Americae estis, et America pulchra est patria vestra. Patria mea est Gallia, sed nunc in Americā sum, et incola sum Americae pulchrae."

Ītalia est pulchra terra Eurōpae. Ītalia paenīnsula est longa et pulchra sed nōn lāta. In Ītaliā est Rōma. In multīs terrīs Eurōpae erant prōvinciae Rōmae antīquae. Rōma erat domina multārum terrārum Eurōpae.

23. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

America, -ae, f., *America*
Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*
domina, -ae, f., *mistress, ruler*
Eurōpa, -ae, f., *Europe*
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*
Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*
Hibernia, -ae, f., *Ireland*
Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain*
incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*
Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

paenīnsula, -ae, f., *peninsula*
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*
Sardinia, -ae, f., *Sardinia*
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*

ADJECTIVE

antīqua, *old, ancient*

VERB

inquit, *he (she) says, said*

ADVERB

ōlim, *formerly, once, once upon a time*

24. NOTES

1. **Paenīnsula** is made from **paene,** *almost,* and **īnsula.** Therefore a peninsula is *almost an island.*

2. The Roman conquests in Britain extended a little farther north than the present boundary between England and Scot-

land. The first invasion of Britain was made by Julius Caesar. The Romans held Britain for several hundred years.

3. **Erat** and **erant** are the third person singular and third person plural of the past, or imperfect, tense of the verb **sum**.

4. By the word **prōvincia** the Romans meant a portion of conquered territory with an organized government administered by a military governor sent from Rome. The inhabitants had no rights as citizens, had to pay heavy taxes to Rome, and were often treated with the greatest cruelty by their Roman rulers.

5. Gaul included modern France, western Switzerland, Belgium, and a part of Holland. Most of it was conquered by Julius Caesar, about whom you will read later.

6. The Romans were famous as road-builders. They needed good roads to enable them to move troops quickly from one place to another.

7. The verb **inquit** is used only in quotations giving the speaker's exact words, and always stands after one or more words of the quotation.

8. The form of a noun used in addressing a person is called the *vocative* case. In the first declension the vocative is like the nominative in both singular and plural. The vocative usually stands after one or more words of the sentence in which it is used.

25. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following English words are almost exactly like their Latin originals: *province, peninsula, antique.*

2. **Aqua** has given us many English words. An *aqueduct* is a structure used to conduct water across lowlands; *aquatic* birds are water birds; an *aquarium* is a collection of fishes and other creatures that live in the water; the *aquama-*

rine is a gem which gets its name from the resemblance of its color to that of sea water; *aqueous* gases or vapors are those heavily charged with moisture.

3. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. Great Britain holds *dominion* over a vast amount of *territory*.

b. He was riding in an *antiquated* vehicle.

c. The *antiquarian* had collected many valuable *antiques*, dating back to times of great *antiquity*.

d. The polar bear has its *habitat* in the icy regions of the north.

e. The orator *dominated* the unruly mob with his eloquence.

f. Conductors of electricity are *insulated* to prevent dangerous contacts.

4. Why is the earth sometimes referred to as "the *terrestrial* globe"?

5. Why does *insular* mean "narrow-minded," or "bigoted," and *provincial* mean "countrified"?

6. **Terra cotta** (meaning *baked earth*) is used for a certain kind of pottery. English here uses untranslated words which have come from Latin through Italian. Similarly, we use the phrase **terra fīrma,** *solid ground*, and **viā** (ablative case), as in the sentence, *He went from Paris to London via Calais and Dover.*

EXERCISES

26. Give the nominative, genitive, and ablative, singular and plural, of the following nouns: **camera, īnsula, via.** Giving in order the cases of a noun or adjective is called *declining* it.

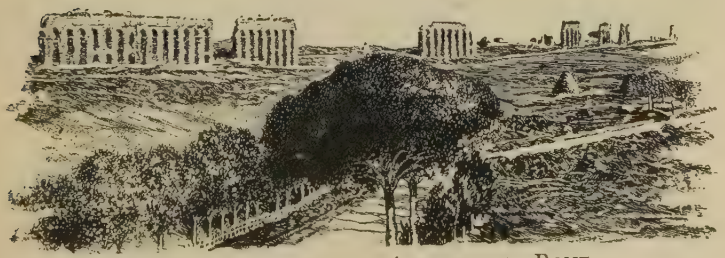
Decline in the same way the following nouns with their adjectives: **alba rosa, parva puella, māgna prōvincia.**

27. Translate the following sentences, give the case and number of each word in black type, and tell why that case and number are used:

1. Rēgīna Hispāniae est **fēmina pulchra.**
2. In **chartā** Eurōpae sunt multae **īnsulae.**
3. Gallia erat **prōvincia Rōmae** antīquae.
4. Estis **incolae** Americae.
5. In **Americā** sumus.
6. **Bonae** viae erant in **prōvinciīs.**
7. **Puellārum** rosae sunt **rubrae.**
8. **Nostra** magistra in **Galliā** habitat.
9. **America** est patria **mea.**
10. America est **multārum discipulārum** patria.

28. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quālis paenīnsula est Ītalia?
2. Cūius prōvinciae erant Sicilia et Sardinia?
3. Ubi est Rōma?
4. Ubi, discipulae meae, nunc estis?
5. Quālis terra est Gallia?
6. Ubi rēgīna Hispāniae nunc habitat?
7. Ubi erant prōvinciae multae Rōmae antīquae?
8. Quālēs viae erant in prōvinciīs Rōmae antīquae?



Ruin of the Claudian Aqueduct at Rome

VĪLLA RŌMĀNA

CHAPTER IV

A ROMAN VILLA

Many wealthy Romans had, besides their city houses, country estates in which they took the greatest pride. These villas were usually near enough to Rome to be easy of access. The care of the house and extensive grounds made necessary a large number of slaves, in charge of whom was an overseer, called **vīlicus.**

PREPARATION

Accusative Case, First Declension

29. The accusative case in Latin corresponds to the English accusative case, and, like it, is used as the direct object of a transitive verb. A transitive verb is one whose action *passes*

over from the subject, who performs the action, to a person or thing that receives the action, namely, the direct object. Determine which of the verbs given in the following vocabulary are transitive, and which are intransitive and so cannot have direct objects. Is the verb **sum** transitive or intransitive? The endings denoting the accusative case of Latin nouns of the first declension are **-am** for the singular and **-ās** for the plural.

Rosae puellam dēlectant. *The roses please the girl.*
Puellae rosās vident. *The girls see the roses.*

30. The accusative case is sometimes used as the object of a preposition, like the English accusative case. Notice that this is true in the following phrases with **ad:**

ad vīllam, *to the villa*
ad fenestrās, *toward the windows*

Some prepositions, like **in,** take the ablative case; it is important, when learning a new preposition, to learn which of these two cases is used with it.

31. Great care must be taken not to confuse the direct object of a transitive verb with the predicate noun which follows the verb **sum.** (See **2**, 1. *c.*) The predicate noun is the same person or thing as the subject, and is in the nominative case; the direct object is usually not the same as the subject, and is in the accusative case.

Puella rēgīnam videt. *The girl sees the queen.*
Fēmina est rēgīna. *The woman is a queen.*

32. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

You will notice that some of the verbs given in this vocabulary end in **-t,** and others in **-nt.** The ending **-t** always denotes the third person singular of a verb; the ending **-nt** denotes

the third person plural. Compare these endings with those of **est, sunt, erat,** and **erant.**

VERBS

amant, *they love, they like*
habet, *he (she, it) has*
habent, *they have*
habitant, *they live* (See **21.**)
stant, *they stand*
vident, *they see*

ADVERB

iam, *now, already*

PREPOSITION

ad (followed by the acc.), *to, toward, near*

In Āreā Vīllae

33. Vīlla Rōmāna

Incolae Rōmae vīllās māgnās et pulchrās[1] habent. Poēta[2] et domina vīllae et fīliae[3] ad vīllam properant. In bonā viā Rōmānā puellae incolās Rōmae et multārum

prōvinciārum vident. Fīliae poētae sunt Claudia[4] et Secunda.[4]

Nunc puellae aquam multam vident.[1] In aquā pulchrā sunt cymbae parvae et in cymbīs parvīs puellae nautās[2] vident. Nautae parvās cymbās habent[1] et pulchrae sunt cymbae nautārum. Nautae in īnsulā habitant et casās parvās habent.[1]

LUCERNA

Vīllam māgnam et pulchram puellae iam vident. Claudia et Secunda vīllam amant. Vīlla puellās dēlectat et in vīllā libenter habitant.[5] In āreā vīllae gallīnās multās et columbās vident. Vīlica gallīnās cūrat et ōva[6] gallīnārum colligit. Vīlla māgna iānuās et fenestrās multās habet. Fenestrae vīllae pulchrae

ROMAN KITCHEN UTENSILS

sunt apertae, et in vīllā sunt sellae et mēnsae. In multīs vīllae camerīs lucernae stant, et in cellā vīllae sunt amphorae multae.

34. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

amphora, -ae, f., *jar*
ārea, -ae, f., *court, yard*
casa, -ae, f., *cottage, hut*
cella, -ae, f., *storeroom*
columba, -ae, f., *dove*
cymba, -ae, f., *boat*
gallīna, -ae, f., *hen*
lucerna, -ae, f., *lamp*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*
poēta, -ae, m., *poet*
vīlica, -ae, f., *overseer's wife, stewardess*
vīlla, -ae, f., *country estate, villa*

ADJECTIVE

Rōmāna, *Roman*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

quid, *what?* (acc. sing. n.)
quem, *whom?* (acc. sing. m. and f.)
quōs, *whom?* (acc. plur. m.)

VERBS

colligit, *he (she, it) collects*
cūrat, *he (she, it) takes care of*
dēlectat, *he (she, it) pleases, delights*
properant, *they hasten*

ADVERB

libenter, *gladly, willingly*

Note. — Proper names which are identical in English and Latin and which occur in the text in the nominative singular only, are not included in the vocabularies.

35. NOTES

1. The direct object in Latin usually precedes the verb. All Latin verbs except the forms of **sum** regularly stand at the end of a sentence or clause.

2. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except a few which are masculine because they refer to male persons, as **poēta,** *poet,* and **nauta,** *sailor.* **Incola,** *inhabitant* (see **23**), may be either masculine or feminine.

3. Translate **fīliae,** *their daughters.* The third person possessive words, *his, her, its, their,* are not usually expressed in Latin unless emphatic.

4. The name of a Roman girl was always the feminine form of her father's clan name. Claudia's father's middle, or clan, name was **Claudius.** Claudia's younger sister is distinguished from her merely by being called **Claudia Secunda,** "Claudia the Second," or for short, **Secunda.** A third daughter would be called **Claudia Tertia,** and so on.

5. *They are glad to live*, or *they like to live*, is a better way of expressing this idea than the literal translation *they live gladly.* Never allow yourself, in translating, to use English that is incorrect or not idiomatic. Different languages often express the same idea in quite different ways. But a literal translation is best if it makes idiomatic English.

6. **Ōva** means *eggs.* It is the accusative plural, but does not belong to the first declension, hence the different ending.

36. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. That piece of candy was a *delectable* morsel.
   b. He walks with a *nautical* gait.
   c. He has been appointed *curator* of the museum.
   d. The cold polar regions are not *inhabitable* by man.

2. The following words are the same or practically the same in English and in Latin: *villa, cell, Roman, poet, area.*

3. *Lucerne*, in Switzerland, is said to have taken its name from an old tower, formerly a lighthouse, rising from a bridge which spans the Reuss River.

4. A *villain* was originally a laborer on the lands belonging to a villa. Hence he was looked down upon by the wealthy Roman of noble birth, and the name became a term of contempt. As we use it to-day it indicates moral rather than social degradation.

EXERCISES

37. Decline the following words, giving the four cases you have now learned: **vīlla māgna, cymba pulchra, columba alba, casa parva.** The accusative usually precedes the ablative in a declension.

38. Translate the following sentences, and account for the case of each noun and adjective:

1. Camera nostra multās fenestrās habet.
2. Bona discipula magistram dēlectat.
3. In chartā Eurōpae puellae māgnam īnsulam vident.
4. Bona fēmina est Hispāniae rēgīna.
5. Multās gallīnās fīliae poētae in āreā vīllae vident.

39. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. In Eurōp— erant mult— prōvinci—.
2. Graecia et Gallia era— prōvinci— Rōmae antīqu—.
3. Incolae mult— terr— Eurōpae bon— vi— habent.
4. Pulchr— fīliae poēt— in māgn— vīll— habitant.
5. Parv— puell— columb— alb— amant.

40. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quid discipulae in chartā Eurōpae vident?
2. Quōs fīliae poētae vident?
3. Quālēs (acc. plur. m. and f.) cymbās nautae habent?
4. Ubi habitant nautae?
5. Cūius vīllam puellae vident?
6. Quālem (acc. sing. m. and f.) vīllam puellae vident?
7. Quem vīlla pulchra dēlectat?

CHAPTER V

A ROMAN VILLA (*Continued*)

PREPARATION

Present Indicative, First Conjugation

41. The complete conjugation of the present tense of **amant,** which you learned in Chapter IV, is as follows:

Present Indicative Active	
Singular	Plural
1. amō, *I love*	1. amāmus, *we love*
2. amās, *you love*	2. amātis, *you love*
3. amat, *he (she, it) loves*	3. amant, *they love*

These forms may also be translated, *I am loving*, or *I do love, you are loving*, or *you do love*, etc.

As already explained (**20, 32**), the person and number of a verb are shown by its ending. The personal endings used for all tenses of the active voice, except the perfect, are given below; commit them to memory.

Personal Endings, Active Voice	
Singular	Plural
1. **-ō** or **-m** = *I*	1. **-mus** = *we*
2. **-s** = *you*	2. **-tis** = *you*
3. **-t** = *he, she, it*	3. **-nt** = *they*

Compare these endings with those used in the present tense of **sum** (20). Note that **sum** and **amō** do not use the same ending for the first person singular, but that all other endings are identical.

That part of a verb to which personal endings are added is called the *stem*. The stem of **amō** is **amā**. In the first person singular the **ā** of the stem is lost before the ending **-ō**; in the third person singular and in the third person plural it becomes short. In the vocabularies of this chapter the first conjugation verbs are those of which the first person singular is given, as is customary in giving verbs. These verbs are conjugated exactly like **amō**.

Be careful to accent the first and second persons plural on the **ā** of the stem, and the other forms on the preceding syllable. (See Rules for Pronunciation, Introduction IV, 6.) Learn which syllables of a word are called *ultima*, *penult*, and *antepenult*, respectively. (Introduction IV, 4.) Which one of these syllables is never accented?

42. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Which verbs in this vocabulary are transitive, and which are intransitive?

NOUNS

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, supply*
silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods*

ADVERB

quoque, *also*

VERBS

amō, *I love, like*
dēmōnstrō, *I show, point out*

VERBS (*Continued*)

habitō, *I live* (See **21** and **32.**)
labōrō, *I work*
laudō, *I praise*
parō, *I make ready, prepare*
portō, *I carry*
spectō, *I look at*

CONJUNCTION

itaque, *and so, therefore*

CLAUDIA ET SECUNDA AGRICOLAM VIDENT

43. Vīlla Rōmāna

Domina vīllae pulchrae est fēmina bona et multās ancillās habet.[1] Ancillae in camerīs vīllae māgnae labōrant. Ancillae in culīnā vīllae labōrant et cēnam [2] parant. "Fīdae estis, ancillae meae," inquit domina, et ancillae fīdae bonam dominam vīllae laudant et amant. "Bona domina es," inquiunt ancillae, "et dominam nostram laudāmus et amāmus."

Claudia et Secunda in silvā pulchrā vīllae ambulant. Silva et umbra silvae puellās dēlectant. Puellae rosās pulchrās et violās multās in silvīs vident. Multae rosae silvārum sunt rubrae et paucae rosae albae sunt. Puellae rosās et violās amant et colligunt et in corbulā portant.

Claudia et Secunda ad vīllam nunc properant et casam parvam spectant. In casā parvā agricola [3] habitat et in terrā et in vīneīs labōrat. Agricola terram arat et vaccās cūrat. Agricola puellās Rōmānās nunc videt et "Quid, puellae meae," inquit, "in corbulā vestrā portātis?" "Violās," inquit Claudia, "et rosās in corbulā nostrā portāmus." Agricola quoque corbulam portat. "Quid, agricola," inquit Secunda, "in corbulā tuā portās?" "Ūvās multās portō," inquit agricola, et ūvās pulchrās in corbulā dēmōnstrat. "Ūvās amāmus," inquit Secunda, "et cōpiam ūvārum pulchrārum in vīneīs nostrīs spectāmus." "Vīneās nostrās cūrās," inquit Claudia, "itaque agricolam amāmus."

A Roman Wine Jug

44. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

agricola, -ae, m., *farmer*
ancilla, -ae, f., *female slave, maid-servant*
cēna, -ae, f., *dinner*
corbula, -ae, f., *basket*
culīna, -ae, f., *kitchen*
umbra, -ae, f., *shade, shadow, ghost*
ūva, -ae, f., *grape*
vacca, -ae, f., *cow*
vīnea, -ae, f., *vineyard*
viola, -ae, f., *violet*

ADJECTIVE

fīda, *faithful, trusty*

VERBS

ambulō, *I walk*
arō, *I plow*
colligunt, *they collect, gather* (See **34.**)
cūrō, *I take care of* (See **34.**)
dēlectō, *I please, delight* (See **34.**)
inquiunt, *they say* (See **23.**)

45. NOTES

1. A Roman matron directed her household and supervised the slaves in the performance of menial tasks. Rich Romans had hundreds of slaves; sometimes these slaves were captives taken in war.

2. **Cēna** meant the principal meal of the day. In early Roman times it took place about midday; in later times it began about three o'clock in the afternoon.

3. Note that **agricola,** like **nauta, poēta,** and sometimes **incola,** is masculine.

46. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The word **agricola** is made from two other Latin words, and means *tiller of the soil.* What does the word *agriculture* mean?

2. How did the state of *Pennsylvania* get its name?

3. The Latin ending **-ella** means *little.* What is an *umbrella?*

4. What is the connection between *vaccination* and the Latin word **vacca?**

5. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

   a. The larder was *copiously* stocked with food.

   b. The French excel in the *culinary* art.

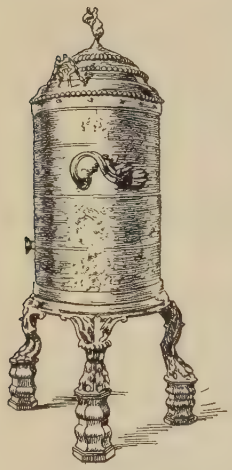
   c. Irrigation has greatly increased the amount of *arable* land.

   d. A man will be sent from the office to *demonstrate* the car.

6. A *laudable* deed is one deserving praise; *laudatory* remarks are those which express praise.

7. A *laborious* task is one that necessitates much hard work; a *laboratory* is a workshop; an *elaborate* scheme is one that involves many carefully worked out details.

8. To *prepare* is to make ready beforehand; a *preparatory* school gets pupils ready for college; an *apparatus* is a mechanism made ready for a specific purpose; an *irreparable* wrong is one that cannot be made right.



A Roman Heater

9. From **portō** come many English derivatives. Explain its connection with the following words: *porter, portable, import, export, support, report, transportation, deportment.*

10. **Spectō** has given us many English words. A *spectacle* is something to look at; *spectacles* are used to enable one to look at a thing; a *spectator* is one who looks on; to *inspect* a thing is to look at it very closely; to *expect* (Latin **exspectō**) a person is to look out for his coming; a *respectable* man is one who may be looked up to; to *suspect* is to look beneath for something not apparent on the surface: a *spectacular* performance is one that attracts attention.

EXERCISES

47. Conjugate the present tense of the verbs meaning *carry, show, praise, look at, work.*

Give the Latin forms for the following:

1. I am walking.
2. You (plur.) do love.
3. We plow.
4. He is living.
5. They praise.
6. You (sing.) are working.
7. She carries.
8. We are preparing.
9. They do live.
10. You (plur.) show.

48. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Ubi puellae ambulant?
2. Quem puellae in casā vident?
3. Quālēs (acc.) rosās puellae portant?
4. Quālem (acc.) dominam ancillae amant?
5. Cūius est māgna vīlla?
6. Quid agricola cūrat?
7. Ubi puellae rosās vident?
8. Quārum in corbulīs sunt rosae rubrae?

49. Write in Latin:

1. The mistress of the villa has faithful slaves.
2. I am carrying a few grapes in my basket.
3. What are you looking at in the forest, little girl?
4. The farmer is looking at the little girls' pretty roses.
5. Our mistress does not praise bad slaves.
6. There is an abundance of good grapes in the vineyards.
7. Claudia is pointing out the sailors' little boats.

HEAD OF THE GODDESS MINERVA (COIN)

In Viā Rōmānā

CHAPTER VI

TWO ROMAN GIRLS

PREPARATION

Dative Case, First Declension. Summary of First Declension

50. The action of some transitive verbs, especially those meaning *to give*, *to show*, and *to speak* or *tell*, passes over directly to a direct object and indirectly to another person or thing called the *indirect object*. In English the direct object is expressed by the accusative case, and the indirect object is usually expressed by using the preposition *to*, although the preposition may often be omitted. In Latin the direct object

is expressed by the accusative case (29), and the indirect object by the dative case, named from the verb **dō,** *I give* (stem **dă**). For nouns of the first declension, the ending of the dative singular is **-ae,** and of the dative plural **-īs,** like the ablative plural. The dative plural and the ablative plural are always alike in any given Latin noun, pronoun, or adjective of whatever declension.

Agricola puellīs ūvās dat. *The farmer gives grapes to the girls.*

Fēmina puellae fābulam nārrat. *The woman tells a story to the girl,* or, *The woman tells the girl a story.*

Puellīs and **puellae** are dative, being the indirect objects of the verbs **dat** and **nārrat,** whose direct objects are **ūvās** and **fābulam.**

51. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money*
porta, -ae, f., *gate*
vīta, -ae, f., *life*

ADVERBS

saepe, *often*
semper, *always*
tum, *then*

VERBS

dō,* *I give*
gerit, *he (she, it) wears, carries on*
gerunt, *they wear, carry on*
servō, *I save, keep, protect*

* The present stem of this verb ends in **ă,** except in **dās** (second pers. sing. pres. indic.), **dāns** (pres. part.), and **dā** (imv. sing.).

52. **Duae Puellae Rōmānae**

Aemilia est bona mātrōna Rōmāna. Ancillās multās habet mātrōna. Domina est multārum ancillārum et

bonās ancillās semper laudat. Ancillae dominam pulchram amant.

Aemilia fīliam parvam habet. Iūlia est fīlia parva bonae mātrōnae Rōmānae. Ancillae Aemiliae parvam fīliam dominae amant. Iūlia est pulchra puella. Tunicam[1] pulchram gerit Iūlia; bullam[2] quoque habet. Bulla pulchra Iūliam dēlectat. Puellae Rōmānae semper tunicās et bullās habent. Mātrōna Rōmāna bullam nōn habet; stolam[3] albam gerit. Mātrōnae Rōmānae semper stolās gerunt. Aemilia fīliae cārae columbam dat. Columba est alba. Iūlia columbam amat. Mātrōnae fīliābus[4] columbās saepe dant.

BULLA

Claudia est cāra amīca parvae Iūliae. Vīta amīcārum est beāta. Bonae discipulae sunt puellae, et magistra dīligentiam bonārum discipulārum laudat. In viīs lātīs Rōmae Iūlia et Claudia ambulant. Vident in viīs multās tabernās[5] et statuās pulchrās. Rōmae portās māgnās quoque vident. Fīda ancilla parvās puellās semper servat cum (*whenever*) in viīs Rōmae ambulant. Fēmina rosās rubrās et albās puellīs dēmōnstrat. "Sunt pulchrae rosae," inquit Iūlia. "Amīca mea rosās amat." Iūlia fēminae pecūniam[6] et Claudiae rosās dat. Tum ancilla puellās domum dūcit (*leads home*) et puellae mātrōnae longam fābulam nārrant. Claudia mātrōnae rosās paucās dat et mātrōna Claudiam laudat. "Bona," inquit, "puella es."

53. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Aemilia, -ae, f., *Aemilia*
amīca, -ae, f., *friend*
bulla, -ae, f., *a round ornament, locket, charm*
Claudia, -ae, f., *Claudia*
dīligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, carefulness*
fābula, -ae, f., *story, tale*
Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia*
mātrōna, -ae, f., *married woman, matron*
statua, -ae, f., *statue*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

stola, -ae, f., *robe*
taberna, -ae, f., *shop, stall*
tunica, -ae, f., *tunic*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

cuī, dat. sing., *to whom? to what?*
quibus, dat. plur., *to whom?*

ADJECTIVES

beāta, *happy*
cāra, *dear*

VERB

nārrō, *I tell*

54. NOTES

1. The tunic was a simple, straight, woolen garment, usually with short sleeves.

2. The **bulla** was a hollow locket of gold inclosing a charm. It was worn about the neck by Roman girls until marriage, and by boys until they assumed the dress of manhood.

3. The **stola** of the Roman matron was a long, dignified robe of wool, worn with a girdle and having at the bottom a wide border or flounce. The shoulders and the upper part of the loose sleeves were fastened with beautiful brooches.

4. **Fīlia** and **dea, -ae,** f., *goddess*, have in the dative and ablative plural the ending **-ābus** to distinguish these forms from the same cases of the nouns **fīlius** and **deus,** which you will learn later.

5. Goods were often sold in Rome in small stalls or shops with the entire front open to the street.

6. **Pecūnia,** from **pecus,** a *herd of cattle,* comes from an early time, when wealth was measured and payments made chiefly with cattle.

55. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following English words are almost exactly like their Latin source-words: *diligence, matron, statue, stole, tunic.*

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. The entertainment was a social and *pecuniary* success.

b. His face wore a *beatific* smile.

c. It is a fine piece of *narrative* writing.

d. *Conservation* of food was necessary during the war.

e. Croesus was a king of *fabulous* wealth.

f. He provides for an *impecunious* relative.

g. Have you a *reserved* seat?

h. The nations should dwell together in peace and *amity.*

i. The dispute was settled *amicably.*

3. From Latin **amīca,** through French, *amity* and *amiable* have come into English. Do you know the French word for *friend?*

4. What are the *beatitudes?*

5. Any official edict issued by a Pope or Emperor and sealed with a knob-like seal of lead was called a *bull.* A *bullet* was originally spherical in shape like the Roman **bulla.**

6. What do *vital* and *vitality* mean?

EXERCISES

56. Summary of First Declension

You now know all the cases of a Latin noun and can give its complete declension, placing the dative case after the

genitive, and omitting the vocative case, which is like the nominative. The complete declension of **terra** is given below.

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	terra	terrae
Gen.	terrae	terrārum
Dat.	terrae	terrīs
Acc.	terram	terrās
Abl.	terrā	terrīs

Decline in the singular and plural: **longa vīta, lāta via, cāra amīca.**

57. Translate the following sentences and account for the case of each noun:

1. Nostram vīllam pulchram amāmus.
2. Magistrae discipulīs chartam māgnam dēmōnstrō.
3. Cameram puellārum spectātis.
4. Mātrōna Rōmāna fīliae parvae bullam pulchram dat.
5. Agricolam vīllae tuae laudās.

58. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Ubi puellae tabernās vident?
2. Quibus fēmina rosās dēmōnstrat?
3. Quid mātrōna Rōmāna gerit?
4. Cuī Aemilia columbam dat?
5. Cuī Iūlia pecūniam dat?
6. Quārum dīligentiam magistra laudat?
7. Cuī puellae fābulam nārrant?

CHAPTER VII

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES; NOTEBOOK

NOTEBOOK ON DERIVATIVES

59. It must not be forgotten that one of the most important reasons for the study of Latin is the fact that from it may be gained a better knowledge of our own language. But merely learning to read Latin will not be of much assistance in gaining this better knowledge unless attention is constantly given to the connection between the two languages.

In each of the preceding chapters you have been given a paragraph about the relation of Latin words to English. Frequent review of such paragraphs is necessary, and the formation of the habit of noticing and remembering English derivatives will be greatly aided by keeping a notebook in which are put not only words to which this book calls your attention, but others that you find for yourself in your reading. Books, periodicals, and newspapers are full of such material. Include in your English derivatives of a given Latin word only those whose connection with that Latin word you have verified by reference to an English dictionary, and which you can define in such a way as to show that connection.

Your notebook should have three distinct parts (use a loose-leaf notebook):

1. Latin Words Which Have Become English with No Change in Form

How many such have been given in the preceding lessons? Divide a page into three columns and list these words according to the model on the following page:

Latin word	*Meaning in Latin*	*Meaning in English*
camera	*room*	apparatus used in taking pictures

2. English Words Derived from Latin

Use the following model:

Latin word	*English meaning*	*English derivatives*	*Definition*
aqua	*water*	aquatic	living in *water*
		aquarium	collection of creatures living in *water*
		aqueous	full of *water*
		aqueduct	conductor of *water*

Be sure the definition of each English derivative contains the English meaning of the original Latin word. This is necessary to fix in your mind the relation between the words.

List according to the model above all the English derivatives you can remember made from **patria, antīqua, spectō, portō,** and **servō.** Check these by reference to the preceding lessons and add other words if you think of any.

See how many derivatives you can think of that come from **stant** (32). After verifying them by reference to a dictionary, list them in your notebook.

3. Latin Words and Phrases That Are Used in English

Terra fīrma and **viā** (25, 6) are examples of such use. Write them in your notebook, putting the Latin word or phrase in one column, and the English meaning and any necessary explanation in a second. You will find many such phrases in your reading. List those you find, and ask your teacher to help you find

out their meaning. Determine in what way the following phrases are used in English, and put them in your notebook: **sub rosā, nōn est, mea culpa, bonā fidē.**

See how many additional English derivatives, with their Latin originals, you can recall from the preceding lessons.

60. VOCABULARY REVIEW

You should be able to give rapidly the vocabulary form and meaning of the following words, which are given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters I–VI. See in how short a time you can do this.

ad	itaque	prōvincia
amō	labōrō	puella
aperta	lāta	quoque
aqua	laudō	rēgīna
bona	longa	saepe
cōpia	māgna	sed
dēmōnstrō	mala	semper
dō	mea	servō
erat	multa	silva
erant	multae	spectō
et	nōn	stant
fēmina	nostra	sum
fīlia	nova	terra
gerit	nunc	tua
gerunt	parō	tum
habet	parva	ubi
habent	patria	vestra
habitō	paucae	via
iam	pecūnia	vident
in	porta	vīta
īnsula	portō	

61. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

Inflection includes declension and conjugation. You should be able to decline rapidly any first declension noun, alone or combined with an adjective, and to conjugate the present tense of **sum** and of any first conjugation verb. Time yourself in reciting and in writing the declension of **fenestra aperta**; the present tense of **ambulō**.

In the first declension what endings are used for a direct object? for an indirect object? for a subject? for a possessive? for a predicate noun or adjective? after the preposition **in**? Learn these so thoroughly that you can answer without hesitation.

Recite the personal endings used in the active voice. What is meant by the *stem* of a verb? In what letter does the stem of the first conjugation end?

62. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

Syntax means grammatical use. You should know the following rules:

RULES OF SYNTAX. —

a. The nominative case is used to express: the subject, a predicate noun or adjective.

b. The genitive case expresses possession, and corresponds to the English genitive case or a phrase with of.

c. The dative case is used for the indirect object after verbs of giving, showing, telling, and similar verbs.

d. The accusative case is used for the direct object of a transitive verb, and as the object of certain prepositions, as, for example, **ad**.

e. The vocative case is used for direct address.

f. The ablative case with the preposition **in** *expresses place where.*

g. Verbs agree in person and number with their subjects.

h. Adjectives, including possessive adjectives, whether attributive or predicate, agree in number, gender, and case with the nouns they modify.

REVIEW EXERCISES

The writing of the following exercises will test your knowledge of the preceding vocabulary, inflections, and rules of syntax. Do your best to avoid mistakes.

63. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. Māgn— silv— in me— patri— sunt.
2. Parvae fīliae bon— mātrōnae in pulchr— vīll— habit—.
3. Māgn— port—(plur.) Rōmae antīqu— Iūlia et Claudia spectant.
4. Nostra domina māgn— cōpi— ancill— bon— habet.
5. Pulchra rēgīna fīli—(sing.) mult— pecūni— dat.
6. In mult— terr— Eurōpae sunt bon— vi—.

64. Write in Latin:

1. The queen of my native land is a beautiful woman.
2. You are good girls.
3. In the provinces there were broad roads.
4. The women always praise the little girls' diligence.
5. The farmers often tell long stories to the little girls.
6. I am giving my faithful servants money.
7. In the water there are many islands.

LŪDUS RŌMĀNUS

CHAPTER VIII

A ROMAN SCHOOL

You will be interested to notice that, while a Roman school differed in many respects from a modern one, it yet had some points of resemblance.

PREPARATION

SECOND DECLENSION, MASCULINE NOUNS IN **-us** AND **-er**. MASCULINE FORM OF ADJECTIVES

65. The first declension, we have seen, contains, with a few exceptions, only feminine nouns. In the second declension we shall find a large number of masculine nouns, and a different set of endings for the cases. Learn the following paradigms before attempting to read the Latin of this chapter.

servus, *slave*

BASE, **serv-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	servus	servī
GEN.	servī	servōrum
DAT.	servō	servīs
ACC.	servum	servōs
VOC.	serve	servī
ABL.	servō	servīs

puer, *boy*

BASE, **puer-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	puer	puerī
GEN.	puerī	puerōrum
DAT.	puerō	puerīs
ACC.	puerum	puerōs
ABL.	puerō	puerīs

liber, *book*

BASE, **libr-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	liber	librī
GEN.	librī	librōrum
DAT.	librō	librīs
ACC.	librum	librōs
ABL.	librō	librīs

vir, *man*

BASE, **vir-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	vir	virī
GEN.	virī	virōrum
DAT.	virō	virīs
ACC.	virum	virōs
ABL.	virō	virīs

Notice

1. That the nominative of masculine nouns of the second declension may end in **-us, -er,** or **-ir.**

2. That the genitive singular ending is always **-ī,** which will be given in the vocabulary form of each noun to indicate that it belongs to the second declension.

3. That nouns whose nominative ends in **-er** sometimes keep **e** throughout the declension, as **puer,** and sometimes drop it in the genitive and succeeding cases, as **liber.** In the vocabulary form the genitive will always be given in such a way as to show whether a given noun in **-er** retains or drops **e.**

4. In the declension of **servus** the vocative is given because

second declension nouns ending in **-us** have in the singular a vocative ending different from the nominative. This is not true of nouns in **-er** and **-ir.**

5. That the following endings are alike:

The genitive singular and the nominative plural.

The dative and the ablative singular.

The dative and the ablative plural (**50,** end), and that this ending is the same as that used for those cases in the first declension.

66. Adjectives, when modifying masculine nouns, must have a masculine form (**62,** *h*). All the adjectives contained in preceding vocabularies have masculine forms ending like the second declension masculine nouns of this chapter, some in **-us,** others in **-er.** The vocabulary below repeats some of these adjectives, giving both the masculine nominative and the feminine nominative. The masculine adjective is declined like the second declension masculine nouns. Of those whose masculine ends in **-er,** some drop **e** in the declension, others retain it. The feminine nominative shows whether the **e** is dropped or retained, *e.g.*, **pulcher, pulchra; miser, misera.**

An adjective modifying a masculine noun of the first declension must be in the masculine form (*i.e.*, of the second declension), as adjectives declined with first declension endings are feminine only. In such cases, therefore, agreement of the noun and adjective necessitates their having different endings, *e.g.*, **fīdus agricola,** *the faithful farmer;* **bonus nauta,** *the good sailor.*

67. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Note that three masculine nouns in the vocabularies of this chapter have each a corresponding feminine noun with

similar meaning, given in a preceding vocabulary. This is often true of nouns referring to persons, as in English, *e.g.*, *master, mistress; priest, priestess*. In all vocabularies a Latin word in parentheses following a vocabulary word is one previously given, from which the vocabulary word is derived, or whose meaning is otherwise connected with it.

The adjectives marked * are those whose feminine form has been previously given.

NOUNS

amīcus, -ī, m. (amīca), *friend*
annus, -ī, m., *year*
liber, librī, m., *book*
līttera, -ae, f., sing., *letter* (of the alphabet); plur., *a letter, an epistle, literature*
puer, puerī, m., *boy*
servus, -ī, m., *slave*
vir, virī, m., *man*

ADJECTIVES

* **bonus, -a,** *good*
* **māgnus, -a,** *large*
miser, -era, *unhappy, miserable*
* **parvus, -a,** *small, little*
pūblicus, -a, *public*
septem (indecl.), *seven*

VERB

scrībunt, *they write*

68. Lūdus Rōmānus

Parvus puer Rōmānus ad lūdum māne[1] properat. Puer Rōmānus est Mārcus, et tunicam et togam praetextam[2] et calceōs[3] gerit. Mārcus septem annōs nātus est (*is . . . old*). Servus fīdus Mārcum in viā servat et librōs[4] et tabellās[5] parvī puerī portat. Servus fīdus est paedagōgus.[6] Mārcus et paedagōgus in viīs ad lūdum ambulant.

Lūdus Mārcī nōn est pūblicus sed prīvātus lūdus, et in hortō pulchrō est. Līberī virōrum Rōmānōrum nōn in lūdīs pūblicīs sed in prīvātīs lūdīs sunt. Paedagōgus Mārcō librōs et tabellās dat. Paucī puerī sunt in lūdō

et Mārcus amīcōs in lūdō videt. Sextus et Aulus et Decimus et Titus sunt discipulī lūdī et amīcī Mārcī. Mārcus magistrum lūdī et amīcōs salūtat. "Salvē,[7] Ō magister; salvēte [7] puerī," inquit Mārcus. "Salvē, Mārce," inquiunt magister et amīcī Mārcī.

In tabellīs discipulōrum est cēra. Puerī stilōs habent et in cērā tabellārum līttерās scrībunt. Discipulī magis-

ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

Notice especially the ink container, the book, and the letter tablets.

trō tabellās dēmōnstrant. Magister lūdī est vir sevērus et pigrum puerum nōn laudat. "Nōn labōrās, puer piger," inquit magister, et discipulum pigrum flagellat. Tum miser est discipulus piger et labōrat. Bonōrum discipulōrum dīligentiam magister laudat. Magister discipulīs fābulās et vītās [8] māgnōrum virōrum Rōmānōrum nārrat.

"Valēte,[7] discipulī," inquit magister. "Valē,[7] magister," inquiunt discipulī. Nunc lūdus est clausus et paedagōgus Mārcum domum dūcit.

69. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

calceus, -ī, m., *shoe*
cēra, -ae, f., *wax*
discipulus, -ī, m. (discipula), *pupil*
hortus, -ī, m., *garden*
līberī, -ōrum, m. plur., *children*
lūdus, -ī, m., *school*
magister, -trī, m. (magistra), *master* (of school), *teacher*
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*
paedagōgus, -ī, m., *paedagogus* (a slave who conducted his master's son to school)
stilus, -ī, m., *stylus* (a pointed instrument for writing)
tabella, -ae, f. (tabula), *tablet*
toga, -ae, f., *toga*

ADVERB

māne, *early, in the morning*

ADJECTIVES

* **clausus, -a,** *closed*
* **fīdus, -a,** *faithful, trusty*
piger, -gra, *lazy*
praetextus, -a, *bordered*
prīvātus, -a, *private*
* **pulcher, -chra,** *beautiful, pretty*
* **Rōmānus, -a,** *Roman*
sevērus, -a, *severe, stern*

VERBS

flagellō, *I whip*
salūtō, *I greet, salute*
salvē, sing., **salvēte,** plur., *good morning! greetings!*
valē, sing., **valēte,** plur., *good-by! farewell!*

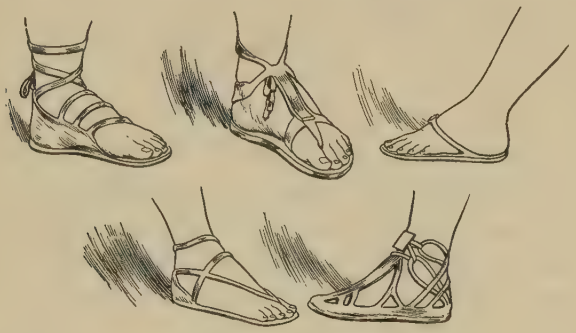
70. NOTES

1. **Māne.** School began before sunrise in Rome. In southern countries no work is done during the heat of midday.

2. The distinctive dress of the Roman man was the **toga,** an oblong piece of white woolen cloth, rounded at the corners. It was folded and draped about the body in a special way. It was not worn in the house. The **toga praetexta,** worn by boys, differed from the ordinary toga in having a purple border. It was laid aside at about sixteen, and the **toga virīlis,** or *manly*

toga, was assumed. The boy was then considered a man, and his name was added to the citizen list.

3. **Calceus.** The Romans usually wore sandals at home, and out of doors shoes of leather, laced or fastened with



CALCEĪ

straps. These varied in style, each class of people having a different one.

4. **Librī.** Books were written on long strips, generally of papyrus, and rolled on a rod. Pages were parallel columns divided by vertical lines. One end of the manuscript was rolled up as the reader finished a page, and the other end was unrolled to present a new one.

5. **Tabellae** were rectangular pieces of wood with frames, much like a slate, and covered on one side with wax. On this one wrote with a **stilus,** a pointed stick of ivory, metal, or wood. Letters were written on two tablets placed with their waxed surfaces together, tied with string, and sealed.

6. The **paedagōgus** was a slave under whose special charge a boy was put, and whose business it was to attend him to school, remain with him there, and conduct him home at its close. A Roman boy kept his **paedagōgus** as his personal attendant as long as he wore the **toga praetexta.**

7. **Salvē, salvēte, valē, valēte.** These forms are really imperatives of two verbs meaning *be safe*, and *be well*, and are the regular forms of greeting and farewell. Notice that the English *farewell*, "fare you (ye) well," means exactly the same thing as **valē** and **valēte.**

8. **Vītae** when used in the plural means *lives* in the sense of *biographies*.

71. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Why is a *library* so called? How may the spelling of this word help you to distinguish the plural of the Latin word for *books* from the one meaning *children?* The *libretto* of an opera is the book of its words. This comes from the Latin through Italian.

2. What change of meaning has the word **paedagōgus** undergone in becoming the English word *pedagogue?*

3. The month of *September* was the seventh month of the Roman year.

4. Three nouns of this chapter, **vir, puer,** and **servus,** have given us three English adjectives with the same ending, *virile*, *puerile*, and *servile*. This ending comes from the Latin adjective ending **-īlis,** meaning *relating to, belonging to*. What do these English adjectives mean? Use them in sentences.

5. The Latin ending **-ella** has already been referred to in the English word *umbrella*. In **tabella** it has the same meaning; a **tabella** is a *little board*. The English derivative word *tablet* also uses a diminutive ending.

6. The following words have changed very little from their Latin originals: *private*, *public*, *severe*, *letter*.

7. **Līttera** has many English derivatives. An *illiterate* person cannot read or write, "does not know his letters";

a *literal* translation is one that follows the original language word for word, letter by letter; a *literary* attainment is an achievement in the field of letters, or *literature*.

8. The word *serf*, meaning a slave bound to the soil, comes through French from the Latin word **servus**. What is *servitude?* What other English derivatives with the ending *-tude* have you learned?

9. The following are among the many English words derived from **annus**. An *annual* meeting is one occurring yearly; a *biennial* meeting occurs every two years; an *anniversary* is the yearly recurrence of the date of an important event; a *centennial* celebration is in recognition of the hundredth anniversary of an event; an *annuity* is a stipend paid yearly; a person who is retired on a pension after years of service is called *superannuated*.

EXERCISES

72. Decline **malus servus; amīcus noster; vir sevērus; bonus nauta; liber pulcher; bonus discipulus; puer piger; agricola fīdus.**

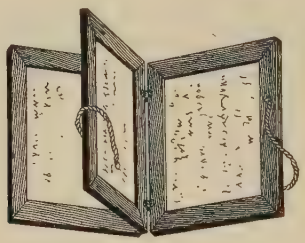
73. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. Bon— magister discipul— pigr— nōn laudat.
2. In tabell— puerī parvī līter— scrībunt.
3. Līberī vir—(plur.) Rōmān— ad lūd— properant.
4. Discipulī nostrī lūdī libr— et tabell— et stil— habe—.
5. Servus fīd— puer—(sing.) libr—(plur.) māgn— dat.

74. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Ubi puerī Rōmānī māne sunt?
2. Quid paedagōgus portat?

3. Cūius librōs paedagōgus portat?
4. Ubi est lūdus?
5. Quālēs puerōs magister flagellat?
6. Quōrum (gen. plur. m.) vītās magister discipulīs nārrat?
7. Quibus magister "Salvēte" inquit?
8. Ubi discipulī līttерās scrībunt?
9. Cuī puerī tabellās dēmōnstrant?
10. Quōrum dīligentiam magister laudat?
11. Quālis vir est magister?



A Letter

CHAPTER IX

A VISIT TO A ROMAN FARM

In early times the Romans were an agricultural people, each man having a small farm of a few acres, which he worked himself. In later times the land was owned by a comparatively small number of rich Romans who maintained extensive villas (Chapters IV–V) or farms, on which slave labor was employed.

PREPARATION

Second Declension, Neuter Nouns. Neuter Adjectives. Appositives

75. The second declension contains neuter nouns as well as masculines. Their nominative singular ending is **-um.** The vocabulary form shows by the genitive ending **-ī,** as in the case of masculines, that they belong to the second declension. Learn the following paradigm:

oppidum, *town*

Base, **oppid-**

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	oppid**um**	oppid**a**
Gen.	oppid**ī**	oppid**ōrum**
Dat.	oppid**ō**	oppid**īs**
Acc.	oppid**um**	oppid**a**
Abl.	oppid**ō**	oppid**īs**

Notice

1. That the endings of neuter nouns are unlike those of masculine nouns of this declension in the nominative singular, nominative plural, and accusative plural.

2. That the nominative and accusative singular have the same ending, and that the nominative and accusative plural both end in **-a**. Neuter nouns and adjectives of whatever declension always have the nominative and accusative alike, and have the ending **-a** for those cases in the plural.

3. That the vocative is like the nominative in both numbers, and therefore need not be given separately.

76. Adjectives modifying neuter nouns must have a neuter form (**62,** *h*). The neuter forms of all adjectives previously given are declined like **oppidum.** The vocabulary form of an adjective gives its nominative singular in each of the three genders. This form will be used henceforward in the vocabularies, *e.g.*, **māgnus, -a, -um; miser, -era, -erum; pulcher, -chra, -chrum.**

77. A noun used to denote the same person or thing as another noun and to explain more fully its meaning is called an *appositive,* and is said to be in *apposition* with the noun it explains. An appositive must be in the same case as the noun it explains.

Do not confuse appositives with predicate nouns; both mean the same person or thing as another noun, but an appositive stands immediately after the noun it explains, and like that noun may be in any case; a predicate noun stands after a copulative verb, such as **sum,** and, as it can refer only to the subject, it can be in no case but the nominative.

Poēta, dominus vīllae, servōs habet. *The poet, master of the villa, has slaves.* **Dominus** is in apposition with **poēta.**

Poēta est dominus vīllae. *The poet is master of the villa.* **Dominus** is a predicate noun.

Sumus in Ītaliā, pulchrā terrā Eurōpae. *We are in Italy, a beautiful country of Europe.* **Terrā** is in apposition with **Ītaliā.**

Ītalia est pulchra terra Eurōpae. *Italy is a beautiful country of Europe.* **Terra** is a predicate noun.

Lȳdum servum laudat. *He praises Lydus the slave.* **Servum** is an appositive of **Lȳdum.**

78. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Adjectives marked * are those whose vocabulary form has already been given in part.

NOUNS

ager, agrī, m. (agricola), *field*
caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens*
dominus, -ī, m. (domina), *master* (of a house)
equus, -ī, m., *horse*
familia, -ae, f., *family*
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*
grātia, -ae, f., *gratitude;* **grātiās agunt,** *they give thanks*
locus, -ī, m., *place,* plur., **locī,** m., and **loca,** n.
numerus, -ī, m., *number*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town*

ADJECTIVES

* **bonus, -a, -um,** *good*
* **lātus, -a, -um,** *broad, wide*
* **māgnus, -a, -um,** *large, great*
* **meus, -a, -um,** *my, mine*
* **miser, -era, -erum,** *unhappy, miserable*
* **multus, -a, -um,** *much,* plur., *many*
* **noster, -tra, -trum,** *our, ours*

79. Mārcellus et Līberī Vīllam Rōmānam Vīsitant

Mārcellus, poēta Rōmānus, et Mārcus et Claudia, līberī poētae Rōmānī, vīllam Rōmānam vīsitant. In pulchrō locō est vīlla et agrōs multōs habet. Clārum est caelum et agrī sunt pulchrī.

Syrus, servus fīdus Mārcellī, dominī vīllae, est vīlicus.[1] Vīlicus agrōs vīllae et vīneās et olīvās[2] et armenta[3] et servōs multōs cūrat. Dominus vīllae, Mārcellus, māgnum

VĪLICUS DOMINŌ AGRŌS ET ARMENTA DĒMŌNSTRAT

numerum servōrum habet. Syrus vīlicus Mārcellum, dominum vīllae, videt et salūtat. "Salvē, Ō domine noster," inquit vīlicus, et "Salvē, mī[4] vīlice," inquit Mārcellus. Mārcellus et vīlicus in agrīs ambulant. Vīlicus Mārcellō, dominō vīllae, agrōs et vīneās et olīvās et armenta dēmōnstrat. Agrī bonī et vīneae bonae poētam, dominum vīllae, dēlectant. Dominus vīllae vīlicum et agricolās bonōs laudat. In agrīs lātīs dominus agricolās bonōs videt. Agricolae bonī arātra[5] habent et multōs agrōs arant. In agrīs sunt multa frūmenta, cibus servōrum et familiae dominī vīllae. Servī pābulum multum, cibum equōrum et vaccārum, ad horreum māgnum portant. Equī frūmentum et oleum ad oppida portant. Oppida multa erant in Ītaliā antīquā. Servī equōs et

vaccās cūrant. Servī multī in agrīs labōrant. Servī vīllae saepe in vinculīs labōrant et servōs pigrōs vīlicus flagellat. Vīta servōrum nōn beāta, sed misera est.[6]

Mārcus et Claudia, fīlia Mārcellī, in hortō vīllae ambulant et columbīs cibum et aquam dant. Mārcellus poēta fīliae Claudiae columbam albam, dōnum pulchrum, et puerō Mārcō equum dat. Dōna pulchra līberōs dēlectant et Mārcellō grātiās agunt.

80. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

arātrum, -ī, n. (arō), *plow*
armentum, -ī, n., *herd of cattle*
cibus, -ī, m., *food*
dōnum, -ī, n. (dō), *gift*
horreum, -ī, n., *storehouse, barn*
Mārcellus, -ī, m., *Marcellus.*
oleum, -ī, n., *olive oil, oil*
olīva, -ae, f., *olive tree*
pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder*
vīlicus, -ī, m. (vīlica), *overseer, steward*
vinculum, -ī, n., *bond, chain*

ADJECTIVES

* **antīquus, -a, -um,** *old, ancient*

ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

* **beātus, -a, -um,** *happy*
clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright, famous*
* **fīdus, -a, -um,** *faithful, trusty*
* **niger, -gra, -grum,** *black*
* **piger, -gra, -grum,** *lazy*
* **pulcher, -chra, -chrum,** *pretty, beautiful*
quāle, neut. sing., **quālia,** neut. plur., *of what kind?* (See **5.**)
* **Rōmānus, -a, -um** (Rōma), *Roman*

VERB

vīsitō (videt), *I visit, go to see*

81. NOTES

1. The **vīlicus** was responsible for the care of the estate to his master, who might at any moment come to inspect it. He had to superintend the slaves, provide them with food and

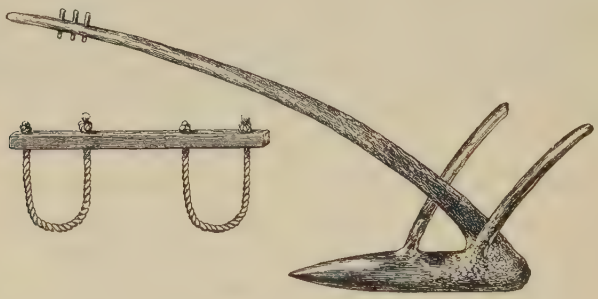
clothing, and see that farm implements were in proper condition. The **vīlica** had the care of matters in the house, and of the poultry.

2. The vine and the olive were widely cultivated, and were the most important crops, although vegetable raising and flower gardening were common.

3. The working of the land belonging to a **vīlla** required the labor of many oxen.

4. The vocative singular masculine of the adjective **meus, -a, -um** is **mī.**

5. The Roman plow in early times was a very primitive affair, made of a stout sapling pointed at the end and furnished



A Roman Plow and Yoke

with a rude handle. Plows of later periods were much like those now used. Notice the two handles in this illustration. What is the purpose of the long projection to the left? Are modern yokes like the one here pictured?

6. The slaves who worked in the fields were generally more cruelly treated than the domestic slaves, who, in individual cases at least, had many privileges. Those who cultivated the soil worked in gangs, some of them in chains, and were often beaten by their overseer.

82. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. The *donor* of the statue was present at its unveiling.
   b. *Equestrians* are not allowed on the footpaths.
   c. Many things seemed *unfamiliar* after my long absence.
   d. He would express himself with greater *clarity* if he would *clarify* his ideas.
   e. He is an *ingrate* if he does not stand by his friend in trouble.

2. The following words have changed very little from their Latin source-words: *visit, olive.*

3. Show that the following words are derived from **locus:** *locate, locality, dislocate, locomotive.* Can you think of others?

4. We have many English words connected with **numerus.** To have *numerous* friends is to have a large number of them; to *enumerate* objects is to tell them off by number; *innumerable* means numberless; a *numerical* puzzle is one dealing with numbers; the *numerator* of a common fraction gives the number of parts to be taken of the whole.

EXERCISES

83. Decline **pulchrum dōnum; equus niger; māgnum armentum; nostra familia; lātus ager; amīcus meus.**

84. Translate the following sentences, and account for the ending of each word in black type:

1. Mārcellus, **dominus** vīllae, in **agrīs** agricolās **multōs** videt.
2. Claudia, pulchra **puella,** est **fīlia** poētae **bonī.**
3. Vīlicus **Mārcellō dominō vīneās** lātās dēmōnstrat.
4. **Arātra** bona miserī servī nōn habent.
5. Equus **niger** est **dōnum** pulchrum **Mārcellī.**

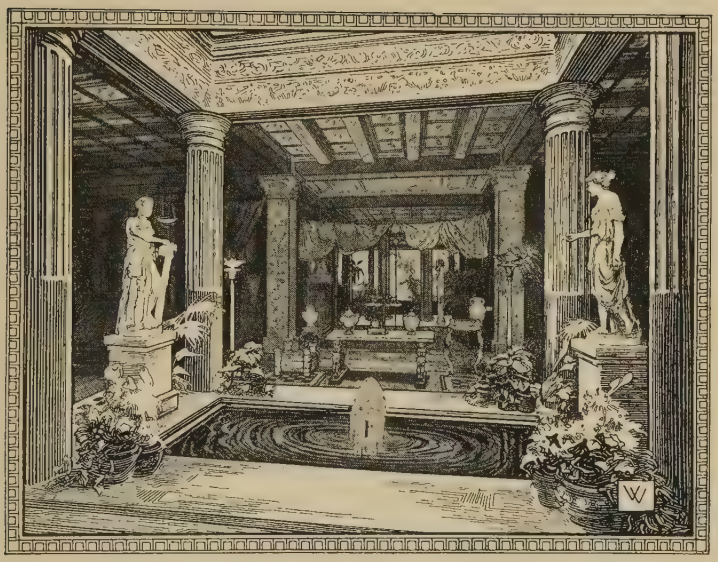
85. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quālēs agricolās poēta Rōmānus in agrīs videt?
2. Quid dominus vīllae fīliae parvae dat?
3. Quālia dōna dominus vīllae Mārcō et Claudiae dat?
4. Quāle caelum poēta et fīlia spectant?
5. Cūius vīllam Syrus vīlicus cūrat?
6. Quem vīlicus salūtat?

86. Write in Latin:

1. A Roman poet is master of the large villa.
2. In the fields of the poet's villa are many herds.
3. The overseer, a stern man, looks after the slaves, the herds, and the vineyards.
4. We are looking at the roses in the garden of Marcellus, the Roman poet.
5. You are not giving grain and water, lazy slave, to the horses and herds.

A Slave Lash



DOMICILIUM RŌMĀNUM

The Roman House at Saratoga, New York.

CHAPTER X

A ROMAN HOUSE IN THE CITY

The house described here is the city dwelling of a well-to-do Roman family of the classical period. Houses of earlier times were much smaller, sometimes having but one room; in the later days of the Roman empire they were often more elaborate than the one about which we are to read.

PREPARATION

SECOND DECLENSION, NOUNS IN **-ius** AND **-ium**. IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES OF **sum**

87. Some masculine nouns of the second declension end in **-ius** instead of **-us,** and some neuter nouns end in **-ium** instead of **-um.** Learn the following paradigms:

fīlius, *son*		praemium, *reward*	
BASE, **fīli-**		BASE, **praemi-**	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM. fīlius	fīliī	NOM. praemium	praemia
GEN. fīlī (fīliī)	fīliōrum	GEN. praemī (praemiī)	praemiōrum
DAT. fīliō	fīliīs	DAT. praemiō	praemiīs
ACC. fīlium	fīliōs	ACC. praemium	praemia
VOC. fīlī	fīliī	ABL. praemiō	praemiīs
ABL. fīliō	fīliīs		

Notice

1. The usual case endings are preceded by **i,** as in the nominative, in all cases but the shorter form of the genitive singular of both **fīlius** and **praemium,** and in the vocative singular of **fīlius.**

2. The vocative singular of **fīlius** is not like that of nouns ending in **-us** (65), but is the same as the shorter form of the genitive singular. Proper names in **-ius** also have this form of the vocative, *e.g.*, **Lūcius,** vocative **Lūcī.**

3. The shorter form of the genitive singular is the more common. It is easily distinguished from the nominative plural of masculine nouns, which is never shortened. Its accent is on the same syllable as in the nominative, *e.g.*, **domicílium** (nominative), **domicílī** (genitive).

88. Review the conjugation of the present tense of **sum** (20) and the personal endings of the active voice (41). The imperfect (past) and the future tenses of the verb **sum,** given on the following page, should be committed to memory. You have already learned the third persons, singular and plural, of the imperfect.

IMPERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **eram,** *I was*	1. **erāmus,** *we were*
2. **erās,** *you were*	2. **erātis,** *you were*
3. **erat,** *he (she, it) was, there was*	3. **erant,** *they were, there were*

FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **erō,** *I shall be*	1. **erimus,** *we shall be*
2. **eris,** *you will be*	2. **eritis,** *you will be*
3. **erit,** *he (she, it) will be, there will be*	3. **erunt,** *they will be, there will be*

Are the same personal endings used as in the present tense of **sum**? Notice that the vowel **a** in the imperfect is long in the second person singular, the first person plural, and the second person plural, like the stem vowel **ā** in the present tense of **amō** (41). What is the difference in the position of the accent in pronouncing **erāmus** and **erimus**? **erātis** and **eritis**? See the rules for pronunciation (Introduction IV, 6, *c*).

89. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

fīlius, -ī, m. (fīlia), *son*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*
praemium, -ī, n., *reward*
spatium, -ī, n., *space, distance*
verbum, -ī, n., *word*

PREPOSITION

per (with acc.), *through*

CONJUNCTION

sī, *if*

90. Urbānum Domicilium Rōmānum

Domicilium virī Rōmānī est māgnum et camerās multās sed paucās fenestrās habet. Prope viam (*near the street*) domicilium tabernās parvās habet, et in ōstiō pīctūram [1] et verba "Cavē canem!" (*Beware of the dog!*) spectāmus. Per ōstium ātrium [2] intrāmus. Ātrium, camera māgna et pulchra, pīctūrās pulchrās in mūrīs pīctās (*painted*) habet.[3] In tēctō ātrī est spatium apertum. Per spatium apertum caelum clārum spectāmus et aqua pluvia intrat.[4] In impluviō [5] est aqua. In ātriō sunt columnae marmoreae et mēnsae et sellae et subsellia et lucernae. In ātriō dominus amīcōs salūtat. In tablīnō [6] dominus tabulās et arcam habet, et in arcā pulchrā pecūniam servat.

Peristȳlum [7] est locus apertus et tēctum nōn habet. In peristȳlō sunt hortus pulcher et statuae. Columnae et camerae multae peristȳlum circumstant. Trīclīnium et cubicula domicilī et culīna et parvae camerae servōrum et ancillārum ad peristȳlum spectant. Trīclīnium est camera ubi dominus et domina et līberī et amīcī cēnant. Cubicula domicilī parva sunt et lectōs habent. Peristȳlum familiam dēlectat. In peristȳlō līberī ambulant et domina fīliīs et fīliābus [8] fābulās nārrat, et dominus disciplīnam dat.

"Ubi, mī [9] fīlī," [10] inquit dominus, "herī erās?" "In lūdō meō herī eram," inquit Mārcus, fīlius dominī. "Quālis puer in lūdō tuō erās?" "Malus eram puer et piger discipulus, sed hodiē bonus sum, et crās bonus erō." "In vīllā nostrā," inquit dominus, "crās erimus et amīcī

tuī, Sextus et Lūcius, sī bonī puerī eritis, erunt in vīllā nostrā. Hoc (*this*) erit praemium puerōrum bonōrum." 30

91. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

arca, -ae, f., *chest, box*
ātrium, -ī, n., *atrium* (chief room of a Roman house)
columna, -ae, f., *pillar, column*
cubiculum, -ī, n., *sleeping-room*
disciplīna, -ae, f. (discipulus), *training, instruction*
domicilium, -ī, n., *dwelling*
impluvium, -ī, n., *basin for receiving rain-water*
lectus, -ī, m., *bed, couch*
ōstium, -ī, n., *entrance*
peristȳlum, -ī, n., *peristyle* (court inclosed by a colonnade)
subsellium, -ī, n., *a low bench*
tablīnum, -ī, n., *record room* (room where family records were kept)

NOUNS (*Continued*)

tēctum, -ī, n., *roof, covering*
trīclīnium, -ī, n., *dining-room*

ADJECTIVES

marmoreus, -a, -um, *marble*
pluvius, -a, -um (impluvium), *rain-, relating to rain*
urbānus, -a, -um, *of a city, in the city*

VERBS

cēnō (cēna), *I dine*
circumstō (stant), *I stand around*
intrō, *I enter*

ADVERBS

crās, to-morrow
herī, yesterday
hodiē, to-day

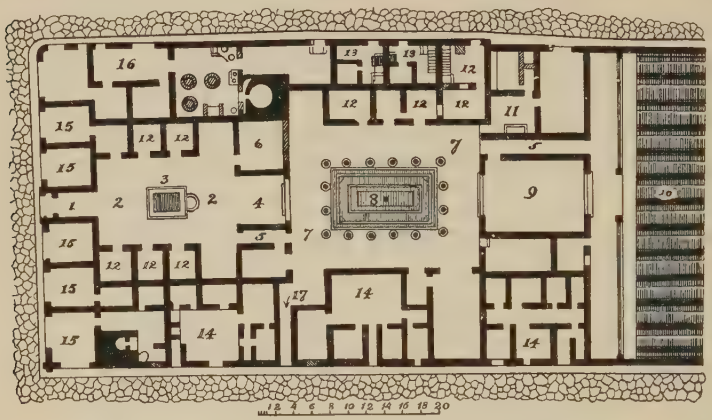
92. NOTES

1. On the threshold of many houses was a colored mosaic having the figure of a watch-dog, and the words **Cavē canem.**

2. The atrium was the main apartment or living-room of the Roman house.

3. The walls were covered with frescoes. In Pompeii may be seen many ruined houses which show plainly such decorations done in bright colors.

4. The roof sloped inward and downward to a square opening in the center. This served to give light and air, as there



PLAN OF THE HOUSE OF PANSA AT POMPEII

1. Ōstium. 2. Ātrium. 3. Impluvium. 4. Tablīnum. 5. *Passages.* 6. Triclīnium (*or library?*). 7. Peristȳlum. 8. *Basin, containing fountain and pool, surrounded by plants and shrubs.* 9. *A large, fine hall, a state dining-room.* 10. Hortus. 11. Culīna. 12. Cubicula. 13. *Small separate dwelling, rented out.* 14. *Larger separate dwellings, rented out.* 15. Tabernae. 16. *Bakery, rented out.* 17. *Side entrance to main dwelling.*

were few windows. An awning could be drawn across it as a protection from the sun.

5. The rain-water which fell through the opening in the roof was caught in a marble basin below, in the center of the atrium floor. Pipes laid under the floor carried off the water.

6. The **tablīnum** was the office of the house master. It was situated behind the atrium, from which it was divided by curtains only. Here the family records (**tabulae**) and the money-box were kept.

7. The peristyle, situated behind the **tablīnum,** was an open court surrounded by a colonnade. In the center were

fountains, shrubs, and flowers. A fine view of the peristyle could be had from the entrance, looking across the intervening atrium and **tablīnum,** when the latter was not shut off by its curtains.

8. See **54,** 4. You can now better understand the reason for the peculiar case ending of the dative and ablative plural of **fīlia.** The regular ending could not be distinguished from the same cases of **fīlius.**

9. See **81,** 4.

10. See **87,** 2.

93. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words are practically the same in Latin and in English: *ark, column, discipline, domicile, space, verb.*

2. Explain the italicized words:

a. The atrium was decorated with *mural* paintings.

b. The agreement was *verbal,* not written.

c. The aged man is being cared for with *filial* devotion.

3. *Procrastination* is putting things off until to-morrow.

4. The principal word in a sentence is the *verb;* a word joined to it is an *adverb.*

EXERCISES

94. Decline **ātrium Rōmānum; fīlius meus; mūrus altus; māgnum praemium; longum verbum; arca pulchra.**

95. Give the Latin forms for the following:

1. I was.
2. They will be.
3. They were.
4. We are.
5. You (plur.) were.
6. You (sing.) will be.
7. We shall be.
8. We were.
9. You (sing.) were.
10. You (plur.) will be.

96. Complete these sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. In pulchr— peristȳl— domicilī nostrī ambulāmus.
2. Domicil— Rōmān— multās camerās habent.
3. Quid, meī fīliī, in corbul— vestr— portā —?
4. Dominus vīllae serv—(plur.) pigr— praem— nōn dat.
5. In ātr— māgn— domicilī mult— column— stant.

97. Write in Latin:

1. Yesterday we were in a beautiful Roman house.
2. In the houses of the ancient Romans there were many rooms and many slaves.
3. The sons of Marcellus, the master of the house, are showing the peristyle to (their) friends.
4. "Where will our master and (his) children be tomorrow?" say the slaves.
5. The wretched slaves of the large villa are working in the fields.

A Roman Mosaic

CHAPTER XI

ROMAN WARS

Rome did not make herself mistress of the Mediterranean world without many wars. The Romans developed the science of war, and maintained their hold on conquered territory largely by military authority. Some knowledge of the methods of warfare employed by Rome is necessary to an understanding of her power.

PREPARATION

Summary of Nouns and Adjectives, First and Second Declensions. Ablative of Means

98. Summary of Nouns

	Ending, nom. sing.	*Ending, gen. sing.*	*Gender*
FIRST DECLENSION	-a	-ae	Feminine, except words referring to males.
SECOND DECLENSION	-us, -ius, -er, -ir	-ī	Masculine
	-um, -ium	-ī	Neuter

99. Summary of Adjectives

The complete declension in all genders of adjectives of the first and second declensions is shown in the following paradigms. Such a declension should be recited *across* instead

of *down*, giving all the forms of the nominative singular, then all those of the genitive, and so on.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Nom	piger	pigra	pigrum	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Gen.	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
Dat.	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
Acc.	pigrum	pigram	pigrum	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
Abl.	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

100. The ablative case is used to express many ideas besides that of place where with the preposition **in** (19). A second use is called the *ablative of means* and is shown in the following sentences:

Rōmānī tēlīs pūgnant. *The Romans fight with weapons.*

Agricolae frūmentum equīs portant. *The farmers are bringing the grain on (by means of) horses.*

In these sentences the ablative words **tēlīs** and **equīs** name the means or instrument by which the action of the verb is done. The ablative of means is never a person. It is always

expressed in Latin without a preposition. The English translation may be *by, with, by means of,* and other such words.

101. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *The ablative is used without a preposition to express the means or instrument of an action.*

102. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

arma, -ōrum, n. plur., *defensive arms, armor*
auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, assistance*
bellum, -ī, n., *war*
castra, -ōrum, n. plur., *camp*
cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, advice*
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance;* plur., **impedīmenta, -ōrum,** *baggage, baggage-train*
imperium, -ī, n., *military authority, empire*
nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message*
perīculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril*
populus, -ī, m., *people, nation*
praesidium, -ī, n., *protection, garrison*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

proelium, -ī, n., *battle*
sīgnum, -ī, n., *signal, standard*
socius, -ī, m., *ally*
tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon*
vāllum, -ī, n., *wall, rampart*

VERBS

occupō, *I seize, take possession of*
oppūgnō, *I attack, assault*
pūgnō, *I fight*
superō, *I conquer, surpass*

PREPOSITIONS

dē (followed by abl.), *down from, concerning*
in (followed by acc.), *into, to, against* (Compare **21.**)

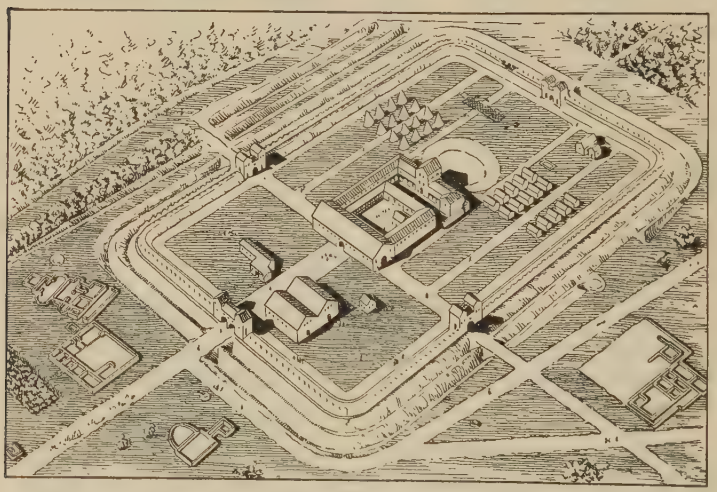
CONJUNCTION

neque, *and not, nor, neither*

103. **Bella Rōmānōrum**

Rōmānī multa bella in multīs terrīs Eurōpae et in Asiā et in Āfricā saepe gerunt. Multa perīcula in bellō et in proeliīs sunt, sed bella et proelia virōs Rōmānōs dēlectant. Longum et lātum erat imperium Rōmānōrum et multae terrae erant prōvinciae Rōmae antīquae. 5

Māgnum numerum oppidōrum Rōmānī oppūgnant et occupant. Oppida Galliae mūrōs habent, sed mūrī incolīs oppidōrum praesidium nōn dant neque incolās servant. Rōmānī Galliam et incolās Galliae proeliō superant. Gallia erat prōvincia Rōmāna. Incolae Galliae Rōmānīs tribūtum, frūmentum et vīnum et oleum, dant. Agricolae prōvinciārum arātrīs agrōs arant et cōpiam frūmentī



Plan of a Roman Camp

habent, sed multum frūmentum agrōrum tribūtum Rōmānīs dominīs dant.

Castra[1] lāta et longa Rōmānī habent. In castrīs erant viae et tabernācula et casae. Mīlitēs (*soldiers*) Rōmānī in casīs et in tabernāculīs habitant. Multa impedīmenta et equī erant in castrīs Rōmānīs. Multa impedīmenta equīs ad bellum Rōmānī portant. Pābulum quoque, cibum equōrum, et frūmentum, cibum virōrum, Rōmānī

equīs in castra portant. Castra viās et fossam et vāllum [2] habent. Fossa et vāllum castrīs praesidium dant.

Mīlitēs Rōmānī galeās et scūta [3] arma habent. Gladiīs [4] et pīlīs [5] tēlīs mīlitēs Rōmānī pūgnant. Rōmānī virīs sīgnum tubā [6] dant. Nūntiī Rōmānōrum Rōmānīs cōnsilia hostium (*of the enemy*) verbīs et sīgnīs dēmōnstrant. Sociī populī Rōmānī amīcīs auxilium dant.

Rōmānī librōs dē bellīs scrībunt et fābulās multās līberīs nostrīs in lūdīs Americae dē bellīs et proeliīs Rōmānōrum nārrāmus.

104. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa*
Asia, -ae, f., *Asia*
fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, moat*
galea, -ae, f., *helmet*
gladius, -ī, m., *sword*
pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin*
Rōmānus, -ī, m. (Rōma), *a Roman* (See **80.**)
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

tabernāculum, -ī, n. (taberna), *tent*
tribūtum, -ī, n., *tribute*
tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*
vīnum, -ī, n., *wine*

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

quō, abl. sing., **quibus,** plur., *what?*

105. NOTES

1. Whenever the Roman army encamped, even for one night, a rectangular camp with regular streets and four well-fortified gates was laid out according to a definite plan.

2. The Roman camp was surrounded by a ditch nine feet wide and by a wall made from the earth excavated from the ditch. The wall was supported by stakes set on the outer side of the wall and rising above it. The entire fortification

RŌMĀNĪ INCOLĀS GALLIAE PROELIŌ SUPERANT

of the camp was completed within four or five hours, because each soldier knew the definite part of the work assigned to him.

3. On his left arm the Roman soldier carried an oblong shield of wood covered with leather. The shield was two feet wide and four feet long, and was curved to conform to the body.

4. Suspended at his right side by a belt passing over the left shoulder, the Roman soldier carried a short sword about two feet long, pointed, and sharpened on both sides.

5. The javelin, which had an iron point and a wooden shaft, was about six feet long and was hurled from the hand before the sword was used.

6. The **tuba** was a long, straight trumpet.

106. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The word *armistice* is connected with **arma** and **stō**. What do we celebrate on Armistice Day?

2. The word **castra** was the source of all the English town names ending in *-caster* and *-chester*. These towns were originally the sites of Roman camps where soldiers were permanently stationed to maintain Roman authority in Britain. Among these names are Chester, Lancaster, Winchester, Manchester, and Rochester. Many of them have been transplanted to America.

3. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. He has an *impediment* in his speech.

b. My brother is *associated* with me in business.

c. A *significant* look passed between the friends.

d. The *rebellion* was quickly put down.

4. The following words have come from Latin with very little change: *tabernacle, tribute, tube, sign.*

5. Why are *have* in English and *avoir* in French called *auxiliary* verbs?

6. From what two Latin words does *belligerent* come? What are belligerent nations?

7. From **imperium,** through French, we get *empire*, the ruler of which is an *emperor*. He has *imperial* authority, and his manner is frequently *imperious*.

8. Explain the meanings of the following words so as to show their connection with **populus**: *populace*, *popular*, *populous*, *population*, *depopulate*.

9. What is a *society?* What is meant by *sociability?*

10. Have the English words *occupy* and *occupation* changed in meaning from their source-word **occupō?**

EXERCISES

107. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quibus tēlīs Rōmānī pūgnant?
2. Ubi Rōmānī bella gerunt?
3. Quō īnstrūmentō (*meaning?*) Rōmānī sīgnum proelī dant?
4. Quōs Rōmānī proeliō superant?
5. Quāle tribūtum prōvinciae Rōmānīs dant?
6. Quid Rōmānī equīs in castra portant?
7. Quibus īnstrūmentīs agricolae Galliae agrōs arant?
8. Quōrum oppida Rōmānī oppūgnant et occupant?

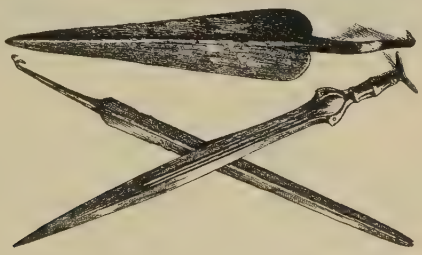
108. Translate the following sentences and account for the endings of the words in black type:

1. Rōmānī in **Galliā gladiīs** et **pīlīs** pūgnant.
2. Castra Rōmāna **erant māgna.**
3. Portae **castrōrum** Rōmānōrum erunt **clausae.**
4. **Incolās** multārum terrārum **proeliō** superāmus.
5. Agricolae prōvinciae tribūtum **Rōmae, dominae** terrārum, dant.

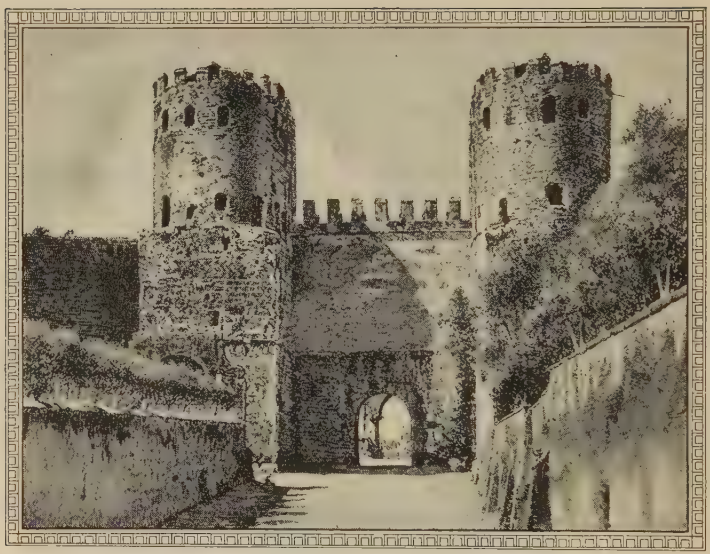
109. Write in Latin:

1. We are looking at the broad fields (and) the beautiful forests and the clear sky.
2. In the Roman camp there were large tents (and) small huts and much baggage.
3. Our camp has broad streets (and) a good rampart and a moat.
4. The Romans are conquering many lands in war.
5. The boys are writing many (and) long words with (their) pens.

110. Decline in full the adjectives **novus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum; malus, -a, -um; ruber, -bra, -brum; paucī, -ae, -a; līber, -era, -erum** (*free*).



ROMAN SWORDS AND DAGGER



Porta Sebastiāna

CHAPTER XII

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES: LATIN WORD FORMATION

111. In our study of the relation of Latin and English, we have noticed many words which have been transferred from Latin to English with no change of form, as *villa*, *camera*, or with some very slight change, as *province*, *poet;* many words have come into English from Latin through French. We have seen that these words have sometimes the same meaning in English as in Latin, sometimes one which is quite different.

112. Many Latin nouns of the first declension ending in **-ia** have become English nouns ending in *-y*, with practically the

same meaning. What are the English equivalents of the following nouns?

colōnia	Ītalia
cūstōdia	lūxuria
familia	memoria
glōria	Sicilia
industria	victōria

113. There are many words in Latin which are themselves made from other Latin words by the addition of prefixes and suffixes which have special meanings. We have noticed the suffix **-tūdō** by which a noun may be made from an adjective, *e.g.*, **māgnus,** *great,* **māgnitūdō,** *great*ness, *magnitude.* The suffix **-īlis,** we have seen, makes an adjective from a noun, *e.g.*, **servus,** *slave,* **servīlis,** *slav*ish, *servile.* Certain first declension nouns which have the suffix **-tia** or **-ia** are made from adjectives or participles. These suffixes make abstract nouns, giving the names of qualities. The English nouns of the same meaning often have the ending *-ce* instead of **-tia,** *e.g.*, **avāritia** (**avārus,** *greedy*), *greediness, avarice.*

Give the English equivalents of the following nouns:

absentia	innocentia
abundantia	iūstitia
arrogantia	patientia
benevolentia	prōvidentia
dīligentia	scientia

Which of the nouns in **112,** made with the suffix **-ia,** are abstract nouns?

114. A very large number of English adjectives are taken directly from Latin adjectives which are themselves made from other Latin words.

1. The Latin suffix **-idus** makes from verbs adjectives denoting condition. The English ending *-id* merely drops the

case ending of the suffix, *e.g.*, **timidus** (**timeō,** *I fear*), *in a condition of fearing, timid.*

Give English equivalents and meanings:

fluidus	splendidus
frīgidus	placidus
āridus	fervidus
lūcidus	validus

2. The Latin suffix **-icus,** meaning *relating to,* makes adjectives from nouns. The English adjective of the same meaning drops the case ending of the suffix and ends in *-ic*, *e.g.*, **Gallicus** (**Gallia**), *relating to Gaul, Gallic.*

Give English equivalents and meanings:

barbaricus	aquāticus
domesticus	rūsticus

3. The Latin suffixes **-ānus, -īnus,** also meaning *relating to,* make adjectives from nouns. The English adjective drops the case ending or substitutes *-e* for it, *e.g.*, **Rōmānus** (**Rōma**), *relating to Rome, Roman.*

Give English equivalents and meanings:

Latīnus	humānus	dīvīnus
urbānus	marīnus	Āfricānus

4. The Latin suffix **-īvus,** also meaning *relating to,* makes adjectives from nouns. The English adjective ends in *-ive*, *e.g.*, **fēstīvus** (**fēstum,** *a holiday*), *relating to a holiday, festive.*

Give English equivalents and meanings:

captīvus	negātīvus
fugitīvus	actīvus
fūrtīvus	

5. The Latin suffix **-ōsus,** meaning *full of,* makes adjectives from nouns. The corresponding English ending is *-ous* or *-ose*, *e.g.*, **glōriōsus** (**glōria**), *full of glory, glorious;* **bellicōsus** (**bellum**), *full of war, warlike, bellicose.*

Give English equivalents and meanings:

perīculōsus	verbōsus
labōriōsus	iniūriōsus
cōpiōsus	furiōsus
studiōsus	pretiōsus

115. The knowledge of the suffixes given in this chapter can be of assistance to you in translating new Latin. It is often possible to guess at the meaning of a Latin word if it is similar to English, but if you know the meaning of even a few suffixes, you can tell with considerable accuracy the meaning of many new words, without reference to the vocabulary. Sometimes the translation of a suffix, as shown above, does not give an actual English word, and sometimes it gives one with a changed meaning, but it can seldom fail to help you.

116. Make on a new page of your derivation notebook this heading:

FIRST DECLENSION ABSTRACT NOUNS IN **-ia** AND **-tia**.
ENGLISH ENDINGS *-y* AND *-ce*

Write below the heading as many as you can recall of the nouns given in this chapter. Arrange them in columns, the English word opposite the Latin. Add others that may occur to you, and that you find from time to time.

Another page should be devoted to such adjectives as have been described in this chapter. Make a heading like this:

ENGLISH ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES,
FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Latin endings — **-idus, -icus, -ānus** (**īnus**), **-īvus, -ōsus.**
English endings — *-id, -ic, -an* (*ane*), *-in* (*ine*), *-ive, -ous* (*ose*).

Write the words in two columns, first Latin, then English. You should be able to make a long list by recalling those given above, and adding new ones.

CHAPTER XIII

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

117. VOCABULARY REVIEW

In how short a time can you give the full vocabulary form of the following words? These are the words given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters VIII–XI.

ager
amīcus
annus
arma
auxilium
bellum
bonus
caelum
castra
cōnsilium
dē
dominus
equus
familia
fīlius
frūmentum
grātia
impedīmentum
imperium
in
lātus
liber
līttera
locus
māgnus
meus
miser
multus
mūrus
neque
noster
numerus
nūntius
occupō
oppidum
oppūgnō
parvus
per
perīculum
populus
praemium
praesidium
proelium
pūblicus
puer
pūgnō
scrībunt
septem
servus
sī
sīgnum
socius
spatium
superō
tēlum
vāllum
verbum
vir

118. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

1. What endings are found in the nominative singular of second declension masculine nouns? In the second declension what is the nominative singular ending of neuter nouns?

2. In neuter nouns and adjectives, of all declensions, what two cases are always alike? For what two cases do you already know the endings of all neuter nouns and adjectives in the Latin language?

A Roman Key

3. Why is the genitive singular of a noun given in the vocabulary? If you know that a noun ending in **-er** belongs to the second declension, why is it necessary to know the genitive singular in order to decline it? In what masculine nouns of the second declension does the ending of the genitive singular differ from that of the nominative plural?

4. What is the vocative singular of **amīcus, fīlius, puer, Lūcius, nūntius, oppidum, vir**; the vocative singular of **meus** in all genders?

5. What two cases in the second declension have the same endings as the same cases of the first declension?

6. What endings are used in the second declension for a direct object? for an indirect object? What other case uses the same ending as the indirect object? In the second declension what endings are used for a possessive? for a predicate noun?

7. Time yourself in reciting and writing the declension of **piger puer, domicilium pulchrum, socius fīdus, poēta Rōmānus, māgna castra, liber bonus.**

8. What is the shortest time in which you can recite correctly the present, imperfect, and future tenses of **sum**?

119. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

1. For what is the vocative case used?

2. What is the difference between a predicate noun and an appositive? What is the case of an appositive?

3. What case is used in Latin to express the thing by means of which an action is done? You should remember that Latin expresses means or instrument without a preposition.

4. Why does an adjective modifying a masculine noun of the first declension have case endings different from those of the noun?

5. Name all the endings which second declension nouns may have when governed by the preposition **in,** and state the meaning of this preposition with each ending.

REVIEW EXERCISES

120. Write in Latin:

1. Marcus, the poet, gives the children beautiful books (as) a reward.

2. By wars and battles the Romans overcome many countries of Europe.

3. To whom are you showing your garden, Lucius? (See **24,** 8, end.)

4. Soon there will be many beautiful roses in our garden.

5. We are telling our friend Lucius the messenger's story.

6. Our queen will be the mistress of a large and beautiful house.

7. With horses the good farmers carry much grain into many towns.

8. My friends, you give good gifts to your sons and daughters.

9. Marcus, my son, you were a lazy boy yesterday.

121. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. Magister discipul— mult— fābul— nārrat.
2. Agricola nost— agrōs lātōs arātr— arat.
3. Multae terrae Eurōpae era— prōvinci— Rōm—.
4. Gladi— et pīl— Rōmānī in vi— pūgnant.
5. Incol—(plur.) oppidōrum sīgnum tub— long— damus.
6. Fīdī sociī popul— Rōmān— auxili— dant.

122. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

In accordance with the models given in Chapter VII (59), list in your notebook the following:

1. Latin Words Which Have Become English with No Change in Form

locus, pabulum, September, premium (Latin **ae** is often *e* in English.)

2. English Words Derived from Latin

List all the English derivatives you can remember from **annus, littera, servus, locus, numerus.** Add any others you can find.

3. Latin Words and Phrases That Are Used in English

List the following phrases, find out what they mean in English, and explain the connection with the Latin:

pauca sed bona	multum in parvō
per annum	prō bonō pūblicō
annō Dominī	Juppiter pluvius
dē novō	

Malī Puerī in Viā Pūgnant

CHAPTER XIV

MARCUS TELLS HIS FRIENDS A STORY

PREPARATION

Principal Parts of Verbs
First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative,
Present Imperative

123. In order to conjugate a Latin verb in all its forms, it is necessary to know its principal parts, forms from which are obtained the various stems to which personal endings are added (41). Have you learned the principal parts of verbs in English, and in French or German?

The principal parts of a Latin verb are (1) the first person singular of the present indicative active, (2) the present infini-

tive active, (3) the first person singular of the perfect indicative active, and (4) the perfect passive participle. The principal parts of **amō,** with their names, their English meanings, and the stems obtained from them, are given below. *Learn thoroughly all these facts.*

Present Indicative Active	Present Infinitive Active	Perfect Indicative Active	Perfect Passive Participle
amō, *I love*	**amāre,** *to love*	**amāvī,** *I have loved,* or *I loved*	**amātus,** *having been loved*

Present Stem	Perfect Stem	Participial Stem
amā-	**amāv-**	**amāt-**

The *present stem* of a verb in any conjugation is obtained by cutting off the ending **-re** of the present infinitive active; the *perfect stem,* by cutting off the ending **-ī** of the perfect indicative active; the *participial stem,* by cutting off the ending **-us** of the perfect passive participle.

124. The four conjugations of Latin verbs are distinguished from one another by the vowel ending of the present stem, as follows:

	Present Infinitive	Present Stem	Characteristic Vowel
First Conjugation	amāre	amā-	**ā**
Second Conjugation	monēre	monē-	**ē**
Third Conjugation	dūcere	dūce-	**e**
Fourth Conjugation	audīre	audī-	**ī**

All the verbs of the first conjugation given in preceding vocabularies have principal parts exactly like **amō,** except **dō** and **stō,** whose parts are given in the vocabulary of this chapter. The full vocabulary form of a verb consists of its principal parts.

125. Review the present tense of **amō** given in section **41**. Note that the present stem is the one there described. The present stem is also used in making the imperfect tense. This tense denotes a past action which was *continuous*, *habitual*, or *repeated*. Notice carefully the English meanings given in the paradigm which follows:

IMPERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **amābam,** *I was loving, I used to love, I kept loving*	1. **amābāmus,** *we were loving*, etc.
2. **amābās,** *you were loving*, etc.	2. **amābātis,** *you were loving*, etc.
3. **amābat,** *he (she, it) was loving*, etc.	3. **amābant,** *they were loving*, etc.

Note that the personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense, except that **-m** instead of **-ō** appears in the first person singular. Between the present stem **amā-** and the personal endings are the letters **ba,** the sign of the imperfect tense, used in all four conjugations. The vowel of this tense sign is long in three forms. Compare this paradigm with that of **eram** (**88**). Does the accent always fall on the same syllable in this tense?

126. The imperative mode of a verb is the one used to give commands, as the indicative mode is used in making statements. The imperative forms commonly used are the second persons singular and plural of the present tense. In the first conjugation they are as follows:

Present Imperative	
Singular	Plural
2. amā, *love (thou)*	2. amāte, *love (ye)*

The singular imperative is the simple present stem; the plural is the present stem with the ending **-te**.

127. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

The verbs marked * have occurred in previous vocabularies, and are repeated to show their principal parts.

NOUNS

amīcitia, -ae, f. (amīcus), *friendship*

beneficium, -ī, n. (bonus), *kindness, service, benefit*

causa, -ae, f., *cause, case*

fuga, -ae, f., *flight* (See **dō.**)

oculus, -ī, m., *eye*

poena, -ae, f., *punishment* (See **dō.**)

pūgna, -ae, f. (pūgnō), *fight*

ADVERBS

bene (bonus), *well*

cūr, *why?*

quidem, *indeed, certainly* (stands after the word it emphasizes)

PREPOSITION

prō (with abl.), *for, in return for, in behalf of, instead of*

CONJUNCTION

quod, *because*

VERBS

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make firm, establish*

* **dō, dare, dedī, datus,** *give* (51); **in fugam dō,** *put to flight;* **poenās dō,** *pay the penalty, suffer punishment*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (spectō), *wait for, expect*

* **laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *praise*

* **oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *attack, assault*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *confuse, disturb*

* **pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *fight*

* **spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *look at, face*

* **stō, stāre, stetī, status,** *stand*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, summon*

128. Mārcus Amīcīs Fābulam Nārrat

Lūcius. Ubi, Mārce, herī māne erās?

Mārcus. In lātīs viīs Rōmae ad lūdum ambulābam.

Sextus. Quid, mī amīce, in viā spectābās? Fābulam paucīs verbīs nārrā.

Mārcus. Malī puerī in viā pūgnābant, et paedagōgī puerōs exspectābant et vocābant. "Ad lūdum properāte," clāmābant paedagōgī.

Lūcius. Quid paedagōgōs perturbābat?

Mārcus. Puerī ad lūdum nōn properābant, sed pūgnābant. "Magister," clāmābant paedagōgī, "discipulōs exspectat."

Sextus. Quae (*what*) causa erat pūgnae puerōrum?

Mārcus. Erant in tabernā pōma rubra. Puerī pōma oculīs avidīs spectant, sed pecūniam nōn habent. "Dā[1] nōbīs[2] pōma," tabernāriō inquiunt puerī malī. Tabernārius puerōs in fugam dat, sed parvus puer pōmum raptat. Tum puer māgnus parvum oppūgnat, quod pōmum dēsīderat.

Sextus. Cūius erat pōmum cum pūgnam spectābās?

Mārcus. Paedagōgus meus, bonus servus, appropinquat et puerōs miserōs flagellat. Pōmum raptat et tabernāriō dat. Tabernārius paedagōgō grātiās agit prō beneficiō. "Malī," puerīs inquit paedagōgus, "estis. Bonī puerī neque pōma raptant neque pūgnant. Malī puerī semper poenās dant neque praedam servant. Amīcitiam cōnfīrmāte et ad magistrum vestrum properāte. Tardī eritis, et magister tardōs discipulōs nōn laudat."

Lūcius. Et tū,[3] Mārce, cūr nōn tardus erās, sī pūgnam spectābās?

Mārcus. Tardus quidem eram, et mox poenās dabam. "Cūr mē[4] flagellās," saepe clāmābam, "Pōma nōn raptābam, nōn pūgnābam!" "Notā (*note*) bene,"[5] inquit magister sévērus. "Bonī puerī nōn in viīs stant et pūgnās spectant cum magister discipulōs in lūdō exspectat!"

129. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

VERBS

* **ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *walk*
appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approach*
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, shout, exclaim*
dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *desire, long for*
* **flagellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *whip*
* **nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *tell, relate*
* **properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *hasten*
raptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, carry off*

NOUNS

pōmum, -ī, n., *apple*
praeda, -ae, f., *booty, spoil, plunder*
tabernārius, -ī, m. (taberna), *shopkeeper*

ADJECTIVES

avidus, -a, -um, *greedy*
tardus, -a, -um, *slow, late, tardy*

CONJUNCTION

cum, *when*

ADVERBS

mox, *soon*
neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*

130. NOTES

1. See note on this verb in 51.

2. **Nōbīs** is the dative plural of the pronoun meaning *we.*

3. **Tū** is the nominative singular of the pronoun meaning *you.* It is expressed here because the subject of **erās** is emphatic.

4. **Mē** is the accusative singular of the pronoun meaning *I.*

5. The abbreviation *N. B.* (*Take notice*) stands for **Notā bene.**

131. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words have not changed very much from Latin: *cause*, *avid* (114, 1), *tardy*, *confirm*, *expect*, *perturb*.

2. What is an *oculist?*

3. What is the French word for *apple?* for *potato?*

4. Both **pūgna** and **pūgnō** are connected with **pūgnus,** meaning *fist.* What is a *pugilist?* What does *pugnacious* mean?

5. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. We shall await *confirmation* of the rumor.

b. His *vocation* is the law, his *avocation*, botany.

c. My decision is *irrevocable.*

d. The speaker's remarks *evoked* loud applause.

e. Surprise often calls forth a sudden *exclamation.*

EXERCISES

132. Give the principal parts of the following verbs, and conjugate them in the present indicative, the imperfect indicative, and the present imperative: **laudō, superō, dēmōnstrō, stō, dō.**

133. Give the translation of each of the following forms and tell its mode, tense, number, and person:

laudābāmus	spectābātis	ambulātis
nārrāte	pūgnābās	ambulāte
properā	vocāmus	vocābat
occupābam	spectā	dabant

134. Write in Latin:

1. Marcus, what were you looking at in the street yesterday?

2. Roman schoolmasters used to whip lazy pupils.

3. The Roman poet was telling a long story to his little daughters in the garden.

4. Boys, look at the beautiful pictures on the walls of the atrium.

5. Lucius, give your books to the faithful paedagogus.

6. The overseer kept calling to the lazy slaves, "You are not working! Plow the fields!"

7. Why were the slaves standing in the street? They were waiting for the sons of (their) masters.

A Roman Shop

CHAPTER XV

THE TEACHER TELLS HIS PUPILS A STORY

PREPARATION

FIRST CONJUGATION, FUTURE TENSE. QUESTIONS, INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

135. The future tense of the first conjugation is inflected as follows:

FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amā**bō,** *I shall love*	1. amā**bimus,** *we shall love*
2. amā**bis,** *you will love*	2. amā**bitis,** *you will love*
3. amā**bit,** *he (she, it) will love*	3. amā**bunt,** *they will love*

Notice

1. That the present stem **amā-** (123) is used in making the future tense.

2. That the personal endings are those used in the present and imperfect tenses (41).

3. That the future tense sign is **bi.** In the first person singular this tense sign drops its vowel before the personal ending **-ō,** and in the third person plural it becomes **bu.**

4. That the vowel of the tense sign in the future is never long. Compare the accent of the various forms of this tense with that of corresponding forms of the imperfect tense (125).

136. Questions in English are often introduced by interrogative pronouns, adverbs, or adjectives, as *why? who?*

where? what? how? and similar words. Questions not indicated by such an introducing word are distinguished from statements by the order of the words, *e.g.*, *The boy is here* (statement); *Is the boy here?* (question).

Latin questions are usually indicated by some interrogative word, never by word order alone. Latin has interrogative

The Colosseum as It Is To-day

pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs, corresponding to those used in English, by which questions may be introduced. You have already learned the interrogative adverbs **ubi** and **cūr,** a few forms of the interrogative adjective **quālis,** and a few forms of the interrogative pronoun. Such questions as are indicated in English merely by word order are introduced in Latin by one of the following words:

1. **-ne,** attached to the first word of the question, frequently the verb. Such a syllable is called an *enclitic*. A question introduced by **-ne** indicates no opinion on the part of the speaker, and may be answered affirmatively or negatively, *e.g.*, **Estne Mārcus bonus puer?** *Is Marcus a good boy?*

2. **Nōnne,** standing first in the question. The use of this word indicates that the speaker has an affirmative opinion and desires an affirmative answer, *e.g.*, **Nōnne Mārcus est bonus puer?** *Isn't Marcus a good boy?*

3. **Num,** standing first in the question. The use of this word indicates that the speaker has a negative opinion and

desires a negative answer, *e.g.*, **Num Mārcus est bonus puer?** *Marcus isn't a good boy, is he?* Sometimes a question of this kind, when spoken, is indicated in English merely by the tone of the voice.

137. Learn the declension of the interrogative pronoun **quis, quid?** *who? what?*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. and *F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
NOM.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

An interrogative adjective differs from an interrogative pronoun in its use. As its name indicates, it modifies a noun. Compare these two uses in English: *What* (pron.) *are you reading? What* (adj.) *book are you reading?* The declension of the interrogative adjective in Latin differs from that of the interrogative pronoun in the singular. The plural is like that of the pronoun.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Notice that the masculine interrogative adjective and pronoun differ in the nominative singular only, the neuter adjective and pronoun in the nominative and accusative singular only, while the feminine adjective and pronoun differ in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular.

Note the following sentences carefully:

Quis fābulam nārrābat? *Who was telling the story?* (Interrog. pron.)

Quī puer fābulam nārrābat? *What boy was telling the story?* (Interrog. adj.)

Quae puella fābulam nārrābat? *What girl was telling the story?* (Interrog. adj.)

Quid spectās? *What are you looking at?* (Interrog. pron.)

Quod domicilium spectās? *What house are you looking at?* (Interrog. adj.)

138. Latin has no actual words for *yes* and *no*. Questions requiring these replies are generally answered by repeating the verb of the question for an affirmative answer, and by repeating the verb of the question with **nōn** for a negative answer. Sometimes affirmative answers are given by such words as **sānē,** *by all means,* **vērō,** *truly;* negative answers by **minimē,** *not at all, not in the least.*

139. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

ADJECTIVES

ūnus, -a, -um, *one*

quī, quae, quod, *what? which?*

VERB

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place together, put*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

quis, quid, *who? what?*

ADVERBS

minimē, *not in the least, not at all*

-ne (enclitic) (See **136,** 1.)

posteā, *afterwards*

AGRICOLA FĪLIŌ DISCIPLĪNAM DAT

140. TRANSLATION AT SIGHT

After committing to memory the words given in 139 read the following easy passage at sight, using, when necessary, the Reference Vocabulary which follows. Can you guess the meaning of any of the new words without referring to this vocabulary?

Magister Discipulīs Fābulam Nārrat

Herī in lūdō labōrābāmus, cum Titus, amīcus meus et discipulus lūdī nostrī, "Nōnne, magister bone," inquit, "discipulīs tuīs fābulam hodiē nārrābis?" "Labōrābitisne bene, discipulī meī?" inquit magister. "Bene quidem labōrābimus, Ō magister!" "Sī puerī bonī eritis," inquit magister, "fābulam bonam nārrābō. Nunc

ad subsellia vestra properāte et arithmēticam in tabellīs vestrīs parāte. Bonās tabellās laudābō, sed errāta culpābō, et sī multa erunt errāta, fābulam nōn nārrābō."

Tum arithmēticam in tabellīs stilīs nostrīs parābāmus. "Quālēs, Quīnte, tabellās parās? Tabellās tuās dēmōnstrā." Quīntus magistrō tabellās dēmōnstrat. "Bonās tabellās," inquit magister, "parās, mī discipule, et dīligentiam tuam laudō."

"Nunc geōgraphiam parāte," inquit magister noster. "Quā in terrā, Mārce, habitās?" "In Ītaliā habitō," inquit Mārcus, "et patria mea est." "Quōrum patria est Ītalia?" "Rōmānōrum patria est Ītalia." "Quid est Ītalia?" "Paenīnsula est Ītalia." "Estne Ītalia lāta?" "Minimē, magister, Ītalia nōn est lāta." "Quam fōrmam habet Ītalia?" "Longa est Ītalia, sed nōn lāta."

Tum magister discipulīs fābulam nārrat:

Georgius, fīlius agricolae bonī, puer bonus erat, sed amīcōs malōs amābat. Agricola fīlium laudābat, sed amīcī fīlī agricolam nōn dēlectābant.

Agricola pōma multa in hortō habet et fīliō corbulam pōmōrum plēnam dat. Quod Georgius pōma amābat, dōnum puerum dēlectābat. In corbulā erant multa pōma bona, sed pauca erant maculōsa.

"Num maculōsa pōma et bona in ūnā corbulā collocābis?" inquit agricola. Sed Georgius cūncta pōma in ūnā corbulā servābat. Posteā puer dōnum spectat et maculōsa sunt pōma cūncta! Miser est Georgius et agricolae pōma dēmōnstrat. Tum agricola fīliō disciplīnam dat. "Pōma mala foedant bona," inquit, "et amīcī malī puerum foedābunt bonum."

141. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

arithmētica, -ae, f., *arithmetic*
errātum, -ī, n., *mistake, error*
fōrma, -ae, f., *shape, form, beauty*
geōgraphia, -ae, f., *geography*

ADJECTIVES

cūnctus, -a, -um, *entire, all*
maculōsus, -a, -um, *spotted, tainted*

ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

plēnus, -a, -um, *full*

VERBS

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame*
foedō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pollute, spoil, corrupt*

ADVERBS

nōnne (See **136,** 2.)
num (See **136,** 3.)

142. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The words *arithmetic* and *geography* come through Latin from Greek. *Arithmetic* is derived from the Greek word meaning *number; geography* from two Greek words meaning *the earth* and *to write*.

2. The Latin noun **macula** means *spot* or *stain*. Show how **maculōsus** is made (**114,** 5).

3. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. The explorer's account *minimized* the dangers of his expedition.

b. Everything in the house was *immaculate*.

c. The *culprit* will be severely punished.

d. The accident was due to *culpable* negligence.

4. Explain the meanings of the following words so as to show their connection with **ūnus:** *union, unity, unit, uniform, unite, unison*.

EXERCISES

143. Conjugate in the future tense **laudō, dēmōnstrō, superō, dō.** Give the principal parts of the following verbs,

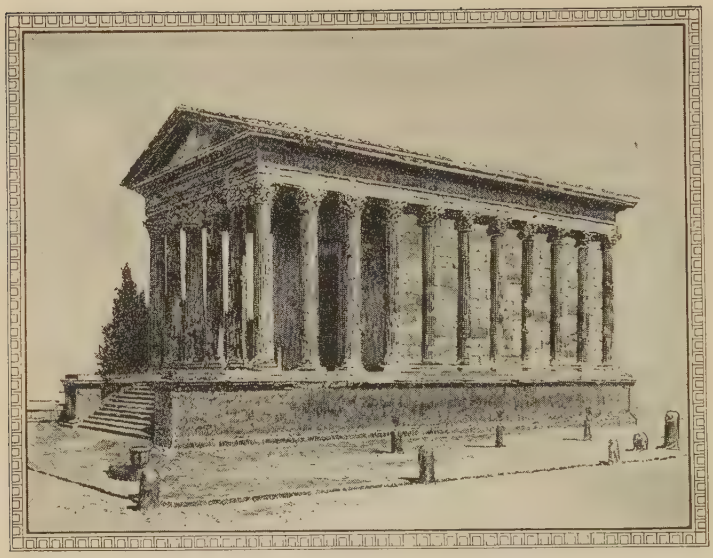
and conjugate them in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present imperative: **parō, servō, vocō.**

144. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quis fābulam discipulīs nārrābit?
2. Quibus magister fābulam nārrābit?
3. Quid magister discipulīs nārrābit?
4. Nōnne fābula bona discipulōs dēlectābit?
5. Cūius tabellās magister laudat?
6. Quibus īnstrūmentīs puerī tabellās parābant?
7. Quae terra patria nostra est?
8. Estne Ītalia patria nostra?
9. Quod dōnum agricola fīliō dat?
10. Num magister pigrōs discipulōs laudābit?

145. Write in Latin:

1. Will not the bad boys suffer punishment?
2. Why was George keeping spotted apples in the basket?
3. What reward will the master give the faithful slaves?
4. Who used to carry the Roman boy's books to school?
5. What are the slaves carrying to the town?
6. To whom, Marcus, will you give the beautiful roses?
7. What slave was giving fodder to the black horses?
8. Roman houses did not have (**habēbant**) many windows, did they?
9. Will the Romans conquer the inhabitants of all Europe in war?
10. "Greetings, master," says the overseer. "What shall I show your sons and daughters to-day?"



The Maison Carrée
(*A Roman Temple at Nîmes, France.*)

CHAPTER XVI

THE GODS OF ROME

The gods and goddesses, as the early Romans thought of them, were magnified human beings and each one embodied some quality of divine power. Some knowledge of the Roman gods is essential to an appreciation of art and to an understanding of the many references to them in English literature.

PREPARATION

First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses

146. You have learned three tenses of first conjugation verbs, the present, imperfect, and future indicative, all made with the present stem. There are three tenses remaining, the

perfect, the pluperfect, and the future perfect. The perfect tense states that an action occurred in past time, as, *I wrote*, or that a past action has now been completed, as, *I have written*. The perfect tense is the one most commonly used to express past time. The pluperfect tense indicates that a past action had been completed before some specified time in the past, as, *I had written*. The future perfect indicates that an action will have been completed at some specified future time, as, *I shall have written*. Note that all these tenses denote a *completed* action, while the present, imperfect, and future denote action *not completed*.

147. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are made on the perfect stem (**123**), and are conjugated as follows:

Perfect Tense

		Personal Endings with Connecting Vowel
	Singular	
1.	**amāvī,** *I loved, I have loved, I did love*	**-ī**
2.	**amāvistī,** *you loved, you have loved,* etc.	**-istī**
3.	**amāvit,** *he (she, it) loved,* etc.	**-it**
	Plural	
1.	**amāvimus,** *we loved,* etc.	**-imus**
2.	**amāvistis,** *you loved,* etc.	**-istis**
3.	**amāvērunt (-ēre),** *they loved,* etc.	**-ērunt (-ēre)**

Pluperfect Tense

Singular	Plural
1. **amāveram,** *I had loved*	1. **amāverāmus,** *we had loved*
2. **amāverās,** *you had loved*	2. **amāverātis,** *you had loved*
3. **amāverat,** *he (she, it) had loved*	3. **amāverant,** *they had loved*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

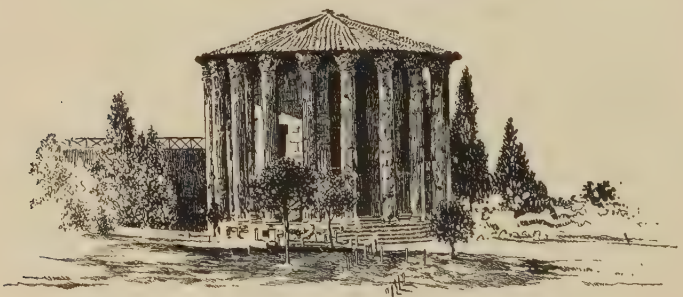
SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amāverō, *I shall have loved*	1. amāverimus, *we shall have loved*
2. amāveris, *you will have loved*	2. amāveritis, *you will have loved*
3. amāverit, *he (she, it) will have loved*	3. amāverint, *they will have loved*

Notice

1. That all three tenses use the perfect stem, **amāv-**.

2. That the perfect tense has a special set of personal endings, while the endings of the pluperfect and future perfect tenses are the same as those used for the tenses made on the present stem (**41**).

3. That the tense sign of the pluperfect is **era,** the last vowel of which is long in the second person singular, the first person



THE SO-CALLED TEMPLE OF VESTA IN THE ROMAN FORUM

plural, and the second person plural. Compare the vowel of this tense sign with that of the imperfect tense sign **ba** (**125**). How does this variation of vowel quantity affect the accent?

4. That the tense sign of the future perfect is **eri**. In the first person singular this tense sign drops **i** before the personal ending **-ō**. The vowels of this tense sign are never long. Compare the future perfect with the future tense (135). Do any corresponding forms of the pluperfect and future perfect tenses differ in accent?

148. TABLE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

PRESENT TENSE	Present stem + personal endings
IMPERFECT TENSE	Present stem + tense sign **ba** + personal endings
FUTURE TENSE	Present stem + tense sign **bi** + personal endings
PERFECT TENSE	Perfect stem + special personal endings
PLUPERFECT TENSE	Perfect stem + tense sign **era** + personal endings
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE	Perfect stem + tense sign **eri** + personal endings

149. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

deus, -ī, m., *god*

victōria, -ae, f., *victory*

ADJECTIVES

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*

māximus, -a, -um (māgnus), *greatest*

ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred, holy*

VERB

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid*

ADVERB

māgnōpere (māgnus), *greatly*

150. Dē Deīs Rōmānōrum

Rōmānī antīquī multōs deōs et deās multās adōrābant. Altō in caelō erat domicilium[1] multōrum deōrum et deārum. Deī incolīs terrārum cūnctārum auxilium et praesidium dedērunt. Māximus deōrum erat Iuppiter et in caelō et in cūnctīs terrīs rēgnāvit. Bellī deus erat Mārs. Virī Rōmānī bella et proelia amābant. Rōmānī deum bellī adōrāvērunt, quod Mārs[2] Rōmānōs semper iūverat et incolīs Rōmae victōriam saepe dederat. Neptūnus erat deus ōceanī et in aquīs ōceanī habitāvit et aquās cūrāvit. Mercurius erat nūntius deōrum et dē caelō ad terrās ālīs volābat. Vulcānus deus erat flammārum et tēla deōrum parābat.

DIĀNA

Māgnae deae erant Iūnō et Cerēs et Minerva et Vesta. Iūnō erat rēgīna deōrum et altō in caelō rēgnāvit. Cerēs dea erat frūmentī et agrōrum et agricolās cūrāvit. Rōmānī, quod cōpiam frūmentī dēsīderābant, ad deam frūmentī multa dōna portābant. Diānam, deam silvārum et lūnae, Rōmānī in triviīs[3] adōrāvērunt. Minerva erat dea disciplīnae et librōrum et līterārum. Vesta dea erat domicilī et focī. In domiciliō Rōmānō erat āra Vestae et in

pictūrā Forī[4] Rōmānī templum rotundum Vestae spectāvimus. In templō Vestae fēminae sacram flammam semper servābant. In domiciliīs quoque Rōmānōrum erant ārae Vestae, et in cūnctīs ārīs deae semper erat flamma sacra.

Multa templa erant pulchra aedificia, ubi virī deōs et deās adōrāvērunt. Multī virī et fēminae et līberī ad templa properābant. Rōmānī multa sacrificia in ārīs parābant, quod sacrificia deōs et deās dēlectābant, et multa dōna deīs et deābus[5] cūnctīs dabant. Māgnum numerum templōrum in Ītaliā et in prōvinciīs Rōmānī aedificāvērunt et ruīnās multōrum templōrum antīquōrum hodiē spectāmus.

151. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

aedificium, -ī, n. (aedificō), *a building*
āla, -ae, f., *wing*
āra, -ae, f., *altar*
dea, -ae, f., *goddess*
Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana*
flamma, -ae, f., *fire, flame*
focus, -ī, m., *fireplace, hearth*
forum, -ī, n., *forum, marketplace*
lūna, -ae, f., *moon*
ōceanus, -ī, m., *ocean, sea*
ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin*
sacrificium, -ī, n. (sacer), *a sacrifice*
templum, -ī, n., *temple*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

trivium, -ī, n. (via), *place where three roads meet, crossroads*
Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta*

ADJECTIVE

rotundus, -a, -um, *round, circular*

VERBS

adōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *entreat, worship*
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *build*
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *reign, be king*
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly*

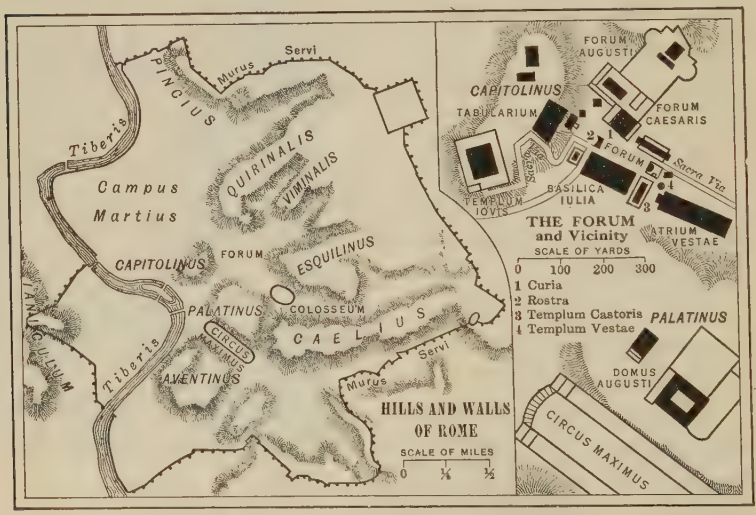
152. NOTES

1. Mount Olympus, a high peak on the northern border of Thessaly in Greece, was supposed to be the home of the gods.

2. According to legend the god Mars was the father of Remus and his twin brother Romulus, the founder of Rome.

3. Shrines to Diana were sometimes placed at the intersection of three roads (**trēs viae**).

4. The Forum was the great public square in Rome, originally the market-place. It was the center of Rome's public



life throughout her history. Assemblies of the people and meetings of the senate and the courts were held here. Here was the speaker's platform, or rostra, from which public speeches were made. The Forum contained some of Rome's finest temples, and other buildings, ruins of which still stand.

5. For the form **deābus** see **54,** 4. Learn the shorter forms used in certain cases of **deus** (Appendix **584**).

153. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. A *lunatic* was originally supposed to have been mentally affected by exposure to the rays of the moon. Hence the word means *one mentally affected.* Compare the English phrase *moon-struck.*

2. The word *trivial* originated in the word **trivium.** At such crossroads people gathered to chat and gossip about unimportant matters.

3. The following English words have the same or nearly the same form as in Latin: *ocean, ruin, rotund, adore, sacrifice, focus, forum, edifice* (for spelling see **122,** 1), *victory* (see **112**), *temple, sacred.* Have any of these words changed in meaning?

4. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. Kerosene is very *inflammable.*

b. Gases are *volatile* substances.

c. Roman emperors were often *deified* after death.

d. The party assembled in the *rotunda* of the Capitol.

e. The *altitude* of the mountain is 5000 feet.

f. She sang the *alto* part in the quartet.

5. Because the Forum was the place where orations were delivered and debates took place, the adjective *forensic,* originally meaning *of the forum,* became associated with public speaking, as in the sentence, "He showed great *forensic* ability."

6. Many words are derived from **sacer** and **sacrificium.** A *sacrificial* altar is one upon which sacrifices are offered; a *sacrament* is a holy ceremony; to *consecrate* a place is to set it apart for holy purposes; to *desecrate* a temple is to defile its holiness.

7. What is *martial* music? Why are grain products called *cereals?*

EXERCISES

154. Give the principal parts of the following verbs, form their perfect stems, and conjugate their perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses: **rēgnō, dō, iuvō, cōnfīrmō.**

155. One of the surest ways to test in a short time one's knowledge of a verb is to give a *synopsis*. To give a synopsis of a verb is to give a designated person and number, *e.g.*, the second person singular, from each of the tenses in order. The principal parts should always be given first. Why?

Give the principal parts and synopses of the following verbs:

exspectō, first person plural
collocō, third person singular
stō, second person plural

156. Give the Latin forms for the following:

1. You (sing.) had praised.
2. We called.
3. He has shown.
4. I shall have told.
5. They were approaching.
6. Enter (plur.).
7. You (plur.) have attacked.
8. Call (plur.).
9. Has he seized?
10. We shall exclaim.
11. They praised.
12. He had stood.

157. Write in Latin:

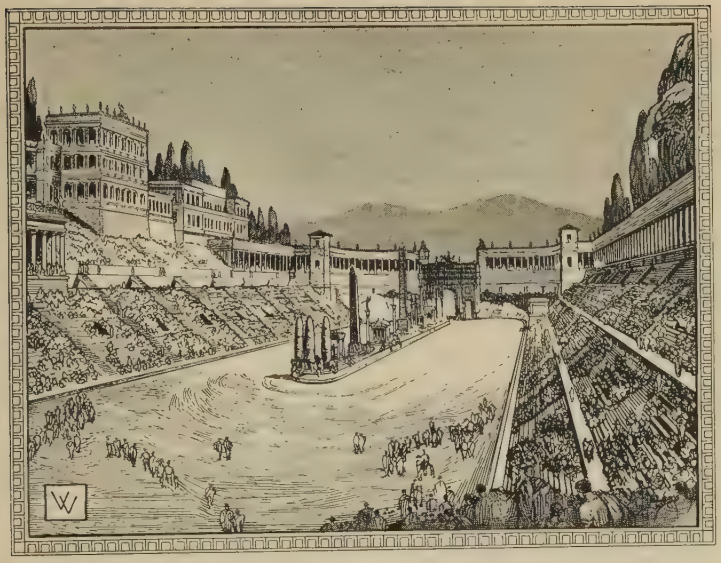
1. The Romans built many beautiful temples in the provinces.

2. They used to worship the god of war because he had given aid to Rome.

3. The Romans will soon have fought with swords and javelins in many countries of Europe.

4. Marcus, you did not like the book, did you? I did like the book very much (greatly).

5. Haven't you been looking at the beautiful temples in the Forum? Not at all, we have been visiting the shops.



LŪDĪ GLADIĀTŌRIĪ IN CIRCŌ MĀXIMŌ

CHAPTER XVII

THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

The Circus Maximus was situated in a valley between the Aventine and Palatine Hills. It was the largest and most important place where public entertainments were held. It takes its name "Circus," meaning *ring*, from its shape, which was like an elongated letter U. It is said to have accommodated thousands of spectators.

PREPARATION

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

158. With a few exceptions, which will be learned later, relations of place are expressed as follows:

1. The place *in which* or *on which* an action occurs is expressed by the preposition **in** with the *ablative* case.

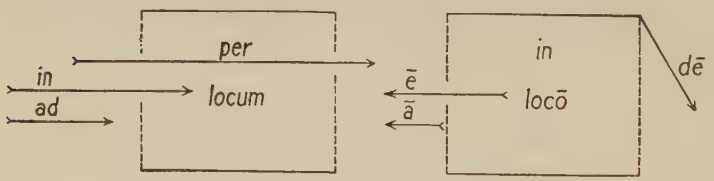
2. The place *from which* motion proceeds is expressed by **ā** (**ab**), **ē** (**ex**), or **dē** with the *ablative* case.

3. The place *to which* motion proceeds is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the *accusative* case.

The forms **ab** and **ex** are used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*. Before words beginning with a consonant (except *h*) **ā** or **ab**, **ē** or **ex** may be used.

Note these differences, shown in the following diagram:

1. **ā** (**ab**) means *away from* the outside of a place.
2. **ē** (**ex**) means *out from* the inside of a place.
3. **dē** means *down from* a higher to a lower place.
4. **ad** means *to* or *toward* a place.
5. **in** with the *accusative* means *into* a place.
6. **in** with the *ablative* means *in* a place.



159. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, lot, luck*

ADJECTIVE

medius, -a, -um, *middle of*

VERBS

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *name, call*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, inquire*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wound*

PREPOSITIONS

ā (**ab**) (with abl.), *away from, by*

circum (with acc.), *around, about*

ē (**ex**) (with abl.), *out from*

INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

quō, *whither? to what place?*

unde, *whence? from what place?*

160. Dē Circō Māximō

Herī Mārcellus, poēta Rōmānus, et Mārcus, poētae fīlius, in Circō Māximō erant. Circus Māximus erat locus plānus et apertus, inter altōs clīvōs, ubi Rōmānī lūdōs [1] spectābant. Fōrma Circī Māximī longa et angusta erat, et in Circō erat arēna [2] māgna. Multa subsellia [3] arēnam circumstābant, et numerus māgnus virōrum et fēminārum et līberōrum dē subselliīs lūdōs spectābat. Spectācula māgna Rōmānōs semper dēlectābant.

A Greave

Mārcellus et Mārcus ē domiciliō in viam māne properāvērunt et ad Circum Māximum ambulāvērunt. Multī virī iam in subselliīs erant cum puer et poēta Circum intrāvērunt. "Quālēs lūdōs hodiē spectābimus?" rogāvit Mārcus. "Lūdōs gladiātōriōs,[4] mī fīlī," inquit Mārcellus, "spectābis." "Quī sunt gladiātōrēs (*gladiators*)?" "Multī sunt captīvī. Saepe Rōmānī validōs virōs bellō superant et ē multīs terrīs domum dūcunt. Tum servī sunt et in arēnā gladiīs pūgnant,[5] quod populus Rōmānus spectācula amat."

Tum Mārcellus et fīlius in subselliīs gladiātōrēs exspectāvērunt. "Quid," rogāvit puer, "est mūrus longus in mediō Circō?" "Spīna est," inquit Mārcellus. "Circum spīnam, cum certāmen (*contest*) quadrīgārum [6] est, equī currunt (*run*). In spīnā sunt statuae, et terminōs spīnae, columnās altās, mētās [7] appellāmus. Sed spectā, gladiātōrēs arēnam intrant!"

Tuba iam sīgnum dederat, et gladiātōrēs cūnctī prope (*near*) subsellium dominī lūdōrum [8] stābant, et "Moritūrī tē salūtāmus (*we who are about to die salute you*)!" clāmāvērunt. Tum ā subselliō dominī lūdōrum in mediam arēnam properāvērunt. Mārcus pūgnam oculīs laetīs spectāvit. Mox ūnus gladiātor adversārium gladiō vulnerāverat et sīgnum [9] dominī lūdōrum exspectābat. Sed dominus sīgnum nōn dedit, et servī miserum virum ā perīculō ex arēnā portāvērunt. "Bonam fortūnam habet," inquit fīliō Mārcellus, "nunc ad domicilium properābimus."

161. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

adversārius, -ī, m., *rival, antagonist*
arēna, -ae, f., *sand, arena*
captīvus, -ī, m., *captive*
circus, -ī, m., *ring, race-course*
clīvus, -ī, m., *hill*
mēta, -ae, f., *goal-post*
quadrīgae, -ārum, f. plur., *chariot and four horses abreast*
spectāculum, -ī, n. (spectō), *sight, show*
spīna, -ae, f., *spina*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

terminus, -ī, m., *limit, end*

ADJECTIVES

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*
gladiātōrius, -a, -um (gladius), *gladiatorial*
laetus, -a, -um, *joyful, glad*
plānus, -a, -um, *level, flat*
validus, -a, -um, *strong, powerful*

VERBS

* **circumstō, -āre, -stetī, -status,** *surround*
* **intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *enter*

162. NOTES

1. **Lūdus** means *game* or *play*, as well as *school*.

2. **Arēna** means *sand*, hence the sand-covered space where combats took place was designated by the same word.

3. The seats, made of wood, or stone, or even of marble, rose in tiers around the entire arena, except at one end, where the combatants entered.

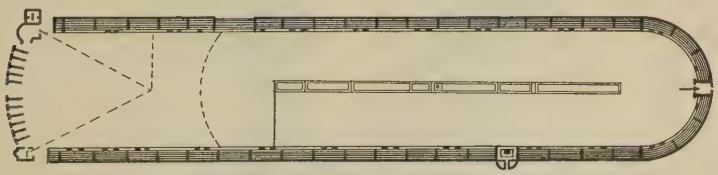
4. Gladiatorial contests were very popular among the Romans. Officials often gave them, at great expense, as a means of securing popular favor.

5. There were regular training schools for gladiators. Other weapons than the sword, from which they got their name, were used in many contests. Sometimes gladiators fought against wild beasts kept for the purpose, instead of fighting one another.

6. The **quadrīgae,** or four-horse chariot, was the one most commonly used in races in the Circus Maximus.

7. The **mētae** were the goals, or turning-points in the race, which was usually seven times around the **spīna.**

8. The title **dominus lūdōrum** was given to the one who gave the entertainment. In later times he was the Emperor.



PLAN OF THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

9. The master of the games, by turning down his thumb, pronounced the death sentence of the defeated gladiator, otherwise his life might be spared. Popular opinion often really determined what the decision should be.

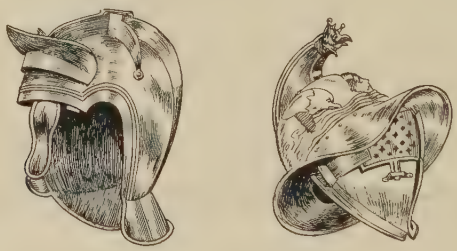
163. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words are almost or quite the same in English and in Latin: *arena, captive, fortune, medium, spectacle, spine, terminus.*

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. It is difficult to give *adverse* criticism.
   b. The district attorney will *interrogate* the witness.
   c. The *validity* of this argument cannot be doubted.
   d. The steep *declivity* was a good place for coasting.
   e. Her sister is an *invalid*.
   f. True friends are loyal in our *adversity*.
   g. The body of Achilles was *vulnerable* at only one point.

3. To *determine* a matter is to fix its limits or boundaries; to *terminate* a discussion is to bring it to an end.

4. Has the modern *circus* any connection with the Roman Circus?



GLADIATORS' HELMETS

EXERCISES

164. Write in Latin the following phrases:

1. toward school
2. out of camp
3. in the provinces
4. into the houses
5. from the hills
6. in a public place
7. on our streets
8. from heaven
9. in an open space
10. into the Forum

165. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. Bon— discipulī in lūd— labōrant.

2. Agricolae frūmentum ex agr— in oppid— portant.
3. Lūn— in cael— vident.
4. Nautae cas— in īnsul— habent.
5. Līberī ē vill— ad agr— ambulāvērunt.
6. Rosās mult— in hort— nostr— spectāvērunt.
7. Liber est in mēns— in camer— me—.
8. Puerī ex hort— ad domicili— properant.

166. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Ubi herī erant Mārcellus et Mārcus?
2. Unde in viam māne properāvērunt?
3. Quō per viās ambulāvērunt?
4. Quālis erat fōrma Circī Māximī?
5. Unde Rōmānī captīvōs saepe domum dūcunt?
6. Quō īnstrūmentō gladiātor adversārium vulnerāvit?
7. Unde servī virum miserum portāvērunt?
8. Quālem fortūnam habet vir miser?

A Wounded Gladiator

A Roman Amphitheatre at Nîmes, France

CHAPTER XVIII

A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

PREPARATION

Second Conjugation: Indicative and Imperative Active

167. The second conjugation includes all verbs whose present stem ends in ē. As in the first conjugation, the present stem is obtained by dropping the ending **-re** of the present infinitive active, and is used in forming the present, imperfect, and future tenses. (Carefully review the facts stated in **123** and **124**.) The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are formed on the perfect stem (**123**). Note in the vocabulary

of this chapter that second conjugation verbs make the perfect stem in various ways. It is always necessary to know the principal parts in order to conjugate the verb in all its forms.

168. From these two stems second conjugation verbs form the six tenses of the indicative according to the table for the first conjugation in **148**. Practice conjugating all the tenses aloud.

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, *I warn, I advise*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **moneō,** *I warn, am warning, do warn*	1. **monēmus,** *we warn*, etc.
2. **monēs,** *you warn*, etc.	2. **monētis,** *you warn*, etc.
3. **monet,** *he (she, it) warns*, etc.	3. **monent,** *they warn*, etc.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **monēbam,** *I was warning*, etc.	1. **monēbāmus,** *we were warning*, etc.
2. **monēbās,** *you were warning*, etc.	2. **monēbātis,** *you were warning*, etc.
3. **monēbat,** *he (she, it) was warning*, etc.	3. **monēbant,** *they were warning*, etc.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **monēbō,** *I shall warn*	1. **monēbimus,** *we shall warn*
2. **monēbis,** *you will warn*	2. **monēbitis,** *you will warn*
3. **monēbit,** *he (she, it) will warn*	3. **monēbunt,** *they will warn*

Perfect Indicative

Singular	Plural
1. **monuī,** *I warned, have warned,* etc.	1. **monuimus,** *we warned,* etc.
2. **monuistī,** *you warned,* etc.	2. **monuistis,** *you warned,* etc.
3. **monuit,** *he (she, it) warned,* etc.	3. **monuērunt (-ēre),** *they warned,* etc.

Pluperfect Indicative

Singular	Plural
1. **monueram,** *I had warned*	1. **monuerāmus,** *we had warned*
2. **monuerās,** *you had warned*	2. **monuerātis,** *you had warned*
3. **monuerat,** *he (she, it) had warned*	3. **monuerant,** *they had warned*

Future Perfect Indicative

Singular	Plural
1. **monuerō,** *I shall have warned*	1. **monuerimus,** *we shall have warned*
2. **monueris,** *you will have warned*	2. **monueritis,** *you will have warned*
3. **monuerit,** *he (she, it) will have warned*	3. **monuerint,** *they will have warned*

Note that in the present tense the final **ē** of the present stem is shortened in the first and third persons singular and in the third person plural. Note carefully the accent of the perfect tense.

169. The present imperative of second conjugation verbs, like the first conjugation, uses the present stem for the second person singular and adds **-te** to the stem to form the plural.

Present Imperative	
Singular	Plural
2. monē, *warn (thou)*	2. monēte, *warn (ye)*

170. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, wrong*

ADJECTIVES

prīmus, -a, -um, *first*
quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of*

CONJUNCTIONS

nam, *for*
tamen, *however, nevertheless*

PREPOSITION

sine (with abl.), *without*

ADVERB

subitō, *suddenly*

VERBS

* **habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus,** *have, hold*
respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *reply, answer*
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, *sit*
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *hold, keep*
* **videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus,** *see*

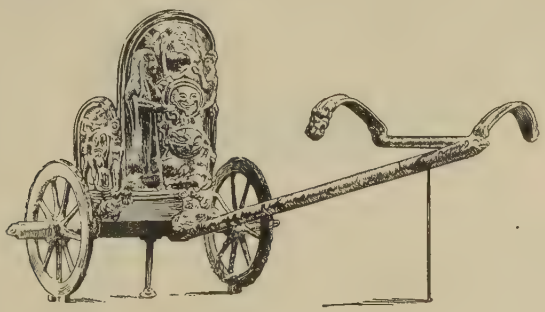
171. Dē Certāmine Quadrīgārum

Iterum in Circō Māximō Mārcellus et Mārcus sedēbant; iterum māgnus numerus virōrum cūncta subsellia tenēbat. "Herī," inquit Mārcellus, "lūdōs gladiātōriōs vīdimus; hodiē certāmen quadrīgārum [1] spectābimus." "Quadrīgās nōn videō," inquit Mārcus, "Ubi sunt?" "Mox," respondit poēta, "pompam vidēbis, et tum apparēbunt quadrīgae et aurīgae." [2] Subitō cūnctī virī clāmāvērunt, "Ecce, pompa!" et māgnifica pompa [3] dē Capitōliō [4] per Forum appropinquāvit et Circum per portam pompae [5] intrāvit. In pompā erant simulācra deōrum et virī et equī et quadrīgae et aurīgae.

QUADRĪGAE CIRCUM SPĪNAM CURRUNT

Iam pompa per cūnctam arēnam prōcesserat (*had proceeded*). Quadrīgae in portīs [6] stābant et aurīgae sīgnum exspectābant. Tuba sīgnum dat, et quadrīgae ē portīs ad mētās [7] volant. Aurīgae in quadrīgīs stant et habēnās tenent. Equōs flagellant et verbīs incitant, et quadrīgae rotīs rapidīs per arēnam volant. Populus aurīgīs cōnsilium dabat, "Equōs incitā, Pūblī!" "Interiōrem locum (*inner course*) [8] tenē, Lȳde!" Nam quadrīgae iam ad mētās appropinquābant, ubi erat māgnum perīculum.

In quārtō spatiō [9] Pūblī quadrīgae rotam quadrīgārum Lȳdī frēgērunt (*broke*). In arēnā iacēbat Lȳdus, et servī aurīgae miserō auxilium dedērunt. Amīcī Lȳdī



An Etruscan Chariot
In the Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York City.

lacrimās nōn tenēbant, sed "Mala est fortūna!" clāmābant, "Victōriam nōn habēbit!" Nōn māgna tamen erat iniūria, et servī Lȳdum ex arēnā portāvērunt.

Reliquī aurīgae sine iniūriīs equōs per septem spatia agitāvērunt, et locum prīmum tenuit Pūblius. Dominus lūdōrum Pūbliō palmam victōriae dedit, et cūnctus populus victōriam probāvit.

172. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

aurīga, -ae, m., *charioteer*
Capitōlium, -ī, n., *the Capitol*
habēnae, -ārum, f. plur. (habeō), *reins*
lacrima, -ae, f., *tear*
Lȳdus, -ī, m., *Lydus*
palma, -ae, f., *palm branch, prize*
pompa, -ae, f., *procession, parade*
Pūblius, -ī, m., *Publius*
rota, -ae, f. (rotundus), *wheel*
simulācrum, -ī, n., *image*

ADVERBS

ecce, *see! behold!*
iterum, *again, a second time*

VERBS

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (agunt), *drive*
appareō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *appear, become visible*
iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie, be prostrate*
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *urge on*
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prove, approve*

ADJECTIVES

māgnificus, -a, -um, *imposing, magnificent*
rapidus, -a, -um (raptō), *quick, rapid*

173. NOTES

1. See text and Note 6 of Chapter XVII.

2. The chariot drivers were either slaves or freedmen. Some of the latter had won their freedom by their skill in the race. They wore tunics of bright colors, by which they could be distinguished, and shoulder pads and leather greaves, much like a modern football player.

3. The procession which opened some of the public games was a brilliant spectacle. The **dominus lūdōrum** rode at its head, dressed as a victorious general.

4. The Capitoline Hill, with its citadel and temple of Jupiter, is meant by the term **Capitōlium.** Sometimes the temple alone is meant.

5. This gate was in the center of that end of the Circus which was not occupied by the seats of the spectators. (See plan, Chapter XVII.) Over this gate was the seat of the **dominus lūdōrum.**

6. The *barriers* from which the chariots started were on either side of the **porta pompae.** Each chariot waited in a sort of chamber behind folding doors, which were opened when the signal was given.

7. See Chapter XVII, Note 7.

8. In rounding the goal at the end of the **spīna** the inner course was naturally the shorter.

9. See Chapter XVII, Note 7. Once around the **spīna** was a **spatium,** or *lap.*

A Slave Collar

174. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. The king was crowned with *pomp* and ceremony.
   b. In the attic are many *relics* of colonial days.
   c. The garage was *adjacent* to the house.
   d. This boy will be promoted upon *probation.*
   e. This is a matter of *prime* importance.

2. Show the connection in meaning between **prīmus** and the following words: *primal, primary, primer, primitive, primate.* Through Italian, English has *prima donna,* from **prīma domina,** *the first lady. Primeval,* "belonging to the

first ages," is from Latin **prīmum,** *first,* and **aevum,** *age.* From **prīmus,** *premier* has come through French into English.

3. A *sinecure* is an office or position having few duties, and therefore *without care.*

4. To *rotate* or have a *rotary* motion is to turn upon an axis like a wheel.

5. What fact learned in Chapter XII (112) is illustrated by *injury?*

6. A *quatrain* is a stanza of four lines. A *quarto* book or pamphlet has pages the size of the fourth of the sheet. Explain the connection of the following words with **quārtus:** *quartet, quarter, quart.*

EXERCISES

175. Give the principal parts and a synopsis of the following verbs:

1. **iaceō,** third person plural
2. **respondeō,** second person singular
3. **sedeō** third person singular
4. **videō,** first person plural

176. Conjugate **videō** in the present and perfect tenses, **habeō** in the imperfect and future tenses, **teneō** in the pluperfect and future perfect tenses.

177. Give the Latin forms for the following:

1. He will lie.
2. They will have answered.
3. Do you (sing.) see?
4. We had had.
5. They saw.
6. I shall hold.
7. Hasn't he appeared?
8. We were sitting.
9. See (plur.).
10. You (plur.) sat.

178. Write in Latin:

1. Many Romans used to sit on the seats of the Circus Maximus.

2. Soon the chariots will appear in the arena.

3. "Did you see the shows in the Circus Maximus yesterday, boys?" "Yes," they replied, "we saw the gladiatorial games."

4. Did you have a good seat, Lucius?

5. Soon the charioteer was lying in the arena, but he kept holding the reins.

LIFE IN THE ROMAN FORUM

VIEW OF THE ROMAN FORUM

(*Showing the Tabularium, the Column of Phocas, and the Arch of Septimius.*)

CHAPTER XIX

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

179. VOCABULARY REVIEW

Be sure that you are thoroughly familiar with the vocabulary forms of all the words in the list which follows. The list includes the words given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters XIV–XVIII, and nine first conjugation verbs of previous required vocabularies whose principal parts have not been given. These may be found in the general vocabulary at the back of the book.

ā (ab)
altus
amīcitia
amō
appellō
bene
beneficium
causa
circum
collocō
cōnfīrmō
cūr
dēmōnstrō
deus
dō
ē (ex)
exspectō
fortūna
fuga
habeō
habitō
iniūria
iuvō
labōrō
laudō
māgnōpere
māximus
medius
minimē
nam
-ne
occupō
oculus
oppūgnō
parō
perturbō
poena
portō
posteā
prīmus
prō
pūgna
pūgnō
quārtus
quī, quae, quod
quidem
quis, quid
quō
quod
reliquus
respondeō
rogō
sacer
sedeō
servō
sine
spectō
stō
subitō
superō
tamen
teneō
unde
ūnus
victōria
videō
vocō
vulnerō

180. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

RULES OF SYNTAX. —

1. *Questions in Latin not introduced by a special interrogative word are introduced by* **-ne, nōnne,** *or* **num.**

   a. **-ne** *is used in a question which does not indicate what answer is desired.*

   b. **Nōnne** *is used in a question which desires an affirmative answer.*

c. **Num** *is used in a question which desires a negative answer.*

2. *Expressions of Place*

a. Place in which *is regularly expressed by* **in** *and the ablative.*

b. Place from which *is regularly expressed by* **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**), *and the ablative.*

c. Place to which *is regularly expressed by* **in** *or* **ad** *and the accusative.*

What is meant by an *enclitic?* For what is the imperative mode of verbs used? What is the difference in meaning of **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, and **ē** (**ex**)? What is the difference in meaning of **ad** and **in** with the accusative?

181. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

1. What forms of a verb are given as its principal parts? Why is it necessary to know the principal parts of a verb?

2. What is meant by the stem of a verb? How are stems used? How many stems has a verb? Name them and tell exactly how each is obtained. What is the difference between the present stems of the first and second conjugations? Do the perfect stems of first conjugation verbs always end in the same way? Do those of the second conjugation?

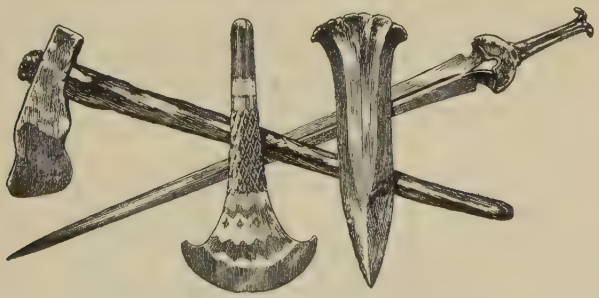
3. What tenses are made on the present stem? On the perfect stem? What tenses show completed action? What is the difference in meaning of the three past tenses: imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect? Which tense has special personal endings? Recite them. What is the tense sign of the imperfect tense? Of the future? Of the pluperfect? Of the future perfect? What stem is used to make the present imperative? What endings?

4. Give as rapidly as you can the complete conjugation of the indicative and the present imperative of the following verbs: **habitō, videō, habeō, iuvō.**

5. Time yourself in giving the synopses of the following verbs:

sedeō, second person plural
dō, third person plural
laudō, first person plural
teneō, third person singular

6. What is the shortest time in which you can recite the declension of the interrogative pronoun **quis?** The interrogative adjective **quī?** What forms of these two words are not alike? What is the Latin for *who* (sing.)? *whom* (sing.)?



GALLIC STONE AND BRONZE IMPLEMENTS

what (nom. and acc., sing. and plur.)? *what man* (nom. and acc.)? *what woman* (nom. and acc.)? *what reward* (nom. and acc.)? *what rewards* (nom. and acc.)?

REVIEW EXERCISES

182. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. Rōmānī in pulchr— templ— mult— de— adōrā-bant.

2. Līberī poētae Rōmān— ē domicili— per vi— ad lūd— herī properāvērunt.

3. In māgn— arēn— Circī Māxim— lūd— vīdimus.

4. Mercurius, nūnti— deōrum, dē cael— ad terr— ālīs volat.

5. Qu— puerīs magister praemi—(plur.) dedit?

6. Qu— oppida Galliae Rōmānī proeli— superāv—?

7. Qu— dominus vīllae parvīs fīli—(fem.) dabit?

183. Write in Latin:

1. What did the children of the Romans see in the Circus Maximus?

2. A long procession of chariots and drivers had entered the arena.

3. We shall hasten down from the high hill into the Forum, and walk through the streets toward the temple.

4. In what temple were the beautiful statues of the gods and goddesses?

5. The master did not reply to the bad boys, did he?

6. "What town is in Italy?" said the teacher. "Answer, Marcus."

7. "Look at the map of Europe, pupils. What countries do you see?"

8. We had walked into the Circus Maximus and were sitting on the benches.

184. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

1. Latin Words Which Have Become English with No Change of Form

List the following in your notebook as directed in 59, 1: *arena, circus, focus, Forum, medium, terminus.*

2. English Words Derived from Latin

List as directed in 59, 2 all the derivatives you can recall or find from the following words: **vocō, ūnus, medius, prīmus, videō, teneō, sedeō.** (Use the participial stem of the verbs as well as the present stem.)

3. Latin Words and Phrases That Are Used in English

List the following phrases, with English meaning of each, and whatever explanation of their use is necessary: **hīc iacet; sine quā nōn; sine diē; ē plūribus ūnum; cuī bonō?**

4. List in your notebook on the page headed First Declension Abstract Nouns (116) the following: **iniūria.**

5. List in your notebook on the page headed English Adjectives Derived from Latin Adjectives (116) the following: **avidus, rapidus, maculōsus.**

Head of the God Jupiter (Coin)

PĀSTOR RŌMULUM ET REMUM VIDIT

CHAPTER XX

ROMULUS AND REMUS

SUGGESTIONS FOR TRANSLATION

185. You are studying Latin in order that you may be able to *read* Latin, as a means of becoming acquainted at first hand with a nation whose history and civilization are, in large measure, the foundation of our modern life. It is of the greatest importance that you should begin, at the outset of this study, to use correct methods of reading and translating Latin. Translation is merely a means of showing whether one has really grasped the full meaning of what is being read in a

foreign language, and of conveying that thought to others; what you need is to gain *power to read Latin.*

186. Always read the Latin of a new passage to yourself, aloud if possible, and try to get the meaning as you read, just as you would in English. Group related words together in phrases, *e.g.*, a noun and its modifying adjective, a prepositional phrase, the subject and all its modifiers, and try to grasp the meaning of each phrase as a whole. You will probably not get the meaning of everything at the first reading, but if you succeed even in part, you are gaining in *power to read.*

187. Read the passage a second time, dwelling especially on the parts not understood before. Your failure to grasp the thought may have been due to insufficient care in *observing endings;* remember that Latin syntax is expressed almost entirely by endings, and that you cannot understand Latin without comprehending the full significance of each and every one. If the sentence contains a word whose ending might indicate any one of several grammatical uses, *e.g.*, **-ae** in the first declension, **-īs** in the first and second declensions, you must suspend judgment until you have read further. The syntax of the sentence as a whole will help you to decide which grammatical use is meant, if your reasoning is not at fault.

188. You may have missed the thought of a phrase or sentence through ignorance of the *meaning of words.* If such is the case, try to arrive at the meaning for yourself, and turn to the vocabulary only as a last resort, or to verify your decision as to the possible meaning of a word. There are several ways in which you may determine what a new word means. See if you can think of any English derivatives that will help, or any connected Latin words whose meaning you know. Your knowledge of suffixes may help here (**115**). Sometimes

the general meaning of the sentence will enable you to make a reasonable guess about the meaning of a strange word. In any case try to have clearly in mind the syntax of the unknown word. Putting the Latin word, in its proper grammatical relation, into the English translation of the rest of the sentence sometimes gives the clue. But remember to exhaust every resource known to you before you consult the vocabulary. It may seem to you far easier and quicker to turn the pages and look up the word, but there is no surer way to defeat your purpose of *learning to read Latin*. A word whose meaning you have worked to find will stick in your memory; if you make the vocabulary do for you what your own mind should do, you will probably not remember the word, and your mental power, through lack of exercise, will miss its full development.

189. In preceding lessons attention has been called to various facts about the *order of words* in a Latin sentence, which is, as you have already realized, not the same as in English. A summary of these facts will be a help to you in translation.

1. Word order does not show the meaning of the sentence as it does in English.

2. The natural order of words in a declarative sentence is (1) the subject with its modifiers, (2) the indirect object, (3) the direct object or predicate nominative with its modifiers, (4) modifiers of the verb, (5) the verb.

3. Adjectives and genitive modifiers may in most cases either precede or follow the nouns they limit.

4. Adverbs regularly precede the words they modify.

5. Appositives stand immediately after the nouns they limit.

6. The vocative does not usually stand first in a sentence.

7. Forms of **sum** frequently stand between the subject and a predicate nominative, instead of at the end of the sentence.

8. In questions and commands the verb often stands at or near the beginning of the sentence.

Any change from the natural order of words in a sentence places emphasis upon the word or words whose position is unusual. Special emphasis is secured by putting at the beginning of the sentence any word or phrase which does not normally stand there. The English translation should reproduce this emphasis, either by its word order, or by recasting the form of the sentence.

Saepe virum vīdī. *Often have I seen the man.*
In Forō virum vīdī. *It was in the Forum that I saw the man.*

In your subsequent reading of Latin, try to watch for unusual positions of words, and make your translation show in some way the emphasis which is thus obtained in Latin.

190. Your final translation should be as nearly like the Latin as is consistent with good English. If a word-for-word translation is correct and natural English and conveys exactly the same meaning and emphasis as the Latin, that is the best translation. You should never be satisfied, however, with a translation given in stiff and unnatural English, or with one that has no meaning. Such a translation cannot possibly be correct.

PREPARATION

Third Declension: Nouns with Nominative Like the Base

191. To the third declension belong all nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-is**. In it are found masculines, feminines, and neuters. Some third declension nouns have a nominative

which is the same as the base (found by cutting off the ending **-is** from the genitive singular), or like the base with a change in the quantity of its last vowel; others have a nominative which is a modification of the base. In this chapter are given only nouns whose nominative is like the base, with or without a change in vowel quantity.

honor, honōris, m., *honor, esteem*		**arbor, arboris,** f., *tree*	
Base, **honōr-**		Base, **arbor-**	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	honor	honōrēs	arbor	arborēs
Gen.	honōris	honōrum	arboris	arborum
Dat.	honōrī	honōribus	arborī	arboribus
Acc.	honōrem	honōrēs	arborem	arborēs
Abl.	honōre	honōribus	arbore	arboribus

Note the following facts about these paradigms:

1. Masculine nouns and feminine nouns have the same endings.

2. The nominative and accusative plural are alike.

3. The dative and ablative plural are alike, as always in Latin. The ending is different from that used in both the first and second declensions, but is like **quibus** (137). The accent in these two cases always falls on the antepenult. Why?

4. The genitive singular ending **-is** is not **-īs** as in the dative and ablative plural of the first and second declensions.

5. The differences in the accusative singular, the genitive plural, and the accusative plural of the first three declensions should be carefully noted:

Declension	1	2	3
Accusative Singular	-am	-um	-em
Genitive Plural	-ārum	-ōrum	-um
Accusative Plural	-ās	-ōs	-ēs

6. The vocative of the third declension is always like the nominative and is therefore not given in the paradigms.

192. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

arbor, -oris, f., *tree*
clāmor, -ōris, m. (clāmō), *shout, noise*
dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, pain, sorrow*
honor, -ōris, m. *honor, esteem*
rēgnum, -ī, n. (rēgnō), *royal power, kingdom, throne*
soror, -ōris, f., *sister*
timor, -ōris, m., *fear*

VERBS

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (locus, collocō), *place, put*
timeō, -ēre, -uī, — (timor), *fear, be afraid*

PREPOSITION

sub (with abl.), *under, at the foot of;* (with acc.), *under* (with vbs. of motion)

193. **Dē Rōmulō et Remō**

According to the legendary history of early Rome the Trojan hero, Aeneas, came to Italy after the destruction of Troy by the Greeks and built the city of Lavinium. Ascanius, son of Aeneas, founded Alba Longa, where his descendants ruled for three hundred years. From Alba Longa came the founders of Rome. This story of Romulus and Remus explains the origin of the name of Rome.

In antīquō oppidō Ītaliae, Albā Longā,[1] ōlim habitābat et rēgnābat Procās. Procās fīliōs Numitōrem et Amūlium habuit. Numitor erat vir bonus et Numitōrī Procās

rēgnum Albae Longae dedit, sed Amūlius, vir malus, rēgnum māgnōpere dēsīderābat. Itaque Amūlius Numitōrem exterminā́vit,[2] et rēgnum occupāvit et rēgnābat. Numitor ūnum fīlium et fīliam ūnam, Rhēam Silviam, habēbat. Rhēa Silvia erat bona et pulchra. Amūlius, quod rēgnum dēsīderāverat, līberōs Numitōris nōn amābat et timēbat. Māgnus erat timor Amūlī. Itaque Amūlius fīlium Numitōris necāvit, et sorōrem puerī, Rhēam Silviam, virginem Vestālem[3] (*a Vestal virgin*) creāvit. Virginēs Vestālēs nōn nūbēbant[4] (*used to marry*). Sed Mārs,[5] deus bellī, Rhēam Silviam vīderat et amāvit et Rhēam Silviam uxōrem habēbat. Posteā Mārs et Rhēa Silvia geminōs līberōs habuērunt, geminōs fīliōs, Rōmulum et Remum. Tum quidem māgnus dolor et timor māgnus Amūlium perturbābant. Amūlius fīliōs Rhēae Silviae timēbat. Itaque Rhēam Silviam necāvit et in arcā geminōs et arcam in aquā Tiberis (*of the Tiber*) locāvit. Aqua Tiberis tum alta erat et in terram redundāverat, sed posteā aqua sēdit et arca in terrā sub arboribus erat. Puerī, quod cibum dēsīderābant, māgnōpere clāmābant. Lupa[6] ad clāmōrem puerōrum appropinquāvit et geminīs nūtrīmentum dedit.

VIRGŌ VESTĀLIS

Posteā Faustulus, pāstor, līberōs vīdit et ad domicilium portāvit et uxōrī dedit. Tum pāstor et uxor geminōs puerōs cūrāvērunt et ēducāvērunt. Posteā Rōmulus et Remus, cum virī erant, Amūlium necāvērunt et avō

Numitōrī rēgnum et māgnum honōrem dedērunt. Tum oppidum novum Rōmulus et Remus aedificāvērunt.[7] Rōmulus et Remus controversiam habēbant et Rōmulus Remum necāvit. Tum Rōmulus oppidum novum Rōmam appellāvit.

194. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Alba Longa, Albae Longae, f., *Alba Longa* (the long white city)
Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius*
avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*
controversia, -ae, f., *dispute, controversy*
lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf*
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor*
nūtrīmentum, -ī, n., *nourishment*
pāstor, -ōris, m., *shepherd*
Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*
Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae, f., *Rhea Silvia*
Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus*
uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

ADJECTIVE

geminus, -a, -um, *twin, double;* plur. as noun, **geminī, -ōrum,** *m., twins*

VERBS

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *elect, appoint, make*
ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up, rear, educate*
necō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, *kill*
redundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *overflow*

195. NOTES

1. The buildings of Alba Longa stretched along a ridge between the Alban lake and Mt. Alban in Latium.

2. Explain the meaning of the verb **exterminō** from **ex** and the noun **terminus.**

3. The goddess Vesta was worshiped both by the family in the home and by the state. Read again the account of the Roman gods in **150.**

4. Those Roman maidens of noble lineage who in early childhood became Vestal virgins were forbidden to marry until the expiration of their thirty years of service as priestesses of Vesta.

5. It was appropriate that the Romans, who were almost constantly engaged in warfare, should claim Mars, the god of war, as the patron of their city and as the father of its founder.

6. An ancient statue of the wolf with Romulus and Remus may be seen to-day on the Capitoline Hill in Rome.

7. According to the legend Romulus founded Rome in the year 753 B.C.

196. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words have come into English with little or no change in form: *arbor*, *honor*, *nutriment*, *pastor*, *ark*, *controversy* (see 112). Have any of these words changed in meaning?

2. What is a *sorority?*

3. Show the meaning of the English verbs *create*, *educate*, and *locate* as derived from Latin verbs. From what stem are they made? What may reasonably be inferred about the Latin original of an English verb ending in *-ate?*

4. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. *Redundancy* of speech should be guarded against if the thought is to be clearly expressed.

b. The disappointed child showed a *dolorous* countenance.

EXERCISES

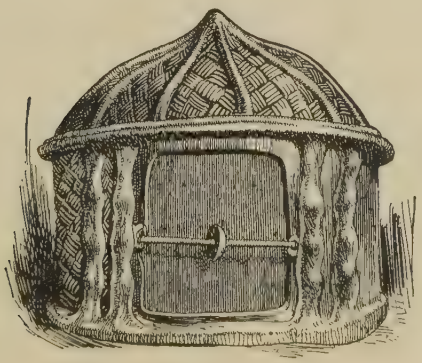
197. Decline the following: **māgnus honor; soror mea; bonus pāstor; pulchra arbor; dolor noster.**

198. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Ubi Procās rēgnābat?
2. Quālēs fīliōs habuit Procās?
3. Cūius fīlia erat Rhēa Silvia?
4. Cūr timor Amūlī māgnus erat?
5. Ubi Amūlius Rōmulum et Remum locāvit?
6. Quibus lupa nūtrīmentum dedit?
7. Quis puerōs ad domicilium portāvit?
8. Quō Faustulus puerōs portāvit?
9. Cuī pāstor geminōs dedit?
10. Quid Rōmulus et Remus avō dedērunt?

199. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. Fīlius Numitōris sorōr— pulchr— habu—.
2. In me— hort— sunt arborēs māgn— et pulchr—.
3. Sub alt— arbor—(sing.) līberī meī sedent.
4. Procās fīli— Numitōr— rēgnum Alb— Long— dedit.
5. Uxor Faustulī pāstōr— puer— cūrāvit.
6. Puerī bonī sorōr— parv— pōm— rubr— dabant.



THE HUT OF ROMULUS

Fēminae Sabīnae Proelium Māgnō Dolōre Spectant

CHAPTER XXI

THE SABINE WOMEN

The story of the seizure of the Sabine women by the Romans belongs to the period of the early wars by which the city of Rome extended her authority over Latium.

PREPARATION

Third Declension: Nominatives Formed by Modification of Base. Ablative of Manner

200. Many third declension nouns have a nominative made by some modification of the base (**191**). For the formation of these nominatives no rule can be given, even for nouns of the same gender.

dux, ducis, m., *leader*

BASE, **duc-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	dux	ducēs
GEN.	ducis	ducum
DAT.	ducī	ducibus
ACC.	ducem	ducēs
ABL.	duce	ducibus

pater, patris, m., *father*

BASE, **patr-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	pater	patrēs
GEN.	patris	patrum
DAT.	patrī	patribus
ACC.	patrem	patrēs
ABL.	patre	patribus

virtūs, virtūtis, f., *courage, manliness, virtue*

BASE, **virtūt-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	virtūs	virtūtēs
GEN.	virtūtis	virtūtum
DAT.	virtūtī	virtūtibus
ACC.	virtūtem	virtūtēs
ABL.	virtūte	virtūtibus

nōmen, nōminis, n., *name*

BASE, **nōmin-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	nōmen	nōmina
GEN.	nōminis	nōminum
DAT.	nōminī	nōminibus
ACC.	nōmen	nōmina
ABL.	nōmine	nōminibus

Note that the nominative and accusative plural of neuter nouns of the third declension end in **-a** instead of **-ēs.** (See **75,** 2.)

Before one can decline a third declension noun it is necessary to know three facts about it: (1) the nominative singular, (2) the genitive singular, giving the base, and (3) the gender. The vocabulary form, which gives these three facts, should be memorized with especial care.

201. The manner in which an action is done may be expressed in Latin by the ablative case, as in the following sentences:

Puer cum studiō labōrat. *The boy is working with zeal (zealously).*

Puer māgnō cum studiō labōrat.
Puer māgnō studiō labōrat.
} *The boy is working with great zeal (very zealously).*

The ablative phrases **cum studiō, māgnō cum studiō,** and **māgnō studiō** express the manner in which the boy works, and, as is usually the case with the ablative of manner, may be translated by an equivalent adverb. Notice that the preposition **cum** is used in these phrases but may be omitted, as in **māgnō studiō,** when the ablative noun has an adjective modifier.

202. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *The ablative with the preposition* **cum** *is used to express the manner of an action, but* **cum** *may be omitted if the ablative phrase contains an adjective modifier.*

203. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

celeritās, -tātis, f., *speed, swiftness*
cōpiae, -ārum, f. plur., *troops, forces* (See 42.)
dux, ducis, m., *leader, general*
frāter, frātris, m., *brother*
iūs, iūris, n. (iniūria), *right, justice*
iuvenis, iuvenis, m., *youth, young man*
labor, -ōris, m. (labōrō), *toil, work, labor*
multitūdō, -dinis, f. (multus), *large number, multitude*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

nōmen, -minis, n., *name*
pater, -tris, m. (patria), *father*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace*
regiō, -ōnis, f., *region*
studium, -ī, n., *eagerness, zeal*
virtūs, -tūtis, f. (vir), *courage, manliness, virtue*

ADJECTIVE

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring, near;* as noun, **fīnitimī, -ōrum,** m. plur., *neighbors*

PREPOSITION

cum (with abl.), *with*

204. Dē Fēminīs Sabīnīs

Rōmulus mūrōs novī oppidī māgnō labōre iam aedificāverat, sed Rōma parvum oppidum erat et paucōs incolās habēbat. Ad novum oppidum multī pāstōrēs et latrōnēs[1] ē cūnctā Ītaliā properāvērunt, et in oppidō Rōmā habitābant. Cūnctī incolae erant virī neque mulierēs erant in oppidō. Itaque, quod virī Rōmae uxōrēs nōn habēbant, Rōmulus māgnōs lūdōs cum cūrā parāvit. Nūntiī Rōmulī ē novō oppidō ad cūnctās regiōnēs fīnitimās māgnā celeritāte properāvērunt et incolās fīnitimārum regiōnum ad lūdōs et spectācula Rōmāna vocāvērunt.

Tum multī agricolae et incolae oppidōrum fīnitimōrum ad novum oppidum properāvērunt. Multitūdō Sabīnōrum, fīnitimōrum Rōmae, et mulierēs Sabīnae et fīliae Sabīnōrum, virginēs pulchrae, Rōmam intrāvērunt. Māximō cum studiō oppidum novum spectābant et lūdī cūnctōs[2] dēlectābant. Sed malum erat cōnsilium Rōmulī. Tum cum cūnctī Sabīnī laetī lūdōs avidīs oculīs spectābant, Rōmulus sīgnum dedit, et statim iuvenēs Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnōrum raptābant et ad domicilia māximā celeritāte portābant.

Tum quidem cūncta multitūdō Sabīnōrum, patrum et frātrum virginum, Rōmānōs māgnō clāmōre culpābat. "Date nōbīs,"[3] clāmāvērunt, "fīliās et sorōrēs nostrās! Poenās dabitis!" Iniūria Rōmānōrum patrēs et frātrēs virginum māgnōpere perturbābat et Sabīnī bellum māgnā cum dīligentiā parābant. Māgnum numerum virōrum ex agrīs et ex oppidīs Sabīnōrum convocāvērunt et māgnae cōpiae Rōmam oppūgnāvērunt. Validī Sabīnī et Rōmānī multīs tēlīs māgnā cum virtūte pūgnābant.

Fīliae Sabīnōrum, quod nunc laetae uxōrēs erant Rōmānōrum, et coniugēs Rōmānōs amābant, bellum māximō dolōre vidēbant. Tum miserae fēminae ad proelium properāvērunt et patribus et frātribus clāmāvērunt: "Coniugēs nostrōs semper amābimus. Cūr pūgnātis? Nōnne fīliās vestrās et fīliārum līberōs amātis?" Itaque pācem cōnfīrmāvērunt. Posteā Sabīnī in novō oppidō habitābant et cūncta iūra Rōmānōrum habēbant. Rōmulus et dux Sabīnōrum[4] ūnam cīvitātem rēgnābant, et Rōmulus populō nōmen Quirītēs[5] ē nōmine oppidī Sabīnōrum dedit.

205. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

coniūnx, coniugis, m. or f. *husband,* or *wife*
cūra, -ae, f. (cūrō), *care*
latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber, pirate*
mulier, -eris, f., *woman*
virgō, -ginis, f., *maiden*

ADVERB

statim, *at once, immediately*

VERB

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (vocō), *call together, summon, gather*

ADJECTIVE

Sabīnus, -a, -um, *Sabine;* as noun, **Sabīnus, -ī,** m., *a Sabine*

206. NOTES

1. According to the traditional account, Romulus set apart on the Capitoline Hill an asylum, or place of refuge, for those banished or fugitive from other communities.

2. An adjective, unattached to any noun, is often used in Latin to indicate persons or things, according to its gender, the masculine meaning men, or people of both sexes, the feminine, persons of female sex, and the neuter, things, *e.g.*,

cūnctī, *all men, all people, everybody;* **miserae,** *the wretched (women)*; **bona,** *good things, goods, property.* This usage is not uncommon in English, *e.g.*, " None but *the brave* deserve *the fair.*"

3. For this form, see **130,** 2.

4. After the death of Titus Tatius, leader of the Sabines, Romulus was the sole king of the combined states.

5. After the Sabines and the Romans had united in one community under Romulus, the name **Quirītēs,** from the Sabine town of Cures, was added to that of Romans.

207. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following English words closely resemble their Latin originals: *celerity, duke, labor, multitude, region, study, convoke, virgin, virtue.*

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. The motion of the stone was greatly *accelerated* as it rolled down the steep slope.

b. Relief from anxiety has quite *rejuvenated* him.

c. This court has *jurisdiction* over all criminal cases.

3. Explain the connection of the following words with **frāter:** *fraternal, fraternize, fraternity.*

4. *Paternal* care is such as a father gives his child; a *patrimony* is an inheritance from one's father. Many English words connected with **pater** are derived more directly from **patria,** which is itself a derivative of **pater.** Explain *expatriate.*

5. From **nōmen** and its derivative verb **nōminō,** *to name,* come many English words. To *nominate* a candidate is to name him for office; the *nominative* case is the one that names the subject; the *denominator* of a fraction names the kind of

part that is taken; a system of *nomenclature* is a system of names for a group of related things.

6. What is a *pacifist?* Why was the *Pacific* Ocean so named?

EXERCISES

208. Decline the following: **iūs Rōmānum; pater noster; longum nōmen; māgna celeritās; bonus dux.**

Give a synopsis of **convocō** in the third person plural.

209. Translate the following sentences, and explain fully each use of the ablative that they include:

1. Puerī in lūdō māgnā dīligentiā labōrābant.
2. Māgnō cum studiō Sabīnī ad lūdōs Rōmānōs properāvērunt.
3. Multī virī ē Forō Rōmānō in Circum Māximum māgnā celeritāte properābant.
4. Agricolae agrōs arātrīs cum cūrā arant.
5. Māgnō labōre Rōmānī domicilia et templa pulchra aedificābant.
6. Rōmānī in multīs prōvinciīs gladiīs et pīlīs pūgnāvērunt.
7. Dē caelō Mercurius, nūntius deōrum, ālīs volāvit.

210. Write in Latin:

1. The Romans always prepared sacrifices for the gods with great care.
2. The men and women were sitting in the Circus Maximus and were eagerly watching the games.
3. "Carry the grapes quickly to the master of the villa," said the overseer to the slave.
4. The Romans approved the victory of the sturdy charioteer with loud (great) shouts.

5. The inhabitants of Italy and the Romans had fought very courageously with many weapons.

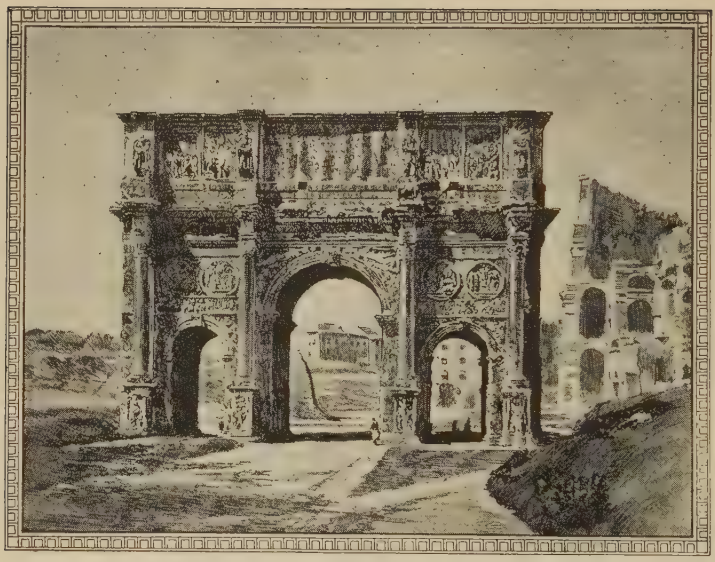
6. To-morrow the pupils will sit on the benches and prepare (their) tablets with great diligence.

7. The wretched gladiators often entered the arena with great fear.

8. With the greatest labor the slaves carried the grain from the fields into the barns.

9. The daughters of the Sabines watched the battle of (their) fathers and husbands with fear and grief.

Toilet Articles of a Roman Woman



THE ARCH OF THE EMPEROR CONSTANTINE

CHAPTER XXII

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES: LATIN WORD FORMATION

SPECIAL NOUN SUFFIXES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

211. In Chapter XII we studied first declension nouns with certain endings of special meaning, and found that those endings often had a closely corresponding English equivalent. The third declension has many such noun endings with special significance, some of which are given in this chapter.

212. The noun suffix **-or,** denoting activity or condition, is used to make nouns from verbs. For example, the word **tremor** (**tremō,** *tremble*) means *the act of trembling* or *a condition*

of trembling. Note that the word is the same in English as in Latin.

Show the connection of the following nouns with the verbs from which they are derived. How many of them are the same in English?

amor (**amō,** *love*)	error (**errō,** *wander, be mistaken*)
clāmor (**clāmō,** *shout*)	dolor (**doleō,** *grieve*)
timor (**timeō,** *fear*)	valor (**valeō,** *be strong*)

213. The noun suffix **-tor** (**-sor**) makes nouns from verbs, and denotes the one who does the action. Sometimes the ending is added to noun stems. Many such nouns have become English words with no change of form. **Imperātor** (**imperō,** *command*), *one who commands, commander*.

From what nouns or verbs are the following words made? Show how they are connected in meaning with those nouns or verbs. In how many cases are the English and Latin words identical?

nārrātor	ōrātor	agitātor
spectātor	dēfēnsor	numerātor
gladiātor	viātor	cūrātor
līberātor	iānitor	rēgnātor

214. The noun suffix **-tūdō** (English *-tude*) is used to make abstract nouns from adjectives. Many of the following nouns we have already met. Explain the derivation and meaning of the new ones.

māgnitūdō	altitūdō	sōlitūdō
multitūdō	fortitūdō	valētūdō
longitūdō	pulchritūdō	sollicitūdō
lātitūdō	amplitūdō	rēctitūdō

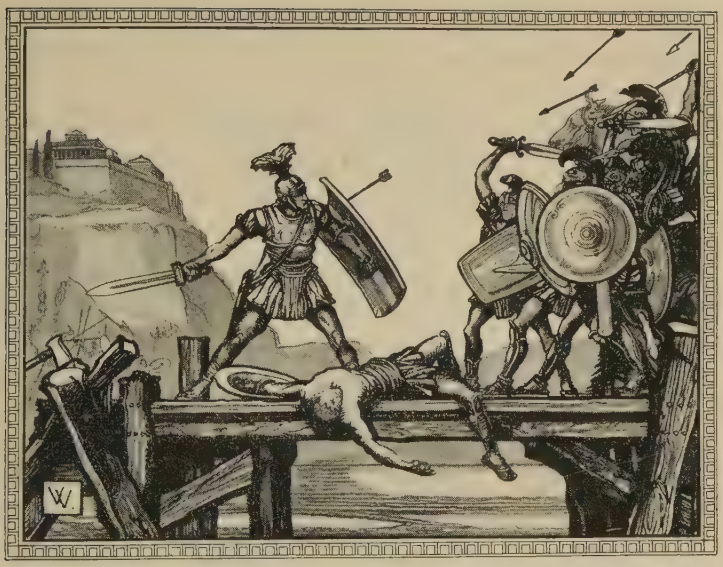
215. The noun suffix **-tās** makes abstract nouns from adjectives. These usually have an English equivalent ending in *-ty*, as, **celeritās** (**celer,** *swift*), *the quality of being swift, swiftness, celerity.* Give the derivation, meanings, and English equivalents of the following words:

antīquitās	necessitās	clāritās
paucitās	dīgnitās	tranquillitās
sevēritās	brevitās	gravitās

216. The noun suffix **-tiō** (**-siō**) makes nouns from verbs. These nouns mean *the act of*, and usually have equivalent English nouns ending in *-tion* (*-sion*), as, **nāvigātiō** (**nāvigō,** *sail*), *the act of sailing, navigation.* Explain the formation and meaning of the following words:

nārrātiō	dēfēnsiō	līberātiō
ōrātiō	dēmōnstrātiō	cōnservātiō
occupātiō	exspectātiō	cōnfīrmātiō
conciliātiō	convocātiō	

A Roman Cup



Cūnctī Etrūscī cum Horātiō Sōlō Pūgnant

CHAPTER XXIII

THE VALOR OF HORATIUS

After Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome, was expelled from the city, he sought to regain the throne with the aid of Lars Porsena, the powerful king of Clusium in Etruria. Read in Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome* this famous story of Roman courage.

PREPARATION

Third Declension: Vowel Stems. Ablative of Accompaniment

217. The third declension contains a group of nouns which have the vowel **i** before, or instead of, some of the usual third declension endings. These nouns are called *vowel stems*, or

i stems. Study carefully the paradigms and the special set of endings given below.

	hostis, m. *enemy*	**caedēs**, f. *slaughter*	**pōns**, m. *bridge*	**animal**, n. *animal*
STEM	**hosti-**	**caedi-**	**ponti-**	**animāli-**
BASE	**host-**	**caed-**	**pont-**	**animāl-**
		SINGULAR		
NOM.	hostis	caedēs	pōns	animal
GEN.	hostis	caedis	pontis	animālis
DAT.	hostī	caedī	pontī	animālī
ACC.	hostem	caedem	pontem	animal
ABL.	hoste	caede	ponte	animālī
		PLURAL		
NOM.	hostēs	caedēs	pontēs	animālia
GEN.	hostium	caedium	pontium	animālium
DAT.	hostibus	caedibus	pontibus	animālibus
ACC.	hostīs (-ēs)	caedīs (-ēs)	pontīs (-ēs)	animālia
ABL.	hostibus	caedibus	pontibus	animālibus

The special set of endings for vowel-stem nouns is listed below:

ENDINGS OF VOWEL STEMS

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and *F.*	*N.*	*M.* and *F.*	*N.*
(-s)	——	**-ēs**	**-ia**
-is	**-is**	**-ium**	**-ium**
-ī	**-ī**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
-em	——	**-īs (-ēs)**	**-ia**
-e	**-ī**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

Notice

1. The genitive plural ending **-ium** is the special characteristic of vowel-stem nouns; it is the same for all genders.

2. Masculine and feminine vowel stems differ from the other third declension nouns in the genitive plural and accusative

plural only. But some masculine and feminine vowel stems have the ablative singular in either **-e** or **-ī**. Such are **ignis,** m., *fire;* **nāvis,** f., *ship;* **turris,** f., *tower;* **cīvis,** m. and f., *citizen;* **fīnis,** m., *end;* **avis,** f., *bird.* **Turris** and **Tiberis,** m., *Tiber,* usually have the accusative singular in **-im.**

3. Neuter vowel stems have the ablative singular in **-ī,** and the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia,** as well as the genitive plural in **-ium.**

218. Since vowel-stem nouns are declined differently from others of the third declension, and since the vocabulary form of a third declension noun does not state whether or not it is a vowel stem, one must have some means of recognizing vowel stems. Make yourself thoroughly familiar with the following rules.

Vowel stems of the third declension include:

1. Nouns in **-ēs** or **-is,** not increasing in the genitive (*i.e.,* having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative singular). Thus **hostis, -is,** and **caedēs, -is,** are vowel stems; **mīles, mīlitis,** *soldier,* and **lapis, lapidis,** *stone,* are not.

2. Neuters in **-e, -al, -ar,** as **animal, mare,** *sea.*

3. Nouns whose base ends in two consonants, as **pōns** (base **pont-**), **cohors, cohortis,** *cohort* (base **cohort-**). These are mostly one-syllable nouns whose nominative ends in *-s* or *-x* following a consonant.

219. Notice the use of the ablative in the following sentences:

Puer cum patre per viās ambulat. *The boy is walking through the streets with his father.*

Gallī cum Rōmānīs saepe pūgnābant. *The Gauls often used to fight with the Romans.*

The phrases **cum patre** and **cum Rōmānīs** show who accompanied the subject or participated with the subject in the action

indicated by the sentence. This is called the *ablative of accompaniment*, and is expressed with the preposition **cum**, except in a few military phrases. Do not confuse this use of the ablative with the ablative of means (101) or the ablative of manner (202). All three of these ablatives may be translated by *with*, but in a different sense.

with (abl. of means) = *by means of*

with (abl. of manner) = adverb

with (abl. of accompaniment) = *in company with, together with*

220. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *The ablative is used with the preposition* **cum** *to express accompaniment.*

221. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Of the third declension nouns in this vocabulary, which ones are vowel stems?

NOUNS

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen*
cīvitās, -tātis, f. (cīvis), *state, citizenship*
fīnis, -is, m. (fīnitimus), *end, limit;* plur., **fīnēs, -ium,** *boundaries, territory*
flūmen, -minis, n., *river*
hostis, -is, m., *enemy*
iter, itineris, n., *journey, road, march*
mēns, mentis, f., *mind*
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier*
modus, -ī, m., *manner, way*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

pars, partis, f., *part*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*
rēx, rēgis, m. (rēgnō, rēgnum), *king*
urbs, urbis, f., *city*

ADJECTIVES

quantus, -a, -um, *how great?*
sōlus, -a, -um, *only, sole*

PREPOSITIONS

contrā (with acc.), *against*
trāns (with acc.), *across, over, through*

ADVERB

interim, *in the meanwhile*

222. Dē Virtūte Horātī

Etrūscī,[1] hostēs Rōmānōrum, bellum māgnā cūrā parāverant. Lars Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, māgnā cum multitūdine mīlitum fīnēs Rōmānōrum intrāverat. Rōmānī māximā cum virtūte cum hostium cōpiīs pūgnābant, sed Etrūscī mīlitēs Rōmānōs proeliō[2] superāverant et in fugam dederant. Māgna caedēs erat Rōmānōrum et timor māgnus mentīs[3] Rōmānōrum occupāverat. E cūnctīs partibus agrōrum cīvēs ad urbem properāverant. Porsena cum multīs mīlitibus montem Iāniculum[4] trāns Tiberim[5] flūmen occupāverat et Rōmam oppūgnābat. Moenia urbī praesidium in multīs partibus dabant, sed pōns sublicius (*wooden*) in flūmine Tiberī hostibus iter dabat. "Etrūscī," clāmābant Rōmānī, "sī pontem tenēbunt, urbem Rōmam intrābunt et dēlēbunt. In māximō perīculō est Rōma." Tum Horātius Cocles, validus mīles Rōmānus, clāmat: "Cum hostibus pūgnābō! Pontem tenēbō!" et ad ūlteriōrem (*farther*) partem pontis properat. Cum Horātiō comitēs Lārtius et Herminius contrā Etrūscōs māximā cum audāciā pūgnant. Interim mīlitēs Rōmānī ā tergō pontem māgnā celeritāte dēlent. Mox māximam partem pontis dēlēvērunt, et Lārtius et Herminius trāns pontem properant. Nunc Horātius sōlus stat. Cūnctī Etrūscī cum Horātiō sōlō pūgnant. Multa tēla ad ūnum Horātium iactant, sed Horātium pīlīs nōn vulnerant. Nunc cūnctum

A Roman Standard

pontem Rōmānī dēlēvērunt et Horātius in flūmen dēsilit (*jumps down*) et ad urbem natat. Itaque Horātius māgnā virtūte Rōmam servāvit. Tum quidem cūncta cīvitās Rōmāna māgnam virtūtem Horātī māgnōpere laudābat. Cīvēs Rōmānī laetī, quod virtūs Horātī Rōmam servāverat, Horātiō lātōs agrōs dedērunt, et statuam Horātī in urbe collocāvērunt.

223. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness*
caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter*
comes, -itis, m., *companion*
Horātius, -ī, m., *Horatius*
moenia, -ium, n. plur., *walls* (of a city), *fortifications*
tergum, -ī, n., *back;* **ā tergō,** *in the rear, from behind*
Tiberis, -is, m., *Tiber*

ADJECTIVES

Etrūscus, -a, -um, *Etruscan, of Etruria;* as noun, **Etrūscus, -ī,** m., *an Etruscan*
quot (indecl.), *how many?*

VERBS

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy*
iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *throw, hurl*
natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *swim*

224. NOTES

1. Locate on the map Etruria, Latium, Rome, and the Tiber.

2. Although **proeliō** may here be translated *in battle,* no preposition is used in Latin, because **proeliō,** thus used, was considered an ablative of means.

3. What case of certain third declension nouns may end in **-īs**?

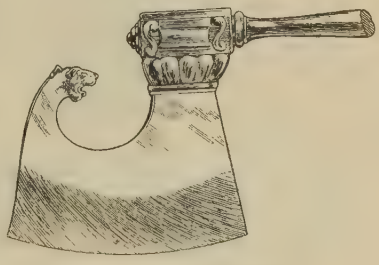
4. The Janiculum is a hill on the west side of the Tiber, while the seven hills of Rome are on the east side of the river.

5. See **217,** 2, end.

225. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. *Contrary* to my expectations, a letter came.
   b. A visitor arrived during the *interim* between classes.
   c. The *itinerary* of a Mediterranean cruise usually includes Madeira.
   d. He had the *audacity* to ask for money.
   e. The Gauls showed their *hostility* to the Romans by frequent uprisings.
   f. A *solitary* traveler had demanded shelter at the inn.
   g. There was a *partial* eclipse of the moon last night.
   h. *Itinerant* peddlers may still be seen in country places.
   i. The poor *demented* woman was taken to an asylum.

2. **Fīnis** is the origin of a large number of English words. Explain its connection with the following: *final; finite; infinite; define; confine; finish.*



A Roman Axe-Head

3. An *urban* (**114,** 3) population is one dwelling in cities; the *suburbs* are communities outside a city, but close to it (under its walls). *Urbane* manners are polished, citified manners, as opposed to boorish or countrified ones.

4. From **rēx** we get *regal*, and through the French *roi*, *royal* and *royalty*.

5. Explain the meaning of *military*, *militia*, and *militant* so as to show their derivation from **mīles.**

6. The word *civil,* in the sense of *polite,* shows that the Romans considered that only Roman citizens had proper breeding and behavior; all the rest of the world was included in the term **barbarī,** *barbarians.* Show how *civilize* and *civilization* contain the same idea. What is the difference between *civil* and *civic?*

EXERCISES

226. Decline: **altus mōns; longum iter; alta moenia; pulchra urbs; bonus cīvis; lātum flūmen; māgna pars; mīles Rōmānus.**

Give a synopsis of **dēleō** in the first person plural.

227. Write in Latin:

1. *a.* He was fighting with a sword.
   b. He was fighting with an enemy.
   c. He was fighting with courage.
   d. He was fighting with great courage.
2. All the Romans were joyful, because Horatius had saved the city.
3. The king of the Etruscans entered Roman territory with many soldiers.
4. Great was the fear of the Romans, because the Etruscans were hastening with great speed toward the city.
5. Horatius, with (his) sturdy companions, fought against the Etruscans on the bridge.
6. Will not the men of Rome quickly destroy the bridge?
7. Horatius boldly swam across the river to the city.

228. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quibuscum [1] Horātius pūgnābat?
2. Quālis vir erat Horātius?
3. Quot mīlitēs rēx Etrūscōrum habuit?

4. Quō modō Rōmānī contrā hostēs pūgnāvērunt?
5. Quanta erat caedēs Rōmānōrum?
6. Unde Rōmānī ad urbem properāverant?
7. Quī virī cum Horātiō in ponte stetērunt?
8. Quō modō comitēs Horātī pūgnāvērunt?
9. Unde Horātius dēsilit? Quō dēsilit? Quō natat?
10. Cūr cūncta cīvitās Horātium laudāvit?
11. Quanta erat virtūs Horātī?

[1] The preposition **cum** is always added as an enclitic (136, 1) to the ablative forms of the interrogative, relative, and personal pronouns.

ETRUSCAN SOLDIERS

NIOBĒ ET ŪLTIMA FĪLIA

CHAPTER XXIV

THE PUNISHMENT OF NIOBE

Many of the Greek and Roman myths about gods, goddesses, and heroes are the subjects of frequent allusion by poets and other writers of modern times. Appreciation of much that is written in English depends upon familiarity with these mythological stories, one of which is given in this chapter.

PREPARATION

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: PASSIVE VOICE, TENSES ON PRESENT STEM. ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT

229. A verb in the active voice represents its subject as acting or being, as, *The boy holds the book*, *The boy lives happily*, *The boy seems industrious*. A verb in the passive voice represents its subject as being acted upon, as, *The book is held by the*

boy. The word *passive* is from the participial stem of a Latin verb meaning to *allow* or *suffer*. The subject of a verb in the passive voice does nothing, but suffers or allows something done to it or him. In English the passive voice of a verb is formed by using the forms of the verb *to be* with the past participle. In Latin the passive voice of the present, imperfect, and future tenses uses the following personal endings:

PERSONAL ENDINGS, PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **-r** = *I*	1. **-mur** = *we*
2. **-ris** (**-re**) = *you*	2. **-minī** = *you*
3. **-tur** = *he, she, it*	3. **-ntur** = *they*

230. In the first and second conjugations these tenses are conjugated as follows:

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT INDICATIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
1. amor, *I am loved, am being loved*	1. moneor, *I am advised, am being advised*
2. amāris (**-re**), *you are loved*, etc.	2. monēris (**-re**), *you are advised*, etc.
3. amātur, *he (she, it) is loved*, etc.	3. monētur, *he (she, it) is advised*, etc.
PLURAL	PLURAL
1. amāmur, *we are loved*, etc.	1. monēmur, *we are advised*, etc.
2. amāminī, *you are loved*, etc.	2. monēminī, *you are advised*, etc.
3. amantur, *they are loved*, etc.	3. monentur, *they are advised*, etc.

Imperfect Indicative

Singular	Singular
1. **amābar,** *I was being loved, used to be loved*, etc.	1. **monēbar,** *I was being advised, used to be advised*, etc.
2. **amābāris (-re),** *you were being loved*, etc.	2. **monēbāris (-re),** *you were being advised*, etc.
3. **amābātur,** *he (she, it) was being loved*, etc.	3. **monēbātur,** *he (she, it) was being advised*, etc.
Plural	**Plural**
1. **amābāmur,** *we were being loved*, etc.	1. **monēbāmur,** *we were being advised*, etc.
2. **amābāminī,** *you were being loved*, etc.	2. **monēbāminī,** *you were being advised*, etc.
3. **amābantur,** *they were being loved*, etc.	3. **monēbantur,** *they were being advised*, etc.

Future Indicative

Singular	Singular
1. **amābor,** *I shall be loved*	1. **monēbor,** *I shall be advised*
2. **amāberis (-re),** *you will be loved*	2. **monēberis (-re),** *you will be advised*
3. **amābitur,** *he (she, it) will be loved*	3. **monēbitur,** *he (she, it) will be advised*
Plural	**Plural**
1. **amābimur,** *we shall be loved*	1. **monēbimur,** *we shall be advised*
2. **amābiminī,** *you will be loved*	2. **monēbiminī,** *you will be advised*
3. **amābuntur,** *they will be loved*	3. **monēbuntur,** *they will be advised*

Notice

1. In the indicative passive of the first and second conjugations the

Present tense = present stem + passive personal endings.

Imperfect tense = present stem + tense sign **ba** + passive personal endings.

Future tense = present stem + tense sign **bi** + passive personal endings.

2. In the second person singular of the future passive the tense sign changes from **bi** to **be.**

3. In the first person singular of the present and future tenses the passive ending **-r** is added to the active ending **-ō.**

4. In the third person singular of the present passive the final vowel of the present stem remains long.

5. In the imperfect passive the tense sign **ba** has long **ā** in the second and third persons singular and in the first and second persons plural.

231. In the first and second conjugations the present tense of the imperative passive is formed by adding to the present stem the endings **-re** for the singular and **-minī** for the plural.

PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
2. amāre, *be (thou) loved*	2. monēre, *be (thou) advised*
PLURAL	PLURAL
2. amāminī, *be (ye) loved*	2. monēminī, *be (ye) advised*

Notice

1. That the second person singular and plural of the present indicative passive are like the same forms of the present imperative passive, except that the imperative uses in the second singular the ending **-re** only.

2. That the present infinitive active and the second person

singular of the present imperative passive are alike. The form **amāre** thus occurs in three modes: the present indicative passive, the present imperative passive, and the present infinitive active.

232. Compare the following sentences:

1. **Hostēs cīvem vulnerant.** *The enemy are wounding the citizen.*

2. **Cīvis ab hostibus vulnerātur.** *The citizen is being wounded by the enemy.*

3. **Cīvis gladiō vulnerātur.** *The citizen is being wounded by a sword.*

Notice

a. That the object **cīvem** of the active verb in sentence (1) becomes the subject of the passive verb in sentence (2).

b. Since the doer of the action cannot be the subject of the passive verb, the *personal agent*, or person doing the action of the passive verb is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ā** (**ab**). This is called the ablative of the personal agent.

A Roman Coin

c. The ablative of agent is used with a passive verb, is always a person, and is used with a preposition, while the ablative of means (**101**) is used with both active and passive verbs, is always a thing, and uses no preposition.

d. A passive verb never has an object, because that to which the action directly passes over is the subject of a passive verb.

233. Rule of Syntax. — *The ablative with the preposition* **ā** (**ab**) *is used with a passive verb to express the personal agent.*

234. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

animus, -ī, m., *spirit, feeling, mind*
corpus, -oris, n., *body*
glōria, -ae, f., *glory, renown*
homō, hominis, m., *human being, man*
māter, -tris, f., *mother*
negōtium, -ī, n., *business, difficulty*
potestās, -tātis, f., *power*
ventus, -ī, m., *wind*

ADJECTIVES

duo, duae, duo, *two*
sex (indecl.), *six*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much*

ADVERB

ita, *so, thus*

VERBS

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *remain*
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *demand, require*
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (teneō), *hold back, restrain, detain*
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *terrify, frighten*

CONJUNCTIONS

autem, *however, moreover, but, now* (postpositive)
etiam, *also, even*

PREPOSITIONS

ante (with acc.), *before*
propter (with acc.), *on account of*

235. **Niobē Poenās Dat**

Multae fābulae ā poētīs Graeciae et Rōmae dē deīs et deābus nārrābantur. Saepe, ita poētae nārrant, deī ab hominibus vidēbantur, et cum hominibus negōtium habēbant. Hominēs autem,[1] sī māgnam potestātem et dīvitiās habēbant, et māgnā superbiā sē gerēbant (*conducted themselves*), ā deīs nōn amābantur. 5

Ovidius,[2] poēta Rōmānus, fābulam dē īrā Lātōnae nārrat. Lātōna, māgna dea, erat māter Apollinis[3] et Diānae, et in multīs locīs ab hominibus adōrābātur.

Niobē autem, rēgīna Thēbārum, māgnā īrā commovēbātur quod cīvēs Thēbārum sacrificia Lātōnae parābant. "Cūr," inquit, "Lātōnae glōria tanta est? Cūr in meīs ārīs sacrificia nōn collocātis? Māgnae urbis pulchra rēgīna sum; septem fīliōs habeō et septem fīliās, māgnam superbiae causam. Duo līberī Lātōnae sunt parva pars meōrum līberōrum. Beāta sum, et beāta manēbō, quod tantum numerum līberōrum habeō."

Verba Niobēs[4] Lātōnae īram commōvērunt. Ad fīlium Apollinem et fīliam Diānam properāvit dea et poenam rēgīnae superbae postulāvit. Māgnā celeritāte Apollō et soror per caelum ad urbem Thēbās volāvērunt. Septem fīliī Niobēs tum in māgnō agrō corpora exercēbant. Duo iuvenēs equōs agitābant; sagittīs Apollinis vulnerantur et dē equīs ad terram iactantur. Duo in palaestrā erant; ūnā sagittā necantur. Reliquōs quoque deus tēlīs mox necāvit, et cūnctī fīliī Niobēs in terrā mortuī iacent.

Māgnō dolōre et īrā rēgīna commovētur. "Animus tuus," inquit, "Ō Lātōna, laetus est, quod meōs fīliōs necāvistī, sed reliquī līberī meī sunt plūrēs (*more*) quam (*than*) tuī; etiam nunc septem fīliās habeō." Sorōrēs ante corpora frātrum mortuōrum stābant; statim sagittae Apollinis sonant, et sex puellae cum frātribus in terrā iacent. Niobē māgnōpere terrētur, et ūltimam fīliam corpore et veste tegit (*shields*). "Ūnam fīliam servā!" clāmat, sed frūstrā. Ūltima quoque fīlia ante oculōs mātris necātur. Niobē propter tantum dolōrem statim in saxum vertitur (*is turned*), lacrimās tamen nōn retinet. Misera rēgīna in patriam Lydiam ventīs portātur, ubi

etiam nunc in altō monte vidētur; etiam nunc lacrimae dē monte mānant.

236. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Apollō, Apollinis, m., *Apollo*
dīvitiae, -ārum, f. plur., *riches*
īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath*
Lātōna, -ae, f., *Latona*
Lȳdia, -ae, f., *Lydia* (country of Asia Minor)
Niobē, -ēs, f., *Niobe*
palaestra, -ae, f., *wrestling place*
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*
saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock*
superbia, -ae, f. (superbus), *pride*
Thēbae, -ārum, f. plur., *Thebes* (a city of Boeotia, in Greece)
vestis, -is, f., *garment, clothing*

VERBS

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *alarm, startle*
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *exercise, train*
mānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *drip, trickle, flow*
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus, *sound, resound*

ADJECTIVES

mortuus, -a, -um, *dead*
superbus, -a, -um, *proud, haughty*
ūltimus, -a, -um, *last, farthest*

ADVERB

frūstrā, *in vain, uselessly*

237. NOTES

1. **Autem** is postpositive, *i.e.*, it never stands first in a sentence or clause, but is placed after one or more words of the sentence or clause.

2. Ovidius, usually called Ovid in English, was the great story-teller among Latin writers. The story of Niobe is one of many told in his book *Metamorphoses*, meaning *changes in form*. Such changes were features of many classical myths besides that of Niobe.

3. Apollo was the god of archery, music, and prophecy, and

the personification of the sun. He was the ideal of manly beauty. For Diana, see **150.**

4. **Niobēs** is genitive case singular. Many proper nouns which are really Greek words are declined with Greek instead of Latin endings.

238. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words differ but little from their Latin originals: *animus, glory* (**112**), *ire, superb.*

2. *Corpse,* a body, comes through French *corps* from Latin **corpus.** To *incorporate* a society is to form it into a body according to law. A *corporation* is a body of persons. To *incorporate* a statement in a letter is to embody it in the letter. *A corpuscle* is a small body. *Corpulence* is excess of body.

3. An *ultimatum* is the last proposition offered by a *negotiator.*

4. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. Silence is sometimes *tantamount* to consent.

b. Our plans were *frustrated* by stormy weather.

c. There was great *commotion* when the *irate* old gentleman gave *vent* to his *irascible* temper.

d. A *permanent* building will replace this flimsy structure.

e. The rooms are well *ventilated.*

EXERCISES

239. Review the conjugation of **amō** (**41, 125, 135**) and of **moneō** (**168**) in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the active indicative, and in the present imperative active (**126, 169**). Conjugate:

portō in the present indicative and imperative active and passive.

teneō in the imperfect indicative active and passive.

videō in the future indicative active and passive.

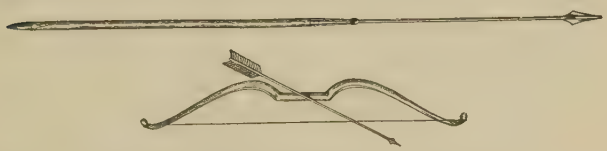
240. Write in Latin the following forms:

1. I was carrying.
2. Will you (sing.) be frightened?
3. He is being detained.
4. We were praising.
5. I shall help.
6. You (plur.) are being conquered.
7. Will they be alarmed?
8. They were holding.
9. We shall be seen.
10. You (plur.) are preparing.

241. Change the forms in **240** to the opposite voice in English and write the Latin equivalent of each.

242. Write each of the following sentences in the active voice and in the passive voice:

1. Will the enemy conquer our soldiers?
2. The leader used to call the soldiers with a trumpet.
3. Many human beings used to worship the gods.
4. By whom will the houses be built?
5. The arrows of Apollo are wounding the young men.
6. Apollo will kill the queen's sons.
7. The winds are carrying the queen into Lydia.
8. The citizens were placing sacrifices on the altars.
9. The king will seize the city.
10. The soldiers will save the bridge.



ROMAN JAVELIN

ROMAN BOW AND ARROW

THE PONT DU GARD, NEAR NÎMES, FRANCE

CHAPTER XXV

ROMAN ROADS

Rome could hardly have held together, without her roads, the vast empire she acquired. As additions were made to her territory, road building kept pace with conquest, until a huge network of roads, built with engineering skill never yet surpassed, made possible speedy communication with all parts of the empire.

PREPARATION

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: PASSIVE VOICE, TENSES ON PARTICIPIAL STEM

243. In the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the passive voice all Latin verbs of whatever conjugation have

compound forms, which are made by combining the perfect passive participle (123) with certain tenses of the auxiliary verb **sum.**

The perfect indicative passive uses the perfect passive participle with the present tense of **sum,** the pluperfect uses the perfect passive participle with the imperfect tense of **sum** (88), and the future perfect uses the perfect passive participle with the future tense of **sum** (88).

As in the active voice (146), the perfect passive states that an action occurred in past time, as in the sentence, *The letter was written,* or that a past action has now been completed, as, *The letter has been written.* Note the difference in meaning between the imperfect passive, in, *The letter was being written,* and the perfect passive, in, *The letter was written.* The imperfect indicates a past action in progress; the perfect tenses, a past occurrence. Note again that the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses all denote completed action.

PASSIVE VOICE

PERFECT INDICATIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
I was (have been) loved, etc.		*I was (have been) advised,* etc.	
SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
amātus, -a, -um	sum	**monitus, -a, -um**	sum
	es		es
	est		est
PLURAL		PLURAL	
amātī, -ae, -a	sumus	**monitī, -ae, -a**	sumus
	estis		estis
	sunt		sunt

Pluperfect Indicative

First Conjugation		Second Conjugation	
I had been loved, etc.		*I had been advised*, etc.	
Singular		Singular	
amātus, -a, -um	eram	monitus, -a, -um	eram
	erās		erās
	erat		erat
Plural		Plural	
amātī, -ae, -a	erāmus	monitī, -ae, -a	erāmus
	erātis		erātis
	erant		erant

Future Perfect Indicative

First Conjugation		Second Conjugation	
I shall have been loved, etc.		*I shall have been advised*, etc.	
Singular		Singular	
amātus, -a, -um	erō	monitus, -a, -um	erō
	eris		eris
	erit		erit
Plural		Plural	
amātī, -ae, -a	erimus	monitī, -ae, -a	erimus
	eritis		eritis
	erunt		erunt

Notice

1. That the participle is a verbal adjective, and, like an adjective, is declined to agree with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

2. That the perfect passive participle is declined as an adjective of the first and second declensions, like **bonus** (99).

Puella laudāta erat. *The girl had been praised.*
Oppida vīsa sunt. *The towns were seen.*
Oppidum vīsum est. *The town was seen.*
Puerī laudātī erunt. *The boys will have been praised.*

3. That the third person plural of the future perfect passive uses **erunt,** the future of **sum,** while the same form of the future perfect active has the ending **-erint.**

244. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

collis, -is, m., *hill*
fāma, -ae, f., *renown, fame, report, rumor*
imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander, commander-in-chief of an army*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot*
tempus, -oris, n., *time*

VERBS

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus (commoveō), *move;* **castra movēre,** *to break camp*
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, — (teneō), *extend, relate to, belong to*

PREPOSITION

prope (with acc.), *near;* (also as adverb) *nearly, almost*

ADVERBS

numquam, *never*
unde (relative adverb), *whence, from which place* (Compare with interrogative **unde** in 159.)

CONJUNCTIONS

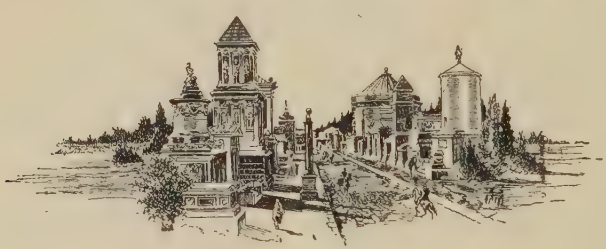
aut, *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or*
-que, *and* (enclitic attached to the second of two connected words)

245. **Dē Viīs Rōmānīs**

In Ītaliā, in prōvinciīs, in cūnctīs partibus fīnium Rōmānōrum erant viae, longae et lātae et plānae et rēctae.[1] Viārum Rōmānārum fāma māgna est. Māximam scientiam pecūniamque [2] māgnam habuērunt Rōmānī, itaque

meliōrēs (*better*) viae numquam ab hominibus parātae sunt. Imperium Rōmānum bonās viās habēbat quod imperātōrēs Rōmānī, cum māgnīs cōpiīs mīlitum, māgnā celeritāte ad fīnēs imperī saepe properābant. Semper ā Rōmānīs aut novae terrae superābantur aut hostēs in fugam dabantur aut prōvinciae, sī dēfectiōnēs incolārum erant, pācābantur.

Per collēs montēsque ab urbe Rōmā ad oppida Ītaliae et prōvinciārum viae Rōmānae pertinuērunt, et pontēs



Via Appia (a Restoration)

in flūminibus palūdibusque ē saxō aedificātī erant. Per viās Rōmānās mīlitēs ad bellum properāvērunt, et impedīmenta in castra mōta sunt, et cibus, frūmentum et vīnum et oleum, ē prōvinciīs ad urbem Rōmam equīs et iūmentīs et carrīs portātus est. Līterās quoque nūntiī per viās aut equīs aut pedibus portāvērunt. Per longum tempus viae Rōmānae bonae mānsērunt;[3] numquam dēlētae sunt; et hodiē in Britanniā et in Galliā et in Ītaliā videntur antīquae viae et māgnī pontēs[4] Rōmānōrum.

Prīma via Rōmāna erat Via Appia.[5] Ab Appiō Claudiō,[6] clārō virō Rōmānō, parāta erat, itaque cīvēs Rōmae nōmen "Appiam" ē nōmine Appī viae dederant. "Rēgīna viārum" quoque ā Rōmānīs appellābātur. Via

Appia ab urbe Rōmā pertinēbat ad oppidum Brundisium,[7] unde viātōrēs ad Graeciam nāvigābant. Prope Viam Appiam erant multa sepulcra et monumenta clārōrum Rōmānōrum et aquaeductus Claudiānus (*Claudian Aqueduct*). Hodiē viātōrēs Viam Appiam vīsitant et aquaeductum et ruīnās monumentōrum spectant.

246. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Appius Claudius, Appī Claudī, m., *Appius Claudius*

Brundisium, -ī, n., *Brundisium*

carrus, -ī, m., *wagon* (with two wheels)

dēfectiō, -ōnis, f., *rebellion, desertion*

iūmentum, -ī, n., *beast of burden*

monumentum, -ī, n., *memorial, monument*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*

scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, skill*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

sepulcrum, -ī, n., *place of burial, tomb*

viātor, -ōris, m. (via), *traveler, wayfarer*

ADJECTIVES

Appius, -a, -um, *Appian*

rēctus, -a, -um, *straight, right, proper*

VERBS

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail, sail over, navigate*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (pāx), *make peaceful, reduce to peace, subdue*

247. NOTES

1. In order to secure straight roads running with an easy grade from town to town, hills were tunneled, and valleys, rivers, and marshes spanned with bridges and viaducts. The roads were wide enough to allow two large vehicles to pass easily.

2. Roads in Italy were built with state funds, but in the provinces the conquered communities bore the expense of road building.

3. It is said that Roman roads lasted a hundred years without repairs. In many European countries they are still the foundation of modern roads.

4. The Pont du Gard, near Nîmes, in southern France, is a striking monument to Roman engineering skill. This served as an aqueduct.

5. The Appian Way was built in 312 B.C., as soon as Rome acquired dominion over Italian territory.

6. Appius Claudius, the Blind Censor, was a famous Roman statesman. You will hear of him in a later connection.

7. Locate Brundisium on the map.

248. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words are very similar to their Latin originals: *fame, move, defection, monument, navigate, science* (113), *sepulchre, pertain.*

2. To *temporize* is to yield to the opinion or circumstances of the time; a *temporary* arrangement is one merely for the time being; people who live at the same time are *contemporaries.* What is a *temporal* clause?

3. A *pedal* pertains to the feet; a *pedestal* for a statue is a base upon which its feet rest; to *impede* is to put something against the feet, and therefore to hinder; to *expedite* is to remove obstructions from the feet, and therefore to make possible greater speed. *Pedometer,* an instrument measuring the distance traveled on foot, is a word combining both Latin and Greek elements; *meter* is derived from a Greek word meaning "measure."

4. To *defame* is to take away one's good reputation.

5. What is a *rectangle?*

6. Explain the formation of **viātor, imperātor, nāvigātor.** (Review 213.)

EXERCISES

249. Conjugate the following verbs in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive: **vulnerō, teneō, exspectō, habeō.**

Write the principal parts and synopses of the following verbs in both active and passive:

videō, first person plural
dō, second person singular
moveō, third person singular
iuvō, third person plural

250. Write in Latin the following forms as given here and in the opposite voice of the same tense, person, and number:

1. She had been helped.
2. You (m. plur.) were saved.
3. I was helping.
4. It will have been prepared.
5. He has been wounded.
6. You (f. sing.) were praised.
7. We shall be moving.
8. They (n.) were placed.
9. It will have been held.
10. Did he see?

251. Write in Latin:

1. The bridge had been built by the Romans and was destroyed by the enemy.
2. Soon many citizens will have been called together by the king.
3. The courage of the soldiers was praised by the leader.
4. Many monuments have been placed near the Appian Way.
5. The messenger's story was eagerly awaited by the inhabitants of the city.

CHAPTER XXVI

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

VOCABULARY REVIEW

252. The following list contains the words given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters XX–XXV. How quickly can you give the vocabulary forms of the entire list, including a distinction of the vowel stems from other third declension nouns?

animus	fīnitimus	modus
ante	flūmen	mōns
arbor	frāter	moveō
autem	glōria	multitūdō
celeritās	homō	negōtium
cīvis	honor	nōmen
cīvitās	hostis	numquam
clāmor	imperātor	pars
collis	interim	pater
contrā	ita	pāx
cōpiae	iter	pertineō
corpus	iūs	pēs
cum	iuvenis	pōns
dolor	labor	postulō
duo	locō	potestās
dux	maneō	prope
etiam	māter	propter
fāma	mēns	quantus
fīnis	mīles	-que

regiō	soror	timeō
rēgnum	studium	timor
retineō	sub	trāns
rēx	tantus	urbs
sex	tempus	ventus
sōlus	terreō	virtūs

253. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

1. What facts must be known about a third declension noun before one can decline it? How is the base of a third declension noun obtained? Give the rules for recognizing vowel stems. In what cases do the endings of vowel stems differ from those of other third declension nouns? In what cases do the endings of neuter vowel stems differ from those of masculines and feminines? What nouns have either **-e** or **-ī** in the ablative singular? What nouns have either **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural? What nouns always have **-ī** in the ablative singular? What nouns have an accusative singular in **-im**?

2. Time yourself in declining the following:

bonus imperātor	parvum corpus
nōmen tuum	longus pōns
māter Rōmāna	hostis noster
parvum animal	mēns bona

3. What are the personal endings for the passive voice of verbs? What stems are used in forming the tenses of the passive voice? How is each stem obtained? What tenses are formed on each stem? What are the tense signs for the imperfect and future passive in the first and second conjugations? What tenses of **sum** are used as auxiliary verbs in the conjugation of the passive voice? What passive tense is made with each? What passive forms of a verb are like the present active infinitive?

4. Conjugate all the passive tenses of **locō** and of **retineō.** In how short a time can you do this orally? Write a complete synopsis, active and passive, of **postulō,** and of **terreō.** What is the shortest time in which you can do this?

254. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

1. What is the difference in meaning of the active and the passive voice? In changing a sentence from the active voice to the passive, what other changes besides that of the verb are made?

WOMAN WEARING THE STOLA

2. Name all the uses of the ablative that you have studied, and tell what each expresses. Which ones must be used with some preposition? What preposition is used in each case? What one never takes a preposition? What one is expressed sometimes with a preposition, and sometimes without? What one is always a person? always a thing? What one can be used only with a passive verb? What one may generally be translated by an adverb? In how many ways can the English preposition *with* be rendered in Latin?

3. The following prepositions have been given in preceding lessons. Give the meaning of each, and the case which follows it:

ā (ab)	cum	prō
ad	dē	prope
ante	ē (ex)	propter
circum	in	sine
contrā	per	sub

EXERCISES

255. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. Mult— hominēs ā mīlit— host— necāt— erant.
2. Ducēs Rōmān— per vi— lāt— in fīn— ūltim— imperī cum mīlit— properāvērunt.
3. Moen— parv— urb—(plur.) praesidium incolīs dabant.
4. Cīvēs Rōmānī contrā māgn— multitūdin— host— glad— pūgnābant.
5. Per long— temp— cōpiae hostium ā duc—(sing.) nostr— exspectāt— sunt.
6. Māgn— pars urbis nostr— ā Gall— māgn— labōr— superāt— est.
7. Miserī fīliī rēgīn— superb— ā de— Apollin— sagitt— necābuntur.

256. Write in Latin:

1. Soon all the cities of Gaul will have been conquered by the Roman generals.
2. With the greatest labor a large bridge had been built over (in with abl.) the wide river.
3. Ruins of beautiful monuments are seen to-day on the Appian Way by many travelers.
4. The bodies of many soldiers were being wounded by the weapons of the enemy.
5. We shall be very carefully advised by our friends.
6. You (plur.) will not be terrified by the loud (great) shouts, will you?
7. How many high mountains and deep rivers did you (sing.) see on your journey?

8. All the animals had large bodies and small heads and beautiful eyes.

9. All the baggage had been moved by the soldiers from the camp into the town.

257. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

List in your notebook according to previous directions the following:

1. Latin Words Which Have Become English with No Change of Form

   arbor, honor, clamor, labor, pastor

2. English Words Derived from Latin

   Derivatives from **pater, māter, frāter, urbs, cīvis, tempus, pēs, moveō**

3. Latin Words and Phrases That Are Used in English

prō tempore	ex tempore
rāra avis	ex pede Herculem
ad īnfīnītum	mēns sāna in corpore sānō
alma māter	

4. First Declension Abstract Nouns

   controversia, glōria, scientia

5. For each of the special noun suffixes of the third declension given in Chapter XXII a page should be set apart in your notebook. Use the headings given below, and under each one list the words here given, with English meanings, like the example.

   a. Third Declension Nouns in **-or**

   dolor (**doleō,** *grieve*), *condition or act of grieving*

   timor, clāmor

b. Third Declension Nouns in **-tor** (**-sor**)

imperātor (**imperō,** *command*), *one who commands*

pāstor, viātor

c. Third Declension Nouns in **-tūdō**

māgnitūdō (**māgnus,** *large*), *quality of being large, magnitude*

multitūdō

d. Third Declension Nouns in **-tās**

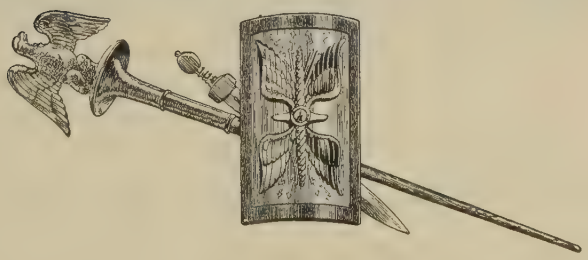
celeritās (**celer,** *swift*), *quality of being swift, celerity*

cīvitās

e. Third Declension Nouns in **-tiō** (**-siō**)

nāvigātiō (**nāvigō,** *sail*), *act of sailing, navigation*

dēfectiō



A Roman Sword, Standard, and Shield

BRŪTUS FĪLIŌS MORTIS CONDEMNAT

CHAPTER XXVII

THE KINGS OF ROME AND BRUTUS THE LIBERATOR

The accounts of Rome's seven kings are legendary, like the story of Romulus. The resolute patriotism of Lucius Junius Brutus, who is said to have been the leader in the expulsion of the tyrannical Tarquins, is an outstanding example of the stern virtue and devotion to duty admired by the early Romans.

PREPARATION

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

258. The relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod,** *who, which, that,* is declined like the interrogative adjective (137). Notice especially the meanings of the genitive case.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
	who, which, that					
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	of whom, whose, of which					
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
	to or for whom, which					
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
	whom, which, that					
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus
	from, with, by whom, which					

259. A relative pronoun introduces a subordinate clause and connects the subordinate clause with a noun or pronoun called the antecedent (**ante,** *before* + **cēdō,** *go*), usually *going before* the relative and standing in the main clause.

The English relative pronoun changes in form to show case, but not to show number. Nominative *who*, genitive *whose*, and accusative *whom* are used in both singular and plural, as the paradigm shows.

In the sentence, **Rēx virum quī urbem servāvit laudat,** *The king praises the man who saved the city*, the relative pronoun **quī** is masculine and singular to agree with its antecedent **virum.** Because **quī** is subject of **servāvit,** the verb of the subordinate clause, it is in the nominative case, while the antecedent **virum** is in the accusative case, being the direct object of **laudāvit,** the verb of the main clause. In the following sentences observe that the relative pronoun agrees with the antecedent in gender and number, but the case of the relative depends upon its use in its subordinate clause.

1. **Rōmānī, quōrum urbs servāta est, erant laetī.** *The Romans, whose city was saved, were glad.* **Quōrum** is masculine plural to agree with the antecedent **Rōmānī,** and genitive because it possesses **urbs.**

2. **Fēminae, quārum urbs servāta est, erant laetae.** *The women, whose city was saved, were glad.* **Quārum** is feminine plural to agree with **fēminae,** and genitive to express possession.

3. **Vir cuī praemium datum est urbem servāvit.** *The man to whom the reward was given saved the city.*

4. **Vir quem vīdimus urbem servāvit.** *The man whom we saw saved the city.*

5. **Praemium virō ā quō urbs servāta est datum est.** *A reward was given to the man by whom the city was saved.*

6. **Puellae quās laudāmus sunt fīdae.** *The girls whom we praise are faithful.*

In Latin, as in English, the relative pronoun does not change in form to indicate change in person, but a verb having a relative pronoun as subject has the person and number of the antecedent with which the relative agrees.

Ego, quī sum amīcus tuus, iuvābō. *I, who am your friend, will help.*

Tū, quī es amīcus, iuvābis. *You, who are a friend, will help.*

Vir, quī est amīcus, iuvābit. *The man, who is a friend, will help.*

Nōs quī sumus cīvēs cīvitātem servābimus. *We who are citizens will save the state.*

260. Rule of Syntax. — *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends upon its use in its own clause.*

Since many forms of the relative pronoun are like forms of the interrogative, you should observe that the relative always

introduces a subordinate clause, while the interrogative, as far as you have yet learned, introduces an independent clause.

Review **228**, 1, footnote.

261. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

VERBS

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *direct, manage*

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *owe, ought*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (lībertās), *set free, liberate*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (nūntius), *announce*

ADVERBS

deinde, *then, next in order*

sōlum, *only, alone*

PRONOUN

quī, quae, quod (relative), *who, which, that*

PREPOSITION

post (with acc.), *after, behind*

NOUNS

auctōritās, -tātis, f., *influence, authority*

caput, capitis, n., *head*

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul*

gēns, gentis, f., *clan, family, tribe, race*

īgnis, -is, m., *fire*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law*

lībertās, -tātis, f., *freedom, liberty*

memoria, -ae, f., *memory*

mors, mortis, f., *death*

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, habit;* plur., *manners, character*

salūs, salūtis, f., *safety*

262. **Dē Rēgibus Rōmae et Brūtō**

Rōma, ita nārrātur, septem rēgēs habuit, quōrum prīmus erat Rōmulus. Post Rōmulum rēgnāvit Numa Pompilius, quī cīvitātī lēgēs et mōrēs sacrōrum[1] dedit. Tullus Hostīlius bella amābat et Albam Longam superāvit. Ancus Mārtius cum multīs cīvitātibus fīnitimīs pūgnāvit et fīnēs novōs superāvit. Deinde rēgnum tenuit Tarquinius, quem Rōmānī Prīscum appellābant. Tarquinius

in Etrūriā ōlim habitāverat, et uxōrem Etrūscam habuit, quae potestātem māgnōpere amābat. Itaque Tarquinius uxorque ad urbem Rōmam properāvērunt, et, quod in monte Iāniculō aquila petasum (*cap*) ā capite Tarquinī raptāvit, uxor laeta clāmāvit, "Ecce sīgnum potestātis!" Mox erat Tarquinius amīcus Ancī rēgis, cūius fīliīs cōnsilium dabat. Post mortem Ancī ā populō rēx creātus est, et cīvitātem bene administrāvit.

Erat in familiā rēgis ancilla quae fīlium Servium Tullium habuit. Ōlim in capite puerī Servī īgnis vīsus est ā reliquīs ancillīs, quae statim ōmen rēgīnae nūntiāvērunt. Iterum clāmāvit rēgīna, "Ecce sīgnum potestātis!" et posteā Serviō multa beneficia dedit. Post multōs annōs Tarquinius necātus est ā fīliīs Ancī, quibus rēgnum dēbitum est. Sed populus, propter auctōritātem uxōris Tarquinī, Servium Tullium, nōn fīlium Ancī, rēgem creāvit.

Bonus rēx erat Servius, quem Rōmānī per longum tempus memoriā tenēbant.[2] Sed Lūcius Tarquinius, Prīscī fīlius, quī fīliam Servī uxōrem habēbat, rēgnum māgnōpere dēsīderābat. Cum improbā uxōre rēgem Servium necāvit et rēgnum occupāvit. Tum māgnā superbiā rēgnābat, itaque ā Rōmānīs Superbus appellābātur. Post paucōs annōs populus Rōmānus propter iniūriās rēgis et fīliōrum cūnctam gentem Tarquiniōrum ōderat (*hated*) et lībertātem māgnōpere dēsīderābat. Tandem auxiliō Lūcī Iūnī Brūtī,[3] quī patriae māgnum amōrem habēbat, Tarquiniī ex urbe Rōmā in fugam datī sunt[4] et in Etrūriam properāvērunt. "Numquam iterum," clāmāvērunt Rōmānī, "rēgēs in nostrā urbe

erunt! Cōnsulēs[5] habēbimus!" Tum Brūtus, quī Rōmam līberāverat, et Valerius[6] prīmī cōnsulēs creātī sunt.

Erant autem multī iuvenēs Rōmānī quōs bonae lēgēs cōnsulum nōn dēlectābant, et, quod cōnsulēs nōn amābant, sed rēgēs dēsīderābant, contrā cīvitātem coniūrāvērunt et auxilium Tarquiniīs dedērunt. In hōc (*this*) numerō erant fīliī Brūtī cōnsulis. Cōnsilium autem ā servō cōnsulibus nūntiātum est, et cūnctī iuvenēs poenās dedērunt. Brūtus, quod nōn sōlum pater sed etiam cōnsul erat, salūtem fīliīs nōn dedit, neque Rōmānī patrem quī fīliōs mortis[7] condemnāverat culpāvērunt,[8] sed propter patriae et lībertātis amōrem laudāvērunt.

263. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

amor, -ōris, m. (amō), *love*
Ancus Mārtius, Ancī Mārtī, m., *Ancus Martius*
aquila, -ae, f., *eagle*
Etrūria, -ae, f., *Etruria*
Lūcius Iūnius Brūtus, Lūcī Iūnī Brūtī, m., *Lucius Junius Brutus*
ōmen, -minis, n., *sign, omen*
Servius Tullius, Servī Tullī, m., *Servius Tullius*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquin*

ADJECTIVES

improbus, -a, -um, *wicked*
prīscus, -a, -um, *ancient*

VERBS

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *condemn*
coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conspire*

ADVERB

tandem, *at length, finally*

264. NOTES

1. See **206**, 2. **Sacrōrum** here is neuter plural, and means *sacred things, religious ceremonies, religion.*

2. Servius greatly improved the military organization of Rome, and built a wall around the city for its better defense. Under him Rome's first census was taken.

3. A Roman man had usually three names. The **praenōmen** (**Lūcius**) corresponded to the given name with us; the **nōmen** (**Iūnius**) showed to what clan or family (**gēns**) he belonged; the **cōgnōmen** (**Brūtus**) showed the branch of the family. Many **cōgnōmina** were originally nicknames.

Lucius Junius Brutus (Coin)

4. 509 B.C. is the date given for the end of the monarchy in Rome.

5. The consuls were the chief administrative officers of the Roman Republic for nearly five hundred years. Two were chosen by the people annually. Thus there were three safeguards against excessive power: election by the people, a short term of office, and a division of authority.

6. Collatinus was first chosen as Brutus' colleague, but the people demanded his resignation because he belonged to the race of Tarquin, and Valerius was chosen in his stead.

7. The genitive is used in Latin with the verb meaning *to condemn*, but the translation should follow the English idiom, *condemn to death*.

8. Notice that the tendency of Latin to keep the main verb until late in the sentence sometimes causes it to be placed after an entire relative clause modifying some word closely connected with that verb. In other words, a Latin subordinate clause is often inserted into the midst of a principal clause, where in English the whole principal clause must precede the subordinate one. **Culpāvērunt** must here be translated before its object **patrem,** and the relative clause after that. It is extremely important to get clearly in mind from the Latin the

words composing each clause before putting the thought into English. Your reading of the Latin must secure not only the correct grouping of *words into phrases* (186), but also correct grouping of *words and phrases into clauses*. The relation of clauses to one another is one of the most vital matters in language.

265. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *administer, memory* (112), *authority* (215), *consul, debit, debt, liberty* (215), *omen, condemn.*

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. They are seeking *legal* advice.

b. The prisoner will be *liberated.*

c. During his *administration* the public *debt* was reduced.

d. An unusual phenomenon of nature seems *ominous* to the superstitious.

e. Punishment had a *salutary* effect upon the offenders.

f. From time *immemorial* this custom has prevailed.

g. The *mortality* was great during the epidemic.

3. *Gentry, genteel,* and *gentleman* were applied originally to those born of noble or good family.

4. The Latin words **Capitōlium** (173, 4) and **caput** will enable you to distinguish the meaning and spelling of the *Capitol* and the *capital* of the United States and of your state. (The *capital* is the head city.) In architecture a *capital* is the head of a column. A *capital* letter heads a word. To *decapitate* is to behead. A *capital* crime is punishable by death, loss of the head. A *recapitulation* of a discourse gives its headings. A *chapter* was first a heading and then the matter under the heading. *Captain, chieftain, chief,* and *chef,* the head cook, are among the many derivatives from **caput.**

5. Matches are *ignited* by friction. What is the *ignition* of a motor vehicle?

6. English words from **nūntiō** are numerous. To *announce* is to tell to some one. To *renounce* is to tell back (**re**) and so to refuse, as, *The prince renounced his claim to the throne.* A

Head of the God Janus (Coin)

pronouncement is a telling forth. To *enunciate* an idea or doctrine is to tell it fully. *Pronunciation* and *enunciation* refer to the mode of speaking.

7. What is an *aquiline* nose?

EXERCISES

266. Read the following sentences, give the principal clause and the subordinate clause of each, name the antecedent of the relative pronoun, and explain the gender, number, and case of the relative. Translate the sentences.

1. Oppida Gallōrum quae Rōmānī occupāvērunt sunt pulchra.

2. Mīlitem vīdī cūius equus tēlīs hostium necātus est.

3. Discipulīs quī cum dīligentiā labōrābunt praemia dabō.

4. Tēlum quō dux vulnerātus est sagitta erat.

5. Potestātem quam rēx habēbat Tarquinius māgnōpere dēsīderābat.

6. Cīvium quī pecūniam nōn habent domicilia sunt parva.

7. Agricolās ā quibus vīneae cūrantur laudat dominus.

267. Translate the following sentences. Tell whether the word in black type in each is the relative pronoun, the interrogative pronoun, or the interrogative adjective.

1. **Quod** dōnum magister puerō dedit?
2. Dōnum **quod** magister puerō dedit est pulchrum.
3. **Quid** magister puerō dedit?
4. **Quis** pontem aedificāvit?
5. **Quī** pōns dēlētus est?
6. Pontem **quī** dēlētus est vīdī.
7. **Quibus** librōs dedī?
8. **Quibus** puerīs librōs dedī?
9. Puerōs **quibus** librōs dedī culpābō.
10. Templa **quae** Rōmānī aedificāvērunt erant māgna.
11. **Quae** urbs in Ītaliā est?

268. Write in Latin:

1. The boy did not like the statues which he saw.
2. The house in which we are living is large and beautiful.
3. The father did not save (his) sons, whose wicked plans were reported.
4. Tarquin was a king by whom power was desired.
5. The master of the villa praised the slaves whom he had summoned from the fields.
6. The city to which they were hastening was Rome.
7. The troops with which the Romans were fighting have been put to flight.

PHAETHŌN QUADRĪGĀS SŌLIS AGITAT

CHAPTER XXVIII

PHAETHON DRIVES THE CHARIOT OF THE SUN

How Phaethon drove the chariot of the sun-god is told by the Roman poet Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*. This story, like that of Niobe (Chapter XXIV), depicts the punishment inflicted by the gods upon the presumptuous arrogance of a mortal.

PREPARATION

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: THREE TERMINATIONS. ABLATIVE OF TIME

269. Many Latin adjectives, instead of being declined with endings of the first and second declensions, like **bonus, -a, -um,** or **pulcher, -chra, -chrum,** have the endings of the third declension. Some of these adjectives have different

nominative singular endings for the masculine, feminine, and neuter, and are called adjectives of three terminations; others have the nominative singular alike for the masculine and feminine, with a different form for the neuter, and are called adjectives of two terminations; still others have the same nominative singular for all genders, and are called adjectives of one termination.

Study the following paradigms of third declension adjectives of three terminations:

celer, *swift* STEM, **celeri-** BASE, **celer-**			**ācer,** *keen, sharp, eager* STEM, **ācri-** BASE, **ācr-**		
SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
celer	celeris	celere	ācer	ācris	ācre
	celeris			ācris	
	celerī			ācrī	
celerem	celerem	celere	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
	celerī			ācrī	
PLURAL			PLURAL		
celerēs	celerēs	celeria	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
	celerium			ācrium	
	celeribus			ācribus	
celerīs (-ēs)	celerīs (-ēs)	celeria	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
	celeribus			ācribus	

(Where but one form is given for a case it is the same for all genders. In reciting the paradigm it may be given thus, *e.g.*, **celeris** throughout.)

Notice

1. Third declension adjectives are vowel stems.

2. The ablative singular of the masculine and feminine of these adjectives, as well as the neuter, ends in **-ī,** unlike vowel-stem nouns, which regularly have **-ī** for the neuter only. The other case endings are like those of vowel-stem nouns.

3. The base of third declension adjectives of three terminations ends in **-r,** sometimes preceded by **e,** sometimes not. In the latter case **e** is inserted before the **r** in the nominative

Roman Lamps

singular masculine, which consequently always ends in **-er.** The feminine nominative singular ending is always **-is,** the neuter **-e.** The vocabulary form always shows whether or not the base has **e.**

270. Observe the use of the ablative in the following sentences:

1. **Prīmā lūce mīlitēs ē castrīs properāvērunt.** *At daybreak the soldiers hastened from camp.*

2. **Rōmānī multa oppida ūnō annō occupāvērunt.** *The Romans seized many towns in (within) one year.*

In sentence (1) the ablative phrase **prīmā lūce** (literally, *at first light*) gives the time *when* the action took place; in

(2) the ablative phrase **ūnō annō** gives the time *within which* the action took place. No preposition is used.

271. Rule of Syntax. — *The ablative without a preposition is used to express time when or within which.*

272. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

aestās, -tātis, f., *summer*
hiems, -is, f., *winter*
lūx, lūcis, f. (lucerna), *light;* **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak*
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature*
nox, noctis, f., *night*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*
voluntās, -tātis, f., *wish, good will*

ADJECTIVES

ācer, -cris, -cre, *keen, sharp, eager*
celer, -eris, -ere (celeritās), *swift*
tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*

ADVERB

cotīdiē, *daily, every day*

273. **Phaethōn Quadrīgās Sōlis Agitat** (I)

Phaethōn fīlius erat Phoebī[1] Apollinis, deī sōlis, ā quō aestāte et hieme equī sōlis per caelum cotīdiē agitābantur. Ōlim comes Phaethontis iuvenī, "Superbus es," inquit, "propter falsa verba. Deus nōn est pater tuus." Tum māximā īrā Phaethōn commovēbātur et prīmā lūce ad regiōnēs in quibus Sōl habitābat māximā cum celeritāte properābat. Iter pedestre longum erat, sed pedibus celeribus ambulāvit et paucīs hōrīs rēgiam pulchram Sōlis vīderat. Splendida erat rēgia Sōlis, quae ā Vulcānō,[2] deō īgnis, aedificāta erat. Phaethōn domicilium patris intrāverat et ad solium in quō Apollō sedēbat māgnō studiō ambulāverat, sed propter māgnam lūcem nōn prope solium stetit. Sōl oculīs, quibus cūnctās terrās

vidēbat, iuvenem spectat. "Quae," inquit, "causa est itineris tuī, mī fīlī?" "Dā, Ō lūx terrārum, Phoebe, mī pater, sīgnum quō hominibus cūnctīs mē fīlium tuum probābis." "Rogā," respondit Apollō, "dōnum quod dēsīderās, et dabitur." "Dā fīliō tuō quadrīgās sōlis, quās cotīdiē agitās, et per paucās hōrās equōs agitābō." "Contrā lēgēs nātūrae," inquit Apollō, "est voluntās tua. Homō es, sed deōrum est labor quem rogās. Neque tūta est voluntās tua. Māximō cum perīculō equōs ācrēs agitābis, quōrum ex ōribus īgnis et flammae exspīrantur. Poena, nōn honor tuus erit." Phaethōn tamen verbīs Apollinis nōn mōtus est, sed quadrīgās postulābat. Itaque Apollō cum Phaethonte extrēmā (*at the end of*) nocte ad locum properāvit in quō erant quadrīgae altae cum equīs ācribus. Tum Apollō radiōs sōlis in capite fīlī locāvit, et mox iuvenis māgnō cum gaudiō in quadrīgīs stābat.

274. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

gaudium, -ī, n., *joy, gladness*
hōra, -ae, f., *hour*
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face, countenance*
Phaethōn, -thontis, m., *Phaethon*
Phoebus, -ī, m., *Phoebus*
radius, -ī, m., *ray, radius*
rēgia, -ae, f. (rēx), *palace*
solium, -ī, n., *throne*
Vulcānus, -ī, m., *Vulcan*

ADJECTIVES

falsus, -a, -um, *deceitful, false*
pedester, -tris, -tre (pēs), *on foot, by land*
splendidus, -a, -um, *shining, brilliant*

VERB

exspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe forth*

ADVERB

quandō (interrog.), *when?*

275. NOTES

1. Phoebus is another name used by both Greeks and Romans for Apollo, the god of light. See **237**, 3.

2. See **150**.

276. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following English words are practically the same as their Latin originals: *lucid* (**114**, 1), *splendid* (**114**, 1), *radius*, *nature*, *false*.

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. This path is reserved for *pedestrians*.

b. An attempt was made to *falsify* the statements of the witness.

c. At the *expiration* of his term of office he was re-elected.

d. He gave an *involuntary* start of surprise.

e. The earth belongs to the *solar* system.

3. Note that **celer** is the adjective from which **celeritās** (**215**) is derived. Review the derivatives of the latter word in **207**.

4. **Nātūra** means inborn qualities (**nātus**, participle of **nāscor**, *to be born*); a person's *natural* limitations are those imposed on him by the conditions of his birth; *innate* qualities are those with which one is born, and which one does not have to acquire; one's *native* country is the country of his birth.

5. The summer *solstice* (**sōl** and **stō**) comes on June 21. What is the meaning of the term?

EXERCISES

277. Decline the following: **pedestre iter; celeris sagitta; ācer equus; ācre proelium; nūntius celer.**

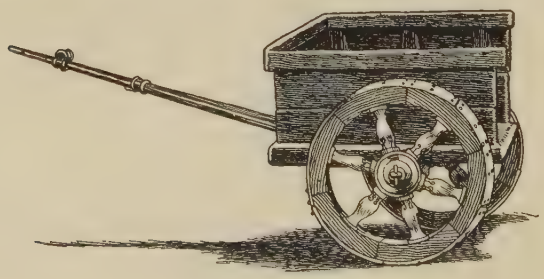
278. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quandō puerī Rōmānī ad lūdum properābant?

2. Quandō equī sōlis per caelum agitantur?
3. Quandō Phaethōn ad rēgiam sōlis properāvit?
4. Ā quō rēgia sōlis aedificāta est?
5. Cūr Phaethōn nōn prope solium stetit?
6. Quālēs equōs habēbat Phoebus?
7. Ubi Phoebus radiōs sōlis locāvit?
8. Quō modō Phaethōn equōs sōlis spectāvit?

279. Translate the following sentences and explain all the uses of the ablative contained in them:

1. Prīmā lūce incolae ex oppidīs properābunt.
2. Multīs tēlīs Gallī castra Rōmānōrum māgnō studiō oppūgnāverant.
3. Multī mīlitēs ab hostibus pīlīs vulnerātī sunt.
4. Paucīs annīs Rōmam cum amīcīs vīsitābō.
5. Māgnō labōre templa deōrum ā populō Rōmānō aedificāta sunt.
6. In cūnctā Ītaliā viae ā Rōmānīs parātae erant.
7. Imperātor hostium cum māgnīs cōpiīs mīlitum ad moenia urbis māgnā celeritāte appropinquābit.
8. Aestāte et hieme in Ītaliā habitāmus.



A Gallic Chariot

CHAPTER XXIX

PHAETHON DRIVES THE CHARIOT OF THE SUN (*Concluded*)

PREPARATION

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: TWO AND ONE TERMINATIONS. DATIVE WITH SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

280. The following paradigms give the declension of third declension adjectives of two terminations and of one termination. (Compare **269.**)

fortis, *brave* STEM, **forti-** BASE, **fort-**		**potēns,** *powerful* STEM, **potenti-** BASE, **potent-**	
SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
M. and *F.*	*N.*	*M.* and *F.*	*N.*
fortis	forte	potēns	
fortis		potentis	
fortī		potentī	
fortem	forte	potentem	potēns
fortī		potentī (**-e**)	
PLURAL		PLURAL	
fortēs	fortia	potentēs	potentia
fortium		potentium	
fortibus		potentibus	
fortīs (**-ēs**)	fortia	potentīs (**-ēs**)	potentia
fortibus		potentibus	

Notice

1. The declension of two-termination adjectives of the third declension differs from that of the three-termination adjectives only in that they have no separate nominative singular masculine. The masculine and feminine nominative singular of these adjectives ends in **-is**, the neuter in **-e**.

2. Third declension adjectives of one termination may have either **-ī** or **-e** in the ablative singular.

3. The vocabulary form of an adjective of one termination gives the genitive case, like the vocabulary form of a noun, as the base cannot be ascertained from the single nominative form.

281. Observe the use of the dative in the following sentences:

Gladius mīlitī ūtilis erat. *The sword was useful to the soldier.*

Locus idōneus castrīs est. *The place is suitable for a camp.*

Montēs mūrō similēs erant. *The mountains were like a wall.*

The datives **mīlitī, castrīs,** and **mūrō** are closely connected with the adjectives **ūtilis, idōneus,** and **similis** respectively. The English translation shows that our usage is the same, except that the preposition *to* is sometimes omitted, as in the third sentence after the adjective *like*. Adjectives with which a dative is generally used are **similis,** *like,* **dissimilis,** *unlike,* **pār,** *equal,* **cārus,** *dear,* **grātus,** *pleasing,* **amīcus,** *friendly,* **inimīcus,** *unfriendly,* **fīnitimus,** *near,* **proximus,** *next,* **idōneus,** *suitable,* **ūtilis,** *useful,* **inūtilis,** *useless,* and similar words.

282. Rule of Syntax. — *The dative is used with adjectives denoting likeness, fitness, nearness, friendliness, service, and the like, and their opposites.*

283. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

officium, -ī, n., *duty, service*

VERB

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase, make larger*

ADJECTIVES

audāx, -ācis, *bold*
brevis, -e, *short, brief*
grātus, -a, -um (grātia), *pleasing, grateful*

ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

gravis, -e, *heavy, severe, grave*
omnis, -e, *every, all*
pār, paris, *equal*
potēns, -tentis, *powerful*
proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next*
similis, -e, *similar, like*
tālis, -e, *of such a kind, such*

284. Phaethōn Quadrīgās Sōlis Agitat (II)

Brevī tempore Phaethōn, iuvenis audāx, per caelum rapidīs rotīs patris quadrīgārum volābat. Equī tamen, quibus novus aurīga grātus nōn erat, prīmā hōrā celeritātem augent. Phaethōn, quod tantā celeritāte terrētur, nōmina equōrum memoriā nōn tenet, neque habēnae miserō aurīgae ūtilēs sunt. Dē mediā viā caelī, quae quadrīgīs idōnea erat, ab Apolline monitus erat; mediam viam autem nōn tenet, sed per omnēs partēs volat. Nunc properat ad altās regiōnēs proximās domiciliīs deōrum, quae statim īgnī [1] cremantur; nunc dē caelō parī celeritāte prope fīnēs terrae volat, et altī montēs, in quibus erant nivēs omnibus temporibus, nunc nivēs nōn habent. Flūmina māgna, ārida nunc propter tantum calōrem, aquam nōn habent. Silvae in montibus cremantur. Māgnae urbēs et moenia urbium īnflammantur. Multae gentēs cum populīs īgnī dēlentur. Tum ārēbat regiō Āfricae quae hodiē reliquīs terrīs similis nōn est quod ibi herbae numquam videntur.[2]

Post longum tempus Tellūs (*Earth*) propter māgnum dolōrem auxilium ab Iove potentī rogāvit. Itaque Iuppiter, ā quō perīculum terrārum vīsum erat, grave fulmen [3] in aurīgam iactāvit, quō quadrīgae dēlētae sunt et Phaethōn necātus est. Corpus audācis iuvenis dē caelō in māgnum flūmen Ēridanum [4] iactātum est.[5] Tālī modō homō superbus, quī officium et potestātem deī dēsīderāverat, poenās propter superbiam dedit.

285. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

calor, -ōris, m., *heat*
fulmen, -minis, n., *thunderbolt*
herba, -ae, f., *vegetation, grass, herb*
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*
nix, nivis, f., *snow*

VERBS

āreō, -ēre, —, —, *be dry, dry up*
cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *burn up*
īnflammō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (flamma), *set fire to*

ADJECTIVES

āridus, -a, -um (āreō), *dry, parched*
idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable*
* **quālis, -e,** *of what kind?*
ūtilis, -e, *useful, serviceable*

286. NOTES

1. What is the case of **īgnī** (217, 2)?

2. According to the story, the Libyan desert and the dark skin of the Ethiopians were caused by the near approach of the chariot of the sun when driven by Phaethon.

3. What words besides **fulmen** have you met with a nominative in **-men**? Is the last syllable of the base the same in them all? Note that all are of the neuter gender. Others will occur later.

4. The **Ēridanus** is the Po, a river of northern Italy.

5. The *metamorphosis*, or change of form (**237**, 2), occurs in this story when the sisters of Phaethon, while lamenting his fate, are turned into poplar trees on the banks of the **Ēridanus** and their tears become amber as they drop into the stream.

HEAD OF THE GOD JUPITER (COIN)

287. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following English words have kept practically the same form as in Latin: *herb*, *Jove*, *office*, *cremate*, *inflame*, *arid* (**114**, 1), *grave* (adj.), *par*, *potent*.

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. Gasoline is highly *inflammable*.

b. The *inflammation* has subsided from the wound.

c. The Sultan is an Eastern *potentate*.

d. People of strictly *utilitarian* views lose much of the beauty of life.

e. The *disparity* in the ages of the two men is not great.

f. The *quality* of your work is excellent.

g. Certain foods contain more *calories* than others.

h. The *audacity* and *brevity* of the speech surprised everyone.

i. The *similarity* of these two houses is remarkable.

j. These numbers are *approximately* correct.

3. An *omnibus*, or *bus*, is a public conveyance, *for all*. The stem **omni-** of the adjective **omnis** is a common English prefix,

as in *omniscient*, " all-knowing " (**sciō,** *I know*). From what two Latin words is *omnipotent* made? What do *omnipresent* and *omnivorous* mean?

4. A public *office* is a position involving the discharge of public duties or services. An *official* statement is one issued

A Greek Ruin in Italy

The Sybarite Temple of Poseidon at Paestum.

by an *officer* whose duty it is to secure and impart correct information. An *officious* person is one who assumes duties or tries to perform services that do not belong to him.

EXERCISES

288. Decline: **audāx puer; breve tempus; fulmen grave; omnis locus; gladius ūtilis; rēx potēns; celeris rota.**

289. Answer the following questions in Latin:

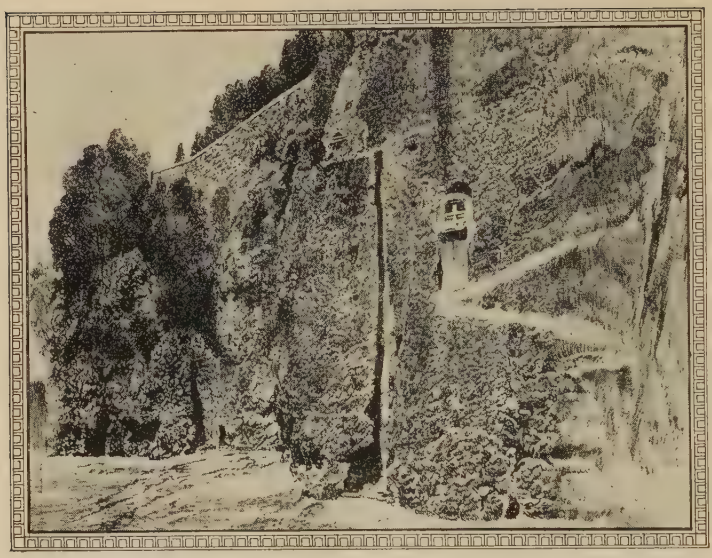
1. Quālis iuvenis erat Phaethōn?
2. Cūr Phaethōn terrēbātur?
3. Ubi quadrīgae Phaethontis volāvērunt?
4. Quōrum domicilia īgnī sōlis cremāta sunt?
5. Cūr in flūminibus aqua nōn erat?
6. In quā regiōne herbae numquam videntur?
7. Quālis deus erat Iuppiter?

8. Quid ā Iove Tellūs rogāvit?
9. Quid ā Iove in aurīgam iactātum est?
10. Quō Phaethontis corpus iactātum est?

290. Write in Latin:

1. Within a short time all the soldiers will hasten out of camp.
2. The father's gift was pleasing to the bold boy.
3. Many men are sailing to Italy in (by means of) a swift ship.
4. A Roman camp was like a small town.
5. In Italy we saw many (and) large cities and ancient monuments.
6. A large part of the soldiers had been wounded by the heavy weapons of the enemy.
7. There was a beautiful city next to a deep river.
8. The bold inhabitants of Gaul were not equal to (their) Roman enemies.

A Roman Horn



The Tarpeian Rock

CHAPTER XXX

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES: LATIN WORD FORMATION

SPECIAL ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

291. There is a large group of third declension adjectives of one termination whose nominative ends in **-ōx** or **-āx.** The suffix **-āx** makes an adjective denoting a tendency to the action indicated by some verb. The English equivalent of **-ōx** is *-ocious*, of **-āx** is *-acious*, using the base of the Latin adjective, *e.g.*, **loquāx** (**loquor,** *talk*), *having a tendency to talk*, *loquacious*, **pūgnāx** (**pūgnō,** *fight*), *having a tendency to fight*, *pugnacious*.

Form the English adjectives equivalent to the following

Latin words and define those ending in **-āx** according to the model given on the preceding page.

audāx	atrōx	vērāx
fallāx	tenāx	sagāx
ferōx	mendāx	rapāx
capāx	vīvāx	vorāx

292. With the suffixes **-ĭlis** and **-bilis** adjectives are made from verbs. In these adjectives the passive meaning of the verb is shown, *i.e.*, they tell what can be done. The corresponding English adjectives end in *-ble*, *-bile*, or *-ile*, e.g., **laudābilis** (**laudāre**, *praise*), *capable of being praised, laudable.*

Give the English adjectives equivalent to the following Latin adjectives and show how they get their meaning from Latin.

amābilis (French *aimer*)	nāvigābilis
mōbilis	habitābilis
crēdibilis	facilis
stabilis	docilis
culpābilis	ūtilis

This ending *-ble* is very common in English. It is used, with the same meaning as in the words above, to make many English adjectives which have no exact Latin equivalent but which can be traced back in each case to a Latin verb. Define the following:

visible	portable	irresistible
audible	vulnerable	reversible
tangible	tenable	invincible
indubitable	legible	negotiable

293. The suffixes **-īlis**, **-ālis**, and **-āris**, all with the meaning *relating to*, are used to make adjectives from nouns. To **-īlis** the English ending *-ile* or *-il* corresponds; to **-ālis**, English *-al*; to **-āris**, English *-ar* or *ary*.

From what nouns are the following adjectives made, what are their meanings and their English equivalents?

1.	cīvīlis	servīlis	hostīlis
	virīlis	iuvenīlis	puerīlis
2.	nāvālis	rēgālis	mortālis
	fātālis	līberālis	nātūrālis
	temporālis	pedālis	prīncipālis
	lēgālis	prōvinciālis	capitālis
3.	mīlitāris	populāris	familiāris
	ioculāris	rēgulāris	vulgāris

TRANSLATION AT SIGHT

THE PUNISHMENT OF TARPEIA

The Romans were very patriotic and exhibited always the utmost willingness to sacrifice personal interest and even life for the good of the state. The story of Tarpeia shows their bitter contempt for treason. From Tarpeia they named the Tarpeian Rock on the Capitoline Hill, from the top of which traitors and criminals were hurled down to death.

The following story contains very few new words, and no new syntax. You should be able to read it easily and quickly. Learn first the following words.

294. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

inopia, -ae, f., *lack, want, need*
mora, -ae, f., *delay*

ADVERB

tam, *so*

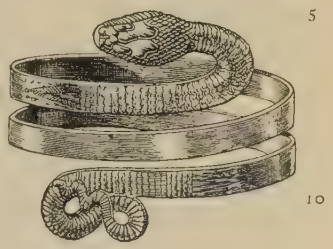
ADJECTIVES

inimīcus, -a, -um (amīcus), *unfriendly*
propinquus, -a, -um (appropinquō), *near*

295. **Dē Tarpēiae Poenā**

Sabīnī, gēns potēns et fīnitima fīnibus Rōmae, dē quā anteā [1] nārrāvimus (204), hostīlēs [2] erant cīvibus Rōmae

et contrā Rōmānōs pūgnābant. Fortūna inimīca[2] erat Rōmānīs, quī hostibus parēs nōn erant, et ā Sabīnīs superābantur. Brevī tempore Sabīnī audācēs ad urbem Rōmam appropinquāverant et in locō castrīs idōneō māgnās cōpiās mīlitum collocāverant. Māgnō in perīculō erat Rōma, quod hostēs audācēs tam propinquī urbī manēbant.



Bracelet Worn by a Soldier

Tarpēia, puella Rōmāna, quod in urbe erat inopia aquae, ē moenibus urbis prīmā lūce properāverat et aquam ē locō hostibus propinquō in urbem portābat. Misera puella ā mīlitibus hostium vīsa est et raptāta est. Tum dux Sabīnōrum Tarpēiae "Dēmōnstrā viam," inquit, "quā Capitōlium[3] intrābimus. Sī viam dēmōnstrāveris, praemium māximum habēbis." Tarpēia ōrnāmenta,[4] quae Sabīnī in bracchiīs sinistrīs habuērunt, spectābat. Et antīquīs temporibus et tempore nostrō puellīs omnium terrārum grāta semper erant et sunt ōrnāmenta. Tarpēia, quae ōrnāmenta dēsīderābat, similis erat omnibus puellīs. Cuī puellae Americānae sunt ōrnāmenta nōn grāta? Tarpēia patriae Rōmae nōn erat inimīca, sed, quod ōrnāmenta pulchra vīderat et māximō studiō dēsīderābat, officium memoriā nōn tenēbat et patriae nōn erat fīda. Post breve tempus Tarpēia ducī Sabīnōrum ita respondit: "Dā ea[5] quae in sinistrīs bracchiīs vestrīs habētis." Sine morā Tarpēia Sabīnīs

A Gem

viam dēmōnstrāvit. Tum quidem omnēs Sabīnī scūta gravia, quae quoque in bracchiīs sinistrīs habēbant, in puellam iactāvērunt, et brevī tempore mortua erat Tarpēia. Tālī modō necāta est puella quae patriae nōn erat fīda.

296. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

bracchium, -ī, n., *arm*
ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *decoration, ornament, trinket*
Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia*

ADVERB

anteā (ante), *before*

ADJECTIVES

Americānus, -a, -um, *American*
hostīlis, -e (hostis), *hostile*
sinister, -tra, -trum, *left, left-hand*

297. NOTES

1. Do not confuse **anteā** (adv.), *before*, with **ante** (prep.), *before* (**234**).

2. **Hostīlis** refers usually to enmity between states, **inimīcus** to personal enmity.

3. See **173**, 4. At this crisis in the war with the Sabines the **Capitōlium** was the only stronghold remaining to the Romans.

4. On their left arms the Sabine warriors were wearing rings and bracelets.

5. **Ea** is the neuter plural nominative and accusative (which in this sentence?) of a demonstrative pronoun meaning *that, those*, which you will soon learn. The neuter indicates the meaning *things*. Compare **206**, 2.

CHAPTER XXXI

CINCINNATUS

The wars of the early Romans with the Sabines, the Volscians, the Aequians, and the Etruscans, were the struggles of an agricultural people to repulse encroachments upon the fertile lands of Latium. Associated with these wars are numerous legends which, like that of Cincinnatus, portray noble traits of Roman character.

PREPARATION

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: **is, hic, ille.** CAUSAL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES WITH **quod**

298. A demonstrative pronoun or adjective is one which points out (**dēmōnstrō**) which person or thing is meant, as, *this, that, these, those, this* book, *that* chair, *those* flowers. In Latin there are several demonstratives, with slight differences in meaning, three of which are declined below. Learn these thoroughly enough to be able to recite them rapidly; there are few words that you will use more frequently.

is, ea, id, *this, that,* plur., *these, those*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
	ēius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
	eī			eīs (iīs)	
eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
eō	eā	eō		eīs (iīs)	

hic, haec, hoc, *this*, plur., *these*

Singular			Plural		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
hic	haec	hoc	**hī**	hae	haec
	hūius		**hōrum**	hārum	hōrum
	huīc			hīs	
hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
hōc	hāc	hōc		hīs	

ille, illa, illud, *that*, plur., *those*

Singular			Plural		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
	illīus		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
	illī			illīs	
illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
illō	illā	illō		illīs	

Notice

1. Each of these demonstratives has a genitive singular ending in **-ius,** the same for all genders, and a dative singular, the same for all genders, ending in **-ī** (with the addition of **c** in **huīc**). Compare with the declension of the relative pronoun (258).

2. The accusative and ablative singular and the entire plural declension of **is** and **ille** are like **bonus** (99), except that the neuter accusative singular is like the nominative singular according to rule.

3. The neuter nominative and accusative plural of **hic** are alike, according to rule, but do not end in **-a.**

299. **Hic, is,** and **ille,** like all Latin demonstratives, may be used either as adjectives or as pronouns. Their adjective meanings are *this, that, these, those.* As pronouns of the third person they mean *he, she, it, they, her, him, them, his,* etc., according to case, number, and gender. You will have no difficulty in distinguishing these two uses if you bear in mind that a demonstrative is an adjective only when it agrees with a noun, otherwise it is a pronoun. Study carefully the following sentences illustrating both uses of **is,** which is used as a pronoun more frequently than **hic** and **ille.**

Use as adjective:

1. **Eī puerī sunt pigrī.** *These (those) boys are lazy.*
2. **Moenia ēius urbis alta sunt.** *The walls of this (that) city are high.*
3. **Eī puerō librum dedī.** *I gave the book to this (that) boy.*
4. **Eōs mīlitēs dux laudāvit.** *The leader praised these (those) soldiers.*
5. **In eīs locīs silvae erant.** *In these (those) places there were forests.*

Use as pronoun:

1. **Rōmānī hostēs superāvērunt et eōrum ducem necāvērunt.** *The Romans conquered the enemy and killed their leader (the leader of them).* **Eōrum** is masculine plural like **hostēs,** to which it refers, but genitive to express possession. See 11.
2. **Magister puerum laudāvit et eī praemium dedit.** *The master praised the boy and gave him a reward.* **Eī** is masculine singular like **puerum,** and dative of indirect object.
3. **Puerum ēiusque sorōrem vīdī.** *I saw the boy and his sister.* **Ēius** is masculine singular like **puerum,** and genitive to show possession.

4. **Noster dux contrā hostēs pūgnāvit et ab eīs necātus est.** *Our leader fought against the enemy and was killed by them.* **Eīs** is plural masculine like **hostēs,** and ablative of personal agent.

5. **Ītalia est puerī patria, et mox eam vīsitābit.** *Italy is the boy's native country, and soon he will visit it.* **Eam** is feminine singular like **Ītalia,** and accusative of direct object.

300. **Hic** and **ille** are more emphatic than **is.** They are frequently used in the same sentence to make a contrast.

Hoc flūmen est lātum, illud est angustum. *This river is wide, that (one) is narrow.*

Pompēius et Caesar fortēs ducēs erant; ille necātus est, hic potestātem Rōmae occupāvit. *Pompey and Caesar were brave generals; the former was killed, the latter seized the power of Rome.*

Ille, when it stands after the noun it modifies, has a special meaning, *that famous, that well-known,* e.g., **Dux ille,** *that famous general.*

301. Demonstratives, like adjectives (**206,** 2), are often used without nouns to indicate persons or things by their gender, as, **haec,** *these things,* **eī,** *those men.*

302. You have already studied one kind of subordinate clause used in Latin, the relative clause (**259**), and have seen that this clause is introduced and connected with the principal clause by the relative pronoun, referring to some noun in the principal clause. A relative clause may therefore be termed an *adjective* clause, because it modifies a noun. Another kind of subordinate clause which you have frequently seen in your reading is a clause introduced by **quod,** *because.* Nothing has been said about such clauses because they are exactly like

English, and therefore are easily understood. Your attention should be called to the following facts about them:

1. A clause introduced by **quod,** *because*, is a *causal* clause.

2. **Quod** is a conjunction, which introduces the subordinate causal clause, and connects it with the principal clause.

3. A causal clause may be classed as an *adverbial* clause, because it tells why the action of the verb in the principal clause took place.

303. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

lēgātus, -ī, m., *envoy, ambassador, lieutenant*

PRONOUNS

hic, haec, hoc, *this*

ille, illa, illud, *that*

is, ea, id (adj.), *this, that* · (pron.), *he, she, it, they*

ADJECTIVE

fortis, -e, *brave*

VERBS

absum, abesse, āfuī (ab + sum), *be absent, be away*

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (teneō), *hold together, restrain, keep*

PREPOSITION

apud (with acc.), *among, in the presence of*

304. **Dē Cincinnātō**

Apud eōs hostēs quī contrā Rōmānōs eōrumque sociōs prīmīs annīs cīvitātis pūgnābant, erant Aequī fortēs. Ab hīs hostibus omnēs cōpiae cōnsulis Rōmānī superātae erant. Aequī castra Rōmānōrum circumstābant et eōs in castrīs continēbant. Quod hoc in urbe Rōmā nūntiātum erat, omnēs cīvēs hūius urbis terrēbantur et prō cōnsule ēiusque mīlitibus māgnōpere timēbant. Propter haec,[1] senātōrēs, quod cīvitās Rōmāna in tantō perīculō erat, Cincinnātum illum [2] dictātōrem [3] creāvērunt.

LĒGĀTĪ CINCINNĀTUM DICTĀTŌREM SALŪTANT

Hic vir ā populō Rōmānō māgnō in honōre semper habitus erat et cīvēs eum cōnsulem creāverant. Illō autem annō [4] ab urbe aberat, et trāns Tiberim habitābat, quod neque fāmam neque glōriam dēsīderābat. Hōc in locō parvum agrum habuit [5] in quō cum gaudiō cotīdiē labōrābat.

Eō diē (*day*, abl.) cum lēgātī senātōrum ex urbe Rōmā trāns pontem Tiberis ad domicilium Cincinnātī properāvērunt, eum in agrō vīdērunt et salūtāvērunt. Ille [6] autem, quod agrum arātrō arābat, togam [7] nōn gerēbat [8] et uxōrem vocāvit, quae ad eum togam cum celeritāte portāvit. Deinde Cincinnātus togātus (*clad in his toga*) lēgātōs senātōrum salūtāvit et illīs "Nūntium [9] vestrum," inquit, "nārrāte." Lēgātī eī voluntātem senātōrum

hōrumque mandāta nūntiāvērunt et eum dictātōrem salūtāvērunt.

Sine morā Cincinnātus cum hīs lēgātīs in urbem Rōmam properāvit et multitūdinem cīvium paucīs hōrīs convocāverat. Cum hīs cōpiīs ad hostium castra illā nocte properāvit et mediā nocte auxilium cōpiīs cōnsulis Rōmānī dedit. Hōc modō hostēs superātī sunt et ā Cincinnātō Rōmānī ē perīculō servātī sunt. Post haec Cincinnātus ex urbe trāns Tiberim properāvit et brevī tempore[10] in agrō rūrsus arābat. Posteā māgna erat fāma Cincinnātī et populus Rōmānus eum semper probābat et laudābat.

305. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Cincinnātus, -ī, m., *Cincinnatus*

dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator*

mandātum, -ī, n., *command, instruction, order*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

senātor, -ōris, m., *senator*

ADVERB

rūrsus, *again, back again*

306. NOTES

1. Observe that the gender of the neuter pronoun indicates *things*. See **301**.

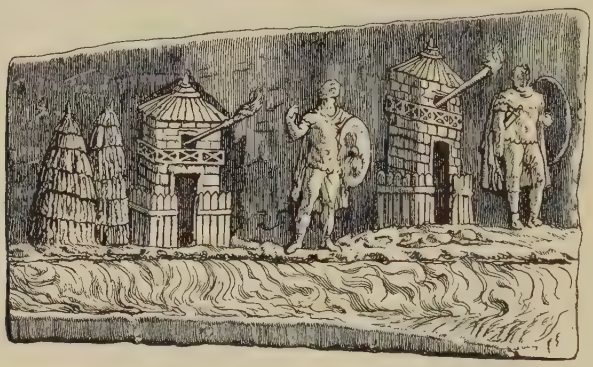
2. See **300**, end.

3. In times of grave crisis in affairs of the state the Romans sometimes conferred all governmental authority upon one man who was called a *dictator*. This absolute power, amounting almost to a restoration of the kingship, was bestowed for a period of six months.

4. The story of Cincinnatus belongs to the year 458 B.C.

5. Read again the introduction to Chapter IX.

6. **Ille** means Cincinnatus. **Ille** is often used as the subject of a new sentence to refer to a person who was mentioned in the preceding sentence but was not its subject. In



Roman Watch Towers

this way the change of subject is indicated without awkward repetition of nouns.

7. The toga with its long drapery was not a suitable garment for physical work or exercise, but it was the customary dress befitting public and civic occasions. Compare **70**, 2.

8. See **gerit, 51.**

9. Observe that **nūntius** signifies both *messenger* and *message* or *tidings*.

10. Although the term of the dictatorship was six months, Cincinnātus relinquished his authority and returned to his farm on the sixteenth day after he was appointed.

307. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words are the same, or almost the same, in English as in Latin: *senator*, *dictator*, *legate*, *mandate*.

2. Review **214** and explain the derivation and meaning of the word *fortitude*.

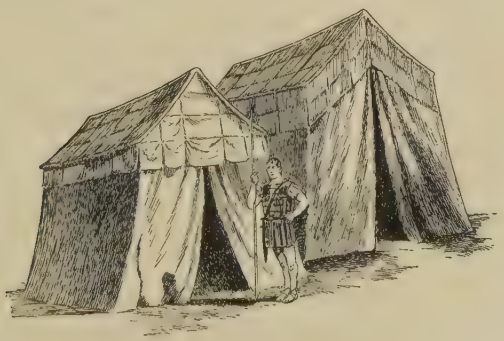
3. Why is a *continent* so called?

EXERCISES

308. Decline **hic puer; hoc proelium; illa nox; illud flūmen; haec parva urbs; ea fīlia; is altus mōns; ille fortis mīles; id breve tempus.**

309. Write in Latin:

1. The girls and their mother
2. The city and its citizens
3. We saw them (masc.).
4. Did you see them (fem.)?
5. Those things pleased the king.
6. I shall not praise him.
7. I shall not praise that soldier.
8. A reward was given them.
9. That famous king was in the camp.
10. We were hastening to that city.
11. The Romans conquered those Gauls and their leader.
12. I hastened with him to the window.
13. The mountain is high, and on it are large forests.
14. This window is open, but that (one) is shut.
15. I shall give this to that little girl.



ROMAN MILITARY TENTS

CHAPTER XXXII

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

310. VOCABULARY REVIEW

The following list includes the words given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters XXVII–XXXI. Time yourself in reciting the vocabulary forms of the entire list, including the distinction of vowel stems from other nouns of the third declension.

absum
ācer
administrō
aestās
apud
auctōritās
audāx
augeō
brevis
caput
celer
cōnsul
contineō
cotīdiē
dēbeō
deinde
fortis
gēns
grātus
gravis
hic
hiems
īgnis
ille
inimīcus
inopia
is
lēgātus
lēx
līberō
lībertās
lūx
memoria
mora
mors
mōs
nātūra
nox
nūntiō
officium
omnis
pār
post
potēns
propinquus
proximus
quī
salūs
similis
sōl
sōlum
tālis
tam
tūtus
voluntās

311. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

1. What cases of the relative pronoun have the same form for the three genders? Name by gender, number, and case all occurrences of **quae** in the declension of the relative pronoun. All occurrences of **quī**. In what gender, number, and case only does the relative have the form **quā**? What other part of speech has forms completely identical with those of the relative pronoun? What other part of speech has forms partially the same?

2. What ending is common to the relative, interrogative, and demonstrative pronouns in the genitive singular of all genders? In the dative singular? What forms of **is** and **ille** are like the corresponding forms of **bonus**? Besides the genitive and dative singular what forms only of **ille** differ from the corresponding forms of **bonus**? What forms of **hic** violate the rule for the endings of neuters?

A Roman Soldier

3. What is the nominative singular masculine ending of three-termination adjectives of the third declension? Illustrate. What is the nominative singular ending, masculine and feminine, of two-termination adjectives of the third declension? In what group of third declension adjectives does the vocabulary form give the genitive singular? Why is this necessary? To what stem group do adjectives of the third declension belong? In what case do the masculine and feminine of most third declension adjectives differ from vowel-stem masculine and feminine nouns of the third de-

clension? How does the ablative singular of one-termination adjectives differ from that of other third declension adjectives?

4. What is the shortest time in which you can decline the following:

haec clāra lūx	hic ācer equus
hic fortis dux	haec brevis aestās
id grave scūtum	illud officium grātum
ea nāvis celeris	haec parva pars
ille rēx potēns	ea gēns audāx

312. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

1. Why must every sentence containing a relative pronoun have at least two verbs? Explain by an example in English how a relative clause is an adjective clause. How can you distinguish the relative pronoun from the interrogative when you meet in a sentence a form common to both? What is the antecedent? Give the rule for the agreement of a relative pronoun with its antecedent. When a relative pronoun is the subject of a verb, in what person is the verb? What preposition becomes an enclitic with the relative and interrogative pronouns?

2. What is a demonstrative pronoun? In what respects must demonstrative pronouns agree with the nouns to which they refer? Name two parts of speech which **is** may be. Illustrate in English. How is it possible to determine whether **is, hic,** or **ille** is used as a pronoun or as an adjective?

3. Give the rule for the *dative with adjectives*. For each meaning in this list give the vocabulary form of at least one Latin adjective.

4. Give the rule of syntax for the expression of *time when and within which*. Express in Latin: *in the city, in the night*, and explain the difference in the form of the phrases.

5. What is a causal clause? By what conjunction may it be introduced? Is a causal clause adjective or adverbial? Give the reason for your answer.

EXERCISES

313. Complete the following sentences by inserting the proper endings:

1. H— liber puell— qu— erat fīda dat— est.
2. Tuba qu— sīgnum e— mīlit— datum est erat longa.
3. H— mīlit— ā qu— h— oppidum oppūgnātum est sunt Rōmānī.
4. Ill— collis sub qu— pūgnāvērunt nōn erat idōneus castr—.
5. Hostēs, contrā qu— Rōmān— bellum parābant, e— nōn erant par—.
6. E— mātrēs qu— līberī sunt bonī sunt laet—.
7. E— cīvēs quibus h— fābula nārrāta est commōt— sunt.
8. H— discipulī qu— laudāmus cum dīligenti— labōrant.

314. Write in Latin:

1. Within that summer those soldiers whom Caesar had summoned overcame the enemy and seized all their towns.
2. To whom is war pleasing? Those men to whom war is pleasing are fierce and bold.
3. That general will give the command of this city to this brave lieutenant.
4. This leader, whose soldiers have put the enemy to flight, will praise them and their valor within a few hours.
5. These brave men, to whom liberty is dear, will fight in behalf of it at daybreak.

6. This javelin, with which the Roman soldier used to fight, was useful to him.

7. Are these children, with whom you (sing.) are walking, good pupils?

8. At the foot of this mountain those soldiers, by whom these cities had been seized, fought at night with equal courage.

9. You saw the friend with whom we were staying.

10. Within a short time I shall be dwelling with her; with him; with his mother; with his father; with the girls and their mother.

315. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

In accordance with previous directions list in your notebook, the following:

1. LATIN WORDS WHICH HAVE BECOME ENGLISH WITH NO CHANGE OF FORM

   consul, *dictator*, *grave* (adj.), *omen*, *par*, *radius*, *senator*, *sinister*, *Sol*.

2. ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN

   Derivatives from **caput, īgnis, īnflammō, līberō, mors, nātūra, nūntiō, omnis.**

3. LATIN WORDS AND PHRASES USED IN ENGLISH

per capita	post mortem
īgnis fatuus	in memoriam
i.e., id est	omnia ad Deī glōriam
lēx terrae	Parēs cum paribus congregantur.
persōna nōn grāta	salūs populī suprēma lēx

4. FIRST DECLENSION ABSTRACT NOUN

   memoria

5. Third Declension Nouns in **-or**

amor, calor

6. Third Declension Nouns in **-tor**

dictātor, senātor

7. Third Declension Nouns in **-tās**

auctōritās, celeritās, gravitās, lībertās, voluntās

8. English Adjectives Derived from First and Second Declension Latin Adjectives

āridus, lūcidus, splendidus

9. Set apart in your notebook a page for each of the special adjective suffixes of the third declension given in Chapter XXX. Use the headings given below and list under each one the words given here, with English meanings, like the examples given in sections 291–293.

a. Third Declension Adjectives in **-ōx** or **-āx**

audāx

b. Third Declension Adjectives in **-ĭlis** or **-bilis**

ūtilis, similis

On this page include *visible, portable, vulnerable, tenable.*

c. Third Declension Adjectives in **-īlis, -ālis, -āris**

mortālis	rēgālis
lēgālis	cōnsulāris
līberālis	nātūrālis
sōlāris	temporālis
capitālis	salūtāris

"Servā, Cāre Coniūnx, Mātrem et Uxōrem Tuam"

CHAPTER XXXIII

CORIOLANUS

The legend of Coriolanus belongs to the period when Rome was extending her power over Latium and other near-by districts. It shows the strength of family ties among the early Romans, and the respect with which noble Roman matrons were regarded.

PREPARATION

Sum: Tenses on the Perfect Stem; Imperative. **Possum.** Complementary Infinitive

316. The principal parts of the irregular verb **sum** are **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.** Because **sum** has no perfect passive part-

iciple (123), the fourth principal part is the future active participle.

Upon the perfect stem **fu-** (123) the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are formed regularly according to the table in section 148.

PERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **fuī,** *I was, have been*	1. **fuimus,** *we were, have been*
2. **fuistī,** *you were, have been*	2. **fuistis,** *you were, have been*
3. **fuit,** *he (she, it) was, has been*	3. **fuērunt (-ēre),** *they were, have been*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **fueram,** *I had been*	1. **fuerāmus,** *we had been*
2. **fuerās,** *you had been*	2. **fuerātis,** *you had been*
3. **fuerat,** *he (she, it) had been*	3. **fuerant,** *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **fuerō,** *I shall have been*	1. **fuerimus,** *we shall have been*
2. **fueris,** *you will have been*	2. **fueritis,** *you will have been*
3. **fuerit,** *he (she, it) will have been*	3. **fuerint,** *they will have been*

IMPERATIVE MODE

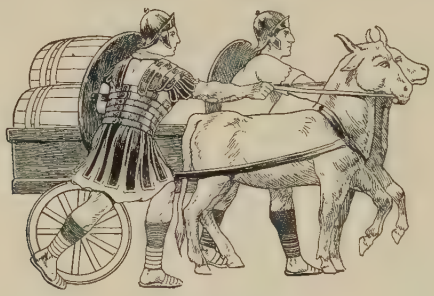
PRESENT TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
2. **es,** *be (thou)*	2. **este,** *be (ye)*

317. **Possum, posse, potuī,** —, *I am able, I can,* is a compound verb from **potis,** *able* (base **pot-**), and **sum,** *I am.* This verb is conjugated by prefixing **pot** to the forms of **sum,** with the following changes in spelling:

1. The prefix **pot** becomes **pos** before all forms of **sum** beginning with *s*.

2. **F** is dropped from the perfect stem of **sum, fu-.** The perfect stem of **possum** thus becomes **potu-** as shown in the third principal part. Upon this perfect stem the perfect,



A Roman Army Wagon

pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are formed regularly according to the table in **148.** **Possum** has no forms in the imperative mode.

Possum, posse, potuī, —, *I am able, I can*

Present Tense

Singular	Plural
1. **possum,** *I am able, can*	1. **possumus,** *we are able, can*
2. **potes,** *you are able, can*	2. **potestis,** *you are able, can*
3. **potest,** *he (she, it) is able, can*	3. **possunt,** *they are able, can*

Imperfect Tense

1. **poteram,** *I was able, could*	1. **poterāmus,** *we were able, could*
2. **poterās,** *you were able, could*	2. **poterātis,** *you were able, could*
3. **poterat,** *he (she, it) was able, could*	3. **poterant,** *they were able, could*

Possum, posse, potuī, —, *I am able, I can* (Continued)

FUTURE TENSE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **poterō,** *I shall be able*	1. **poterimus,** *we shall be able*
2. **poteris,** *you will be able*	2. **poteritis,** *you will be able*
3. **poterit,** *he (she, it) will be able*	3. **poterunt,** *they will be able*

PERFECT TENSE

1. **potuī,** *I have been able, could*	1. **potuimus,** *we have been able, could*
2. **potuistī,** *you have been able, could*	2. **potuistis,** *you have been able, could*
3. **potuit,** *he (she, it) has been able, could*	3. **potuērunt** (**-ēre**), *they have been able, could*

PLUPERFECT TENSE

1. **potueram,** *I had been able*	1. **potuerāmus,** *we had been able*
2. **potuerās,** *you had been able*	2. **potuerātis,** *you had been able*
3. **potuerat,** *he (she, it) had been able*	3. **potuerant,** *they had been able*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

1. **potuerō,** *I shall have been able*	1. **potuerimus,** *we shall have been able*
2. **potueris,** *you will have been able*	2. **potueritis,** *you will have been able*
3. **potuerit,** *he (she, it) will have been able*	3. **potuerint,** *they will have been able*

318. The *infinitive* is a form of the verb not limited (**fīnis**) by endings for person and number. The present infinitive active is the second principal part (**123**), formed in all conjugations by adding **-re** to the present stem of the verb (**124**). The present passive infinitive is formed in the first and second conjugations by adding **-rī** to the present stem, *e.g.*, **amārī,** *to be loved,* **monērī,** *to be warned.*

Some verbs require another action of the same subject to complete their meaning, and are used with a *complementary* infinitive. Among such verbs are those meaning *be able, ought, dare, begin, cease, try, wish, decide,* and *be accustomed.*

1. **Ambulāre nōn possum.** *I cannot walk. I am not able to walk.*

2. **Cīvēs patriam amāre dēbent.** *The citizens ought to love their native land.*

3. **Amīcus fīdus esse dēbet.** *A friend ought to be faithful.*

4. **Auxilium miserīs darī dēbet.** *Help ought to be given to the unfortunate.*

Notice

1. That the complementary infinitive regularly precedes the main verb, and that **nōn** stands between them and thus before the main verb which it negatives.

2. That the complementary infinitive may have an object, direct or indirect.

3. That a predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.

4. That the complementary infinitive may be active or passive.

319. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

nāvis, -is, f. (nauta), *ship*
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, plea*
prīnceps, -cipis, m. (prīmus), *chief*

ADJECTIVES

nōbilis, -e, *distinguished, high-born, noble*
nūllus, -a, -um, *not any, no, none*

ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

* **vester, -tra, -trum,** *your, yours* (12)

VERBS

possum, posse, potuī, — (sum), *be able, can*
* **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,** *be, exist*

320. Dē Coriolānō

Gāius Mārcius, vir nōbilis, ōlim Volscōs,[1] fīnitimōs Rōmānōrum, proeliō superāverat et eōrum oppidum Coriolōs occupāverat. Propter illam victōriam in māgnō honōre apud Rōmānōs erat, quī nōmen Coriolānum eī dederant. Plēbī[2] autem Coriolānus semper inimīcus fuerat, neque plēbs eum amāre poterat. Eō tempore plēbs Rōmāna nōn omnia iūra cīvium tenēbat, sed potestātem māgnōpere dēsīderābat. Hoc Coriolānō grātum nōn erat.

A Roman Shield

In urbe Rōmā ōlim inopia frūmentī erat, et nāvibus frūmentum ā Siciliā portātum erat, et cīvibus dabātur. Tum Coriolānus "Nōn dēbet," inquit, "hoc frūmentum plēbī darī." Māgnā īrā commōta est plēbs, et per ēius tribūnōs[3] Coriolānus ex urbe expulsus est (*was driven*). In oppidō Volscōrum in exsiliō manēbat, et ab eīs dux mīlitum creātus est. Tum contrā patriam Rōmam bellum parāvit, et cum multīs mīlitibus ad quīntum mīliārium[4] urbis appropinquāvit et agrōs Rōmānōs vāstābat. Rōma in māgnō perīculō erat et cūnctus populus māgnōpere terrēbātur. Lēgātōrum ōrātiōnibus quī pācem rogāvērunt nōn mōtus est Coriolānus, et eīs respondit, "Cīvis Rōmānus fuī;[5] ē patriā meā in fugam datus sum. Nunc Volscus sum, neque cum cīvitāte vestrā pācem cōnfīrmāre possum." Eā nocte in castrīs

Coriolānus comitibus "Crās," inquit, "illam urbem op-
pūgnābimus, et paucīs hōrīs ēius moenia dēlēre poterimus."

Prīmā lūce autem properāvērunt ex urbis moenibus ad castra hostium Veturia, māter Coriolānī, et uxor Volumnia cum parvīs līberīs, et multae mātrōnae Rōmānae. "Servā, cāre coniūnx," clāmāvit Volumnia multīs lacrimīs, "mātrem et uxōrem tuam. Līberōs tuōs spectā, quōrum vīta in perīculō est!" "Nōnne, mī fīlī," [6] inquit Veturia, "Rōmānus es? Num contrā patriam armīs pūgnāre dēbēs? Rōmam servā et līberā!" Tum quidem Coriolānus, quī nūllīs prīncipum Rōmānōrum verbīs mōtus erat, propter lacrimās precēsque mātrōnārum cōpiās Volscōrum revocāvit neque Rōmam oppūgnāvit. "Rōmam," mātrī inquit, "servāvistī, sed fīlium tuum servāre nōn poteris." Nam Volscī māgnā īrā commōtī sunt quod Rōmam occupāre nōn potuerant, et Coriolānum, quī eīs fīdus nōn fuerat, necāvērunt.

321. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

Coriolānus, -ī, m., *Coriolanus*
Coriolī, -ōrum, m. plur., *Corioli*
exsilium, -ī, n., *exile*
plēbs, -is, f., *common people*
prex, precis, f., *prayer, entreaty*
tribūnus, -ī, m., *tribune*
Volscus, -ī, m., *a Volscian*

ADJECTIVE

* **cārus, -a, -um,** *dear*

VERBS

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (vocō), *call back, recall*
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lay waste, ravage*

322. NOTES

1. The Volscians lived a few miles south of Rome.

2. The plebeians were the lower classes, or common people, in Rome. They were probably newcomers, and did not belong to the original families of the state, whose members were

called patricians. Only patricians had rights as citizens. Rome's early civil history is that of a continual struggle on the part of the plebeians to wrest from the patricians equal rights in the state, and on the part of the patricians of continual opposition to this attempt. Coriolanus, with a haughty patrician pride, was bitterly opposed to any concession to the plebeians.

3. One of the first concessions gained by the plebeians in their struggle for civil equality was the right to elect tribunes, whose duty it was to protect plebeians from patrician magistrates. By their power of veto they could obstruct any magistrate's action, and, as in the case of Coriolanus, they often initiated proceedings against the patricians.

4. **Quīntum mīliārium,** *the fifth milestone.* Distances from Rome were marked on Roman roads by milestones.

5. *I have been,* i.e., *I am no longer.*

6. See **81,** 4 and **87,** 2.

323. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *exile, tribune, oration* (**216**), *noble, waste.*

2. To *imprecate* is to pray that a curse or calamity may fall upon some one. To *deprecate* is to regret an existing wrong or evil and to strongly desire its removal, literally, to pray it away.

3. To *nullify* or *annul* a law is to make it of no avail.

4. On account of the legal and judicial power of the tribune, a *tribunal* came to mean the seat of a judge and a court of law, as, *The supreme court is the highest tribunal in the land.*

5. The *principal* actor plays the chief part.

6. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. His license was *revoked* as a penalty for reckless driving.

b. The valley was *devastated* by wind and by flood.

c. The entertainment suited the *plebeian* taste of the throng.

d. They will discuss a reduction of *naval* armaments.

e. Such a feat is surely *impossible* (292).

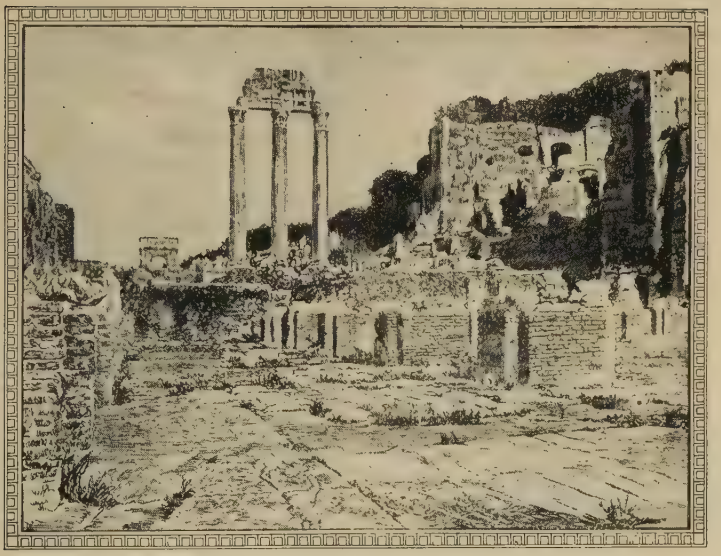
EXERCISES

324. Review the present (20), imperfect, and future (88), and conjugate the entire indicative of **sum.** Give a synopsis of **sum** in the third person plural.

Translate **poterant, potuerant, potuērunt, poterunt, potuerint.** Give a synopsis of **possum** in the first person singular.

325. Write in Latin:

1. By the help of those allies this city can be saved.
2. Equal rights ought to be given to all these citizens.
3. Within a short time the Romans will have been able to destroy this bridge.
4. In this way Horatius had been able to save Rome.
5. We all ought to be brave and good.
6. Coriolanus ought not to fight against (his) native land.
7. Ought this grain to be given to the common people?
8. Without these ships grain cannot be carried to our city.
9. In what way can we help our native land?
10. Will this mother be able to save (her) son?
11. Ought you to kill this man, citizens?
12. Can you, Romans, blame this man, who has been driven (**exterminō**) from the city by the plebeians?
13. The tribunes of the common people ought to be able to help many inhabitants of Rome.
14. Can't you bring that book to school to-morrow, Marcus?



Columnae Templī Castoris et Pollūcis in Forō Rōmānō

CHAPTER XXXIV

CASTOR AND POLLUX

Read in Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome* the poem entitled The Battle of Lake Regillus, which describes the legendary incident related at the end of this account of "The Great Twin Brethren."

PREPARATION

Third Conjugation: Active and Passive. Subordinate Clauses with dum

326. 1. The third conjugation includes all verbs whose present stem ends in **ĕ,** as shown by the present infinitive active (**123** and **124**). As in the first and second conjugations, the present stem is used for the present, imperfect, and future

tenses, both active and passive; the perfect stem (123) is used for the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active; the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive are made by combining the perfect passive participle (123) with **sum** as an auxiliary (243). All Latin verbs, of whatever conjugation, and

CASTOR AND POLLUX (COIN)

all irregular verbs as well, form the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active and passive exactly as they are formed in the first conjugation.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead*

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT TENSE	
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
1. **dūcō,** *I lead, am leading,* etc.	1. **dūcor,** *I am led, am being led*
2. **dūcis,** *you lead, are leading,* etc.	2. **dūceris (-re),** *you are led, are being led*
3. **dūcit,** *he (she, it) leads, is leading,* etc.	3. **dūcitur,** *he (she, it) is led, is being led*
PLURAL	PLURAL
1. **dūcimus,** *we lead, are leading,* etc.	1. **dūcimur,** *we are led, are being led*
2. **dūcitis,** *you lead, are leading,* etc.	2. **dūciminī,** *you are led, are being led*
3. **dūcunt,** *they lead, are leading,* etc.	3. **dūcuntur,** *they are led, are being led*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead* (Continued)

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
IMPERFECT TENSE	
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
1. dūcēbam, *I was leading*, etc.	1. dūcēbar, *I was being led*, etc.
2. dūcēbās, *you were leading*, etc.	2. dūcēbāris (-re), *you were being led*, etc.
3. dūcēbat, *he (she, it) was leading*, etc.	3. dūcēbātur, *he (she, it) was being led*, etc.
PLURAL	PLURAL
1. dūcēbāmus, *we were leading*, etc.	1. dūcēbāmur, *we were being led*, etc.
2. dūcēbātis, *you were leading*, etc.	2. dūcēbāminī, *you were being led*, etc.
3. dūcēbant, *they were leading*, etc.	3. dūcēbantur, *they were being led*, etc.
FUTURE TENSE	
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
1. dūcam, *I shall lead*	1. dūcar, *I shall be led*
2. dūcēs, *you will lead*	2. dūcēris (-re) *you will be led*
3. dūcet, *he (she, it) will lead*	3. dūcētur, *he (she, it) will be led*
PLURAL	PLURAL
1. dūcēmus, *we shall lead*	1. dūcēmur, *we shall be led*
2. dūcētis, *you will lead*	2. dūcēminī, *you will be led*
3. dūcent, *they will lead*	3. dūcentur, *they will be led*
PERFECT TENSE	
1. dūxī, *I led, have led*, etc.	1. ductus, -a, -um sum, *I was led, have been led*, etc.
PLUPERFECT TENSE	
1. dūxeram, *I had led*, etc.	1. ductus, -a, -um eram, *I had been led*, etc.
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE	
1. dūxerō, *I shall have led*, etc.	1. ductus, -a, -um erō, *I shall have been led*, etc.

The following points should be carefully noted:

a. Many vowel changes are made in the present stem. In the present tenses, **e, i,** and **u** are found. Note carefully in which persons each occurs.

b. The imperfect tenses are exactly like the corresponding tenses of the second conjugation, the stem vowel being lengthened to **ē**.

c. The future tense does not use the tense sign **bi,** which was found in the first and second conjugations, but adds the personal endings directly to the stem, whose vowel is sometimes changed to **ē,** and in the first person singular to **a.** The ending **-m** is used instead of **-ō** in the first person singular active.

d. The only difference between the second person singular passive of the present tense and the same form of the future passive is in the quantity of the **e,** which is long in the future.

2. PRESENT IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
2. **dūc,** *lead (thou)*	2. dūc**ere,** *be (thou) led*
PLURAL	PLURAL
2. dūc**ite,** *lead (ye)*	2. dūc**iminī,** *be (ye) led*

Dīc, dūc, fac, and **fer** are the present imperative active singular forms of **dīcō, dūcō, faciō,** and **ferō.** Other verbs have the regular form, the simple present stem (126), as **mitte,** imperative of **mittō.** Final **e** of the present stem is changed to **i** in the plural of the imperative active and passive. The endings of the passive imperative are like those of the first and second conjugations (231).

3. Present passive infinitives of the third conjugation are not formed like those of the first and second conjugations (318).

In the third conjugation the stem vowel of the present stem is dropped, and the ending **-ī** is added; **dūcere,** *to lead,* **dūcī,** *to be led;* **mittere,** *to send,* **mittī,** *to be sent.*

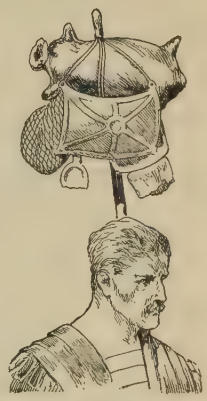
327. The conjunction **dum,** *while,* is used in Latin to introduce a subordinate clause, as in the following sentences:

Dum Rōmānī in Circō sedent, pompa arēnam intrāvit. *While the Romans were sitting in the Circus, a procession entered the arena.*

Rōmānī, dum Galliam superant, multa oppida occupāvērunt. *While the Romans were conquering Gaul, they seized many towns.*

These clauses are called *temporal* clauses (**tempus**), because they express *time.* What other kinds of subordinate clauses have you studied? Is the **dum** clause an adjective clause or an adverbial one (302)?

Note particularly that the verb in the **dum** clause is in the present tense, although it refers to past time. The English translation is the imperfect tense.



A Roman Soldier's Baggage

Note in the second sentence that the word **Rōmānī** precedes the **dum** clause. This is because it is the subject of both clauses of the sentence. A literal translation would be, *The Romans, while they were fighting in Gaul, seized many towns.* In English we put the word *Romans* in whichever clause stands first, and repeat it by the pronoun *they* in the second one. In any Latin sentence containing a subordinate clause which stands before the main clause, a subject belonging to both clauses precedes the subordinate clause.

328. Rule of Syntax. — *A temporal clause introduced by* **dum,** while, *has a verb in the present indicative.*

329. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

eques, equitis, m. (equus), *horseman, knight*; plur., *cavalry*

tempestās, -tātis, f. (tempus), *storm, tempest*

ADJECTIVE

immortālis, -e (mors), *deathless, immortal*

ADVERB

umquam, *ever, at any time* (usually with a negative)

PREPOSITION

inter (with acc.), *between, among*

CONJUNCTION

dum, *while*

VERBS

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus (stō), *put together, establish, station;* with comp. infin., *determine, decide*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *go away, depart, withdraw*

VERBS (*Continued*)

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead*

***gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus** (51), *carry, carry on, accomplish, wear;* passive, *go on, happen;* **bellum gerere,** *to wage war*

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (adōrō, ōrātiō), *pray, plead, beg*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place;* **castra pōnere,** *to pitch camp*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press, press hard, overwhelm*

relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus (reliquus), *leave, leave behind*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus (victōria), *conquer, vanquish*

330. **Dē Castore et Pollūce**

Castōr et Pollūx,[1] ita ā Graecīs nārrātur, erant frātrēs fortēs et pulchrī, quī māgnum amōrem inter sē (*for each other*) habēbant. Numquam aut Castōr aut Pollūx sine frātre vidēbātur. Omnibus bellīs Graecōrum māgnā virtūte pūgnābant et multōs hostēs vīcērunt. Ōlim, dum

Graecī nāvibus vehuntur, et māgna tempestās appropinquat, Orpheus [2] deōrum auxilium rogāvit et māgnā arte citharā personuit (*played on his lyre*), et tempestās discessit. Tum in capitibus Castoris et Pollūcis stellae vīsae sunt. "Deī," clāmāvērunt nautae, "hās stellās in capitibus frātrum posuērunt. Castōr et Pollūx salūtis nostrae causa sunt!" [3]

Post multōs annōs, dum frātrēs ācrī proeliō contrā hostēs pūgnant, Castōr necātus est, et ad īnferōs [4] missus est. Pollūx autem necārī nōn poterat; immortālis erat, quod fīlius deī erat. Itaque māximō dolōre commovēbātur, quod sine frātre relictus erat, et auxilium Iovis ōrāvit. "Meam vītam," inquit, "prō frātre meō dabō." Iuppiter autem cōnstituit ūnum diem (*day*) vītae Castorī, mortis ūnum diem Pollūcī dare. Itaque domicilium frātrum cotīdiē mūtābātur.[5] Duo frātrēs, ita aliī (*others*) nārrant, stellae [6] quae Geminī appellātae sunt in caelō ā Iove positī sunt, et deī [6] ab hominibus adōrābantur.

Rōmānī dē Castore et Pollūce hanc fābulam nārrābant. Tarquiniō Superbō, dum contrā Rōmānōs bellum gerit,[7] auxilium ā rēge Latīnōrum datum est. Multī mīlitēs Rōmānī ā cōnsulibus contrā eōs hostēs ductī sunt, et ācrī proeliō pūgnābant. Dum ab hostibus premuntur, et fortūna proelī incerta est, duo equitēs incōgnitī subitō inter Rōmānōs vīsī sunt. Albī erant eōrum equī, alba eōrum arma, et māgnā virtūte Rōmānī ab eīs contrā hostēs ductī sunt. Brevī tempore rēx Latīnōrum et ēius mīlitēs in fugam datī erant.

Dum haec [8] geruntur, in urbe Rōmā omnēs māgnōpere terrēbantur. Subitō in Forō apparuērunt duo incōgnitī

equitēs. Dum arma in fonte lavant et equīs aquam dant, victōriam cīvibus nūntiāvērunt. Tum ē Forō discessērunt, neque umquam iterum ā Rōmānīs vīsī sunt. Sed Aulus Postumius, dux Rōmānōrum, "Illī," inquit, "sunt Geminī Frātrēs. Eīs templum aedificābō, quod Rōmam hodiē servāvērunt." Et ad hoc tempus eī quī Rōmam vīsitant in Forō altās columnās[9] templī Castoris et Pollūcis vidēre possunt.

331. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

ars, artis, f., *skill, art*
Castōr, -oris, m., *Castor*
fōns, fontis, m., *spring, fountain*
Pollūx, -ūcis, m., *Pollux*
stella, -ae, f., *star*

ADJECTIVES

Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek;* m. plur. as noun, *the Greeks*
incertus, -a, -um, *doubtful, uncertain*
incōgnitus, -a, -um, *unknown*
Latīnus, -a, -um, *Latin, belonging to Latium;* m. plur. as noun, *the Latins*

VERBS

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lavātus, *wash*
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change, alter*
veho, -ere, vēxī, vectus, *carry;* passive, *be carried, ride, sail*

332. NOTES

1. Castor and Pollux were brothers of Helen, whose abduction by Paris led to the Trojan War.

2. Orpheus was a great Grecian bard, whose skill on the lyre was so great that he charmed wild beasts, and could make stones and trees follow him.

3. After this incident the brothers were regarded as the special patrons and protectors of sailors.

4. The Greeks and Romans thought of the place of departed

souls as beneath the earth, hence the phrase **ad īnferōs** meant *to those below, to the lower world.*

5. Even Jupiter could not take away Pollux's immortality, so this daily change of residence on the part of the brothers was the only possible arrangement.

6. **Stellae** and **deī** are both predicate nominatives after the passive verbs **positī sunt** and **adōrābantur.** Translate *as stars* and *as gods.*

7. See Chapter XXVII.

8. See **206,** 2.

9. The most striking ruin in the Forum to-day is the three great columns of the Temple of Castor and Pollux. Notice these in the picture.

333. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *tempest, art, font, immortal* (**293,** 2), *relinquish, lave.*

2. The prefix **in-** when used with adjectives gives a negative meaning. Show how this applies to **incōgnitus, incertus,** and **immortālis.** Can you give other instances?

3. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. We had a *tempestuous* (**114,** 5) voyage.

b. Are those flowers natural or *artificial?*

c. The prince was traveling *incognito.*

d. In fairy stories everything is *transmuted* into gold.

e. The street was blocked with heavy *vehicles.*

f. The laws of the ancient Medes were *immutable.* (**292**)

g. The *constellation* of Orion is one of the most beautiful seen in our skies.

4. What are *belligerent* nations? When is a ship a *derelict?* Show that an *orator* is a begger. What is the *Constitution* of the United States?

5. English is rich in words derived from some of the third conjugation verbs in this chapter: **vincō, pōnō, mittō, dūcō, premō.** Most of these derivatives are made with prefixes, about which you will learn more in a later chapter. Some of the words whose meaning you can easily understand are given below. Can you add others?

vincō: *invincible* (292), *victor* (213), *victory* (112), *victorious*
pōnō: *posture, pose, position, postpone, positive*
mittō: *missile* (292), *missive, intermission, transmit*
dūcō: *duct, ductile* (292), *aqueduct*
premō: *press, pressure, express, impress*

EXERCISES

334. Conjugate **gerō** in the present and future active.
Conjugate **relinquō** in the present and future passive.
Write synopses of the following verbs:

1. **cōnstituō,** third person plural, active
2. **pōnō,** third person singular, passive
3. **vincō,** second person singular, active and passive

335. Give the voice, tense, person, and number, and translate:

premuntur	relinquimus	cōnstituimus
gessērunt	relīquimus	vincimus
mittere (*all possibilities*)	relinquēmur	vīcimus
	cōnstituit	posuistis
mittēre	potuistis	vincēminī

336. By translating the following forms show the importance of knowing to which conjugation a verb belongs:

dīcent	terrēmur	pōnētis	premētur
sedent	vincēmur	timētis	vidētur

337. Write in Latin:

1. He is being left behind.
2. I shall be sent.
3. He conquered.
4. They will depart.
5. He is conquering.
6. He left.
7. You (plur.) will be placed.
8. They are sending.
9. You (sing.) will conquer.
10. It was decided.

11. While the Romans were waging war, aid was sent to them (*use a preposition*) by their allies.

12. Tarpeia was killed by the soldiers with their heavy shields, while she was bringing water into the city.

13. While these things were going on, two horsemen appeared in the Forum.

A Roman Fountain

Daedalus et Īcarus

CHAPTER XXXV

DAEDALUS AND ICARUS

The story of Daedalus and Icarus is another of the narratives from Ovid. (See *Niobe*, Chapter XXIV, and *Phaethon*, Chapters XXVIII and XXIX.) Daedalus, the pioneer aviator, was admired by the Romans for his ingenuity and daring; the fate of Icarus shows the deplorable results that may come from disregard of parental counsel.

PREPARATION

Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō

338. The third conjugation contains a group of verbs ending in **-iō** in the first person singular of the present indicative active. Their present stems end in **e**, like those of other verbs

of this conjugation, as is seen by the principal parts of **capiŏ,** *take, capture:* **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**

The conjugation of the tenses formed on the present stem is in some respects different from that of **dūcō** (326). Learn thoroughly the conjugation of **capiō** (Appendix 603) in all tenses of the indicative and the present imperative active and passive.

Note the following points:

1. In the present tense, both active and passive, the conjugation of **capiō** differs from that of **dūcō** only in the first person singular and the third person plural, where the vowel **i** appears before the usual ending.

2. In the imperfect tense, both active and passive, the vowel **i** appears in all forms before the lengthened stem vowel **e.**

3. In the future tense, both active and passive, the vowel **i** appears in all forms, before the usual ending.

4. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, active and passive, are like those of all Latin verbs (326).

339. In the vocabulary of this chapter you will find the verb **interficiō,** *kill,* made from **inter** (*from among*) and **faciō** (*make*). You will notice that the vowel **a** of **faciō** has been changed to **i.** This change usually takes place when a prefix is added to a word which has a short **a** or short **e** as the principal vowel of its base. A long vowel, however, is not affected, as in the perfect active **interfēcī.** There are many compounds of **faciō, iaciō,** and **capiō,** and in most cases the vowel **a** becomes **i** or **e** in all three principal parts where it occurs. The verbs **contineō, pertineō,** and **retineō,** which you have met, are made from **teneō** with the same vowel change as is mentioned above. Many other instances will occur later.

340. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

mare, -is, n., *sea*

opus, -eris, n., *work, task*

VERBS

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (mittō), *let go away, lose*

ascendō, -ere, -cendī, cēnsus, *climb, ascend, mount*

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, *fall*

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, capture, seize;* **cōnsilium capere,** *to form a plan*

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close, imprison*

VERBS (*Continued*)

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, *flee, escape*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl*

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + faciō), *kill*

***moneō, -ēre, -uĭ, -itus,** *warn, advise*

CONJUNCTION

atque (**ac**), *and also, and*

341. **Dē Daedalō et Īcarō**

Est in mediō marī māgna īnsula Crēta,[1] cūius rēx ōlim erat Mīnōs. Ad hanc īnsulam ex urbe Athēnīs[2] fūgerat Daedalus, homō quī māgnam scientiam habēbat. Eum, quod virum cuī inimicus erat interfēcerat, cīvēs Athēnārum condemnāverant. Ille[3] autem cum parvō fīliō Īcarō trāns mare ad Crētam fūgit, quō in locō per longum tempus manēbat, quod Mīnōs eī amīcus erat.

Dum in Crētā habitat Daedalus, omnēs incolae māgnōpere terrēbantur propter Mīnōtaurum, mōnstrum horribile quod corpus hominis et caput taurī habēbat. Ōlim Mīnōs Daedalō "Callidus," inquit, "vir es; nōnne locum parāre potes, ubi illud mōnstrum claudere poterimus?" "Labyrinthum,"[4] respondit Daedalus, "faciam, locum quī mīlle (*a thousand*) viās habēbit, ex quō Mīnōtaurus fugere nōn poterit." Atque hoc factum est.

Post paucōs annōs tamen Daedalus rēgī Crētae grātus nōn erat, et cum fīliō ab eō captus est et in vincula iactus est. Daedalus patriam māgnōpere dēsīderābat, sed fugere nōn poterat. "Quō modō," inquit, "hanc īnsulam relinquere poterō? Trāns mare ad Graeciam natāre nōn possum, neque sine nāvī nāvigārī [5] potest; ā caelō tamen Mīnōs mē (*me*) retinēre nōn potest; per caelum ālīs volābō!"

Tum vir callidus et audāx, quī tālī modō lībertātem capere cōnstituerat, māgnā dīligentiā ālās ex pinnīs et līnō et cērā fēcit. Dum labōrat, Īcarus prope stābat et opus spectābat. "Quod cōnsilium," rogāvit, "cēpistī, mī pater?" Ille [3] "Hās ālās," respondit, "corporibus nostrīs accommodābō, et eīs ex hāc terrā māgnā celeritāte fugiēmus." Et fīlium ita monuit: "Prope terrās volā; sī ad sōlem ascendēs, cēra ālārum tantō calōre solvētur et ālās āmittēs."

Brevī tempore pater fīliusque iter per caelum ālīs faciēbant, et prīmō sine perīculō volāvērunt. Hominēs quī ex terrā eōs vīdērunt māximā admīrātiōne commōtī sunt et clāmāvērunt, "Deī sunt illī, quī per caelum volāre possunt!"

Mox tamen Īcarus, quī māgnō gaudiō māgnāque audāciā ālās movēbat, cōnsilium patris memoriā nōn tenēbat, et, dum trāns mare volant, ad sōlem ascendit. Daedalus iterum eum monuit et revocāvit, sed fīlium servāre nōn potuit. Calor sōlis statim cēram solverat; ālae āmittuntur, et puer miser in mare cadit. Corpus ēius posteā nōn vīsum est, sed illī partī maris ubi cecidit nōmen Īcarium [6] datum est.

342. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

admīrātiō, -ōnis, f., *wonder*
Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur., *Athens*
Crēta, -ae, f., *Crete*
Daedalus, -ī, m., *Daedalus*
Īcarus, -ī, m., *Icarus*
līnum, -ī, n., *linen, thread*
Mīnōtaurus, -ī, m., *Minotaur*
mōnstrum, -ī, n. (dēmōnstrō), *marvel, portent, monster*
pinna, -ae, f., *feather*
taurus, -ī, m., *bull*

ADJECTIVES

callidus, -a, -um, *crafty, ingenious*
horribilis, -e, *horrible, dreadful*
Īcarius, -a, -um (Īcarus), *Icarian*

ADVERB

prīmō (prīmus), *at first*

VERBS

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fit, adapt*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, unbind, melt, dissolve*

343. NOTES

1. Locate Crete on the map, southeast of Greece.

2. Locate Athens on the map of Greece.

3. See **306**, 6.

4. The famous Labyrinth, or maze, had so many winding paths that, once inside, a person could not discover the way out. Theseus, who later slew the Minotaur in the Labyrinth, found his way back by following a thread fastened at the entrance, which he had unwound from his hand as he proceeded into the maze.

5. Does the passive translation of this infinitive sound like correct English? This impersonal use of a passive infinitive with **possum** is best rendered by either of the following translations, *It is impossible to sail*, or *One cannot sail*.

6. The death of Icarus is supposed to have occurred near the island of Icaros, in the Aegean Sea. According to one

version, Daedalus came safe to earth on the western shore of Italy, not far from the present site of Naples.

344. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words have been changed but little in the transfer from Latin to English: *monster; horrible* (292); *accommodate; ascend; solve; linen; admiration.*

2. Explain the relation of the following words to **faciō** (remember both its meanings, *make* and *do*): *fact; facile* (292); *factor; factory; manufacture; facsimile; factotum.*

3. Show how the following words are related to **capiō**: *captive; capture; captivate; capacious* (291).

4. A *mariner* is one whose life is spent on the sea; *maritime* countries border on the sea; *marines* are soldiers serving at sea, on shipboard. What is the French word for *sea?*

5. To *operate* is to perform a piece of work. Explain what is meant by *operator* (213), and *operation* (216). Have you ever seen *opus* used as the title of a musical composition, as *Opus 31?*

6. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

   a. This plant has a *pinnate* leaf.

   b. The *fugitives* from justice were *captured.*

   c. Sugar is *soluble* in water. (292)

   d. That song has a minor *cadence.*

7. How many English verbs can you give made from the participial stem of **iaciō** and a prefix? Define them.

8. What connection with **claudō** has the grammatical term *clause?*

EXERCISES

345. Conjugate **iaciō** in the present and imperfect passive; **faciō** in the present and future active; **fugiō** in the imperfect active; **āmittō** in the future passive.

Give synopses as follows:

faciō, first person plural, active

capiō, third person plural, passive

interficiō, second person singular, active and passive

346. Give the voice, tense, number, and person of each of the following verbs, and translate:

1. fēcimus
2. facimus
3. interfēceris
4. interficeris
5. interficere
6. capiēmur
7. capiminī
8. fugiunt
9. fugient
10. iēcistis
11. iaciēbāris
12. capiēris
13. caperis
14. faciēbātis
15. facite

347. Write in Latin:

1. The soldiers were hurling heavy javelins.
2. We shall not be killed by these weapons.
3. You (sing.) have lost those roses which you were carrying.
4. Do this at once. (See **326,** 2 on imperatives.)
5. The doors of all the buildings had been closed at night.
6. Were you (plur.) able to form a good plan?
7. Large rocks were hurled from the mountains during the storm by which you were frightened.
8. All those rocks fell into the road while we were hastening towards the town.
9. These travelers will not be able to ascend the high mountains, but they will make a journey to the sea.
10. The troops of the enemy were fleeing because a large number of soldiers had been killed by the Romans.

Decius Sōlus in Mediōs Hostēs Sē Iacit

CHAPTER XXXVI

THE PATRIOTIC DEVOTION OF THE DECII

Ancient peoples believed that such public calamities as pestilence, flood, famine, and the defeat of their armies were manifestations of divine wrath against the wrongdoing of some members of the community. This wrath of the gods might be appeased if some one voluntarily gave up his life (**sē dēvovēre**). The self-sacrifice of Decius and his son are instances of this exalted ideal of patriotism among the Romans.

PREPARATION

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. Possessive Adjectives

348. Personal pronouns are those which indicate whether the speaker is meant, or the person to whom one speaks, or

the person about whom one speaks. As we have seen (20 and 41), the ending of the verb indicates the person of the subject, without the use of a personal pronoun, but pronouns are necessary for other cases than the nominative, and they are used as subjects whenever emphasis or contrast is to be expressed. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are declined as follows:

FIRST PERSON

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	**ego,** *I*	**nōs,** *we*
GEN.	**meī,** *of me*	**nostrum, nostrī,** *of us*
DAT.	**mihi,** *to* (or *for*) *me*	**nōbīs,** *to* (or *for*) *us*
ACC.	**mē,** *me*	**nōs,** *us*
ABL.	**mē,** *from* (*with, by*) *me*	**nōbīs,** *from* (*with, by*) *us*

SECOND PERSON

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	**tū,** *you*	**vōs,** *you*
GEN.	**tuī,** *of you*	**vestrum, vestrī,** *of you*
DAT.	**tibi,** *to* (or *for*) *you*	**vōbīs,** *to* (or *for*) *you*
ACC.	**tē,** *you*	**vōs,** *you*
ABL.	**tē,** *from* (*with, by*) *you*	**vōbīs,** *from* (*with, by*) *you*

For the third person Latin has no real personal pronoun, but, as you learned in 299, **is** commonly, and **hic** and **ille** less frequently, are so used. The following sentences illustrate the use of personal pronouns:

1. **Librum mihi dedit.** *He gave a book to me.*
2. **Tē nōn vocāvī.** *I did not call you.*

3. **Haec urbs ā nōbīs superāta est.** *This city was conquered by us.*

4. **Ego eum laudō; is mē culpat.** *I praise him; he blames me.*

5. **Tū, quī hanc fābulam nārrās, errās.** *You, who tell this story, are mistaken.* (The personal pronoun is here expressed to give the antecedent of **quī**. For the person of **nārrās** review **259**.)

349. 1. A reflexive pronoun is one which refers back to the subject, as, *He saw himself in the mirror. I blame myself for the accident. Did you hurt yourself?* In Latin the personal pronouns **ego** and **tū** are also used reflexively, but in the third person the following reflexive pronoun is used:

	SINGULAR
GEN.	**suī,** *of himself, herself, itself*
DAT.	**sibi,** *to* (or *for*) *himself,* etc.
ACC.	**sē** (**sēsē**), *himself, herself, itself*
ABL.	**sē** (**sēsē**), *from* (*with, by*) *himself,* etc.
	PLURAL
GEN.	**suī,** *of themselves*
DAT.	**sibi,** *to* (or *for*) *themselves*
ACC.	**sē** (**sēsē**), *themselves*
ABL.	**sē** (**sēsē**), *from* (*with, by*) *themselves*

Why has the reflexive pronoun no nominative case? How can you tell whether the reflexive has a singular or a plural meaning if the forms are the same in both numbers? The

definition of reflexive given on the preceding page will help you to answer these questions.

2. The uses of the reflexive are shown in the following:

Singular	Plural
1. **mē** laudō, *I praise myself*	1. **nōs** laudāmus, *we praise ourselves*
2. **tē** laudās, *you praise yourself*	2. **vōs** laudātis, *you praise yourselves*
3. **sē** laudat, *he praises himself*	3. **sē** laudant, *they praise themselves*

Līberōs ā sē mīsit. *He sent his children away from him(self).*

Hic vir sibi, sed nōn nōbīs, grātus est. *This man is pleasing to himself, but not to us.*

3. Do not confuse **suī** with **is.** Forms of **suī** always refer to the subject of the main verb when used in the main clause, and when used in a subordinate clause, to the subject of that clause, except in special cases, which will be noted as they occur. Forms of **is** never refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand, but to some other person or thing mentioned elsewhere.

Cīvēs eum laudant, quod sē nōn laudat. *The citizens praise him, because he does not praise himself.* **Eum** is used because it refers not to the subject **cīvēs,** but to some one else; **sē** is used because it refers to the person who is the subject of **laudat,** the verb of the clause in which it stands.

350. The preposition **cum** is added as an enclitic to the ablative forms of the personal, reflexive, relative, and interrogative pronouns (**228,** footnote). Remember always to use **mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum,** and **quibuscum,** instead of putting **cum** first.

351. 1. For each personal pronoun and for the reflexive **suī** there is a corresponding possessive adjective (**11**). You have frequently used all of these except the reflexive one. The following is the complete list:

meus, -a, -um (ego), *my, mine*
noster, -tra, -trum (nōs), *our, ours*
tuus, -a, -um (tū), *your, yours* (**12**)
vester, -tra, -trum (vōs), *your, yours* (**12**)
suus, -a, -um (suī), *his own, her own,* etc.

2. The possessive adjectives must always be used instead of the genitive of the personal or reflexive pronouns. They are, however, frequently omitted when they are of the same person as the subject, unless emphasis or contrast is desired. They agree with the noun which they modify, like other adjectives (**11**).

Brūtus suōs fīliōs condemnāvit. *Brutus condemned his own sons.* (Emphasis)

Rōmānī hostēs superāvērunt. *The Romans conquered their enemies.* (**Suōs** omitted, because unemphatic)

Tuās fīliās vīdī. *I saw your daughters.* (Possessive adjective expressed, because it refers to a person other than the subject)

Fīliās vīdistī. *You saw your daughters.* (Possessive adjective omitted, because it refers to the same person as the subject)

3. There is no possessive adjective corresponding to the non-reflexive third person pronouns **is, hic,** and **ille.** The genitive case is used instead (see **299,** uses of **hic, is, ille** as pronouns). Great care must be taken to distinguish **suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its, their* (reflexive) from **ēius, eōrum, eārum,** *his, her, its, their* (demonstrative), because in English the difference is not usually apparent. Remember that **suus** agrees in case,

number, and gender with the *noun it modifies*, while the genitive forms of **is, hic,** and **ille** do not; their number and gender are the same as those of the *noun to which they refer*, and the case is determined by the possessive meaning. Demonstratives are possessive only in the genitive case; **suus** is possessive in any and all cases.

Study carefully the following sentences:

1. **Mārcus amīcum ēiusque sorōrem vīdit.** *Marcus saw his friend and his (the friend's) sister.*

2. **Mārcus amīcum suamque sorōrem vīdit.** *Marcus saw his friend and his (his own, Marcus') sister.*

3. **Dum Daedalus labōrat, Īcarus ēius opus spectābat.** *While Daedalus labored, Icarus was watching his (Daedalus') work.*

4. **Dum Daedalus labōrat, Īcarus suum opus spectābat.** *While Daedalus labored, Icarus was watching his (his own, Icarus') work.*

Which language, Latin or English, expresses the ideas of these sentences more clearly?

SUMMARY

	Personal Pron.	Reflexive Pron.	Possessive Adj.
First Person	ego	*Same*	meus, -a, -um
	nōs	*as*	noster, -tra, -trum
Second Person	tū	*personal*	tuus, -a, -um
	vōs	*pronoun*	vester, -tra, -trum
Third Person	is, ea, id		*None* (*Use* ēius, eōrum, eārum)
		suī	suus, -a, -um

352. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

Note that in **trādō** the stem vowels **a** and **e** of **dō** have become **e** and **i**. Compounds of **dō** are third conjugation verbs. Compare these vowel changes with those occurring in **interficiō, contineō**, etc. (339).

NOUNS

legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion* (a division of the army)
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice*

PRONOUNS

ego, meī, *I;* plur., **nōs,** *we*
suī (reflex.), *himself,* etc.
tū, tuī, *you;* plur., **vōs,** *you*

ADJECTIVE

suus, -a, -um (reflex.), *his, her, its, their* (*own*)

ADVERB

paene, *almost, nearly*

VERBS

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (arma), *arm, equip*

VERBS (*Continued*)

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, *desire, wish*
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *defend, protect*
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *choose, select*
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, tell*
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *teach*
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *arrange, draw up*
petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *seek, beg*
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (trāns, dō), *hand over, give up, surrender*

353. Deciī Prō Patriā Sē Dēvovent[1]

Dum Rōmānī cum Samnītibus, gente fīnitimā fīnibus Rōmae, bellum gerunt, dēfectiō erat Latīnōrum,[2] sociōrum Rōmae. Hī Latīnī lēgātōs ad urbem Rōmam mīsērunt,[3] ā quibus omnia iūra cīvium Rōmānōrum postulābantur. "Vōs, Rōmānī," inquiunt lēgātī Latīnōrum, "nōs rēgnātis et nōbīs multa mandāta datis; semper sub imperiō vestrō sunt urbēs nostrae. Nōs autem nūllam potestātem,

nūlla iūra habēmus, sed vōbīs tribūtum omnī annō damus et vōbīscum contrā hostēs vestrōs prō vōbīs vestrāque urbe saepe pūgnāmus. Nōs quoque cīvitātem vōbīscum administrāre cupimus. Nōs quoque senātōrēs[4] esse et apud senātōrēs sedēre dēbēmus. Creāte ē nōbīs ūnum cōnsulem et ē numerō cīvium nostrōrum partem senātōrum dēligite!"

Dum Latīnī haec dīcunt, senātōrēs Rōmānī māgnā īrā commovēbantur neque sē continēre poterant, sed cōnsul clāmāvit, "Numquam vōs senātōrēs eritis Rōmānī! Numquam vōs in senātōrum numerō vidēbimus!"

Deinde bellum ā Latīnīs parātum est contrā Rōmānōs, ā quibus proelium prīmum māgnō timōre exspectābātur, quod Latīnōs sibi parēs paene timēbant. In omnibus templīs urbis Rōmānī auxilium ā deīs multīs precibus petīvērunt. Ante proelium cōnsulēs Rōmānī vōcibus deōrum nocte monitī sunt hīs verbīs; "Vōs, Rōmānī, victōriam habēbitis, sī dux vester prīmus proeliō interfectus erit."

Deinde Decius, cōnsul Rōmānus, sēcum ita cōgitāvit: "Sī mē prō patriae salūte dēvōverō, īra deōrum ā nōbīs āvertētur et patria nostra servābitur." Itaque sē dēvovēre cōnstituit. Māne sē cum cūrā armāvit et suās legiōnēs īnstrūxit. Mox cum hostibus pūgnābant et Decius sine morā māgnā vōce deīs clāmāvit, "Ō Iuppiter, pater Mārs, et vōs, deī deaeque quī hanc urbem dēfenditis, prō patriā Quirītibusque[5] Rōmānīs deīs īnferīs[6] mē nunc dēvoveō." Post haec verba Decius sōlus in mediōs hostēs statim sē iēcit. Tantā virtūte hostēs prīmō propter admīrātiōnem perturbābantur. Tēla autem

multa in eum iaciēbant, quibus Decius mox interfectus est. Interim ēius mīlitēs, quī propter audāciam suī ducis māgnōpere incitātī erant, novā virtūte proelium faciēbant.[7] Itaque Latīnī in fugam datī sunt et sē suaque omnia[8] in potestātem populī Rōmānī trādidērunt.

Post multōs annōs fīlius Decī, quem quoque cīvēs Rōmae cōnsulem creāverant, legiōnēs Rōmānās in ācre

A Samnite Coin

proelium dūxerat. Dum mīlitēs Rōmānī ab hostibus premuntur, Decius, quod ā patre suō bene doctus erat et exemplum patris memoriā tenēbat, sē quoque prō patriae suae salūte mortī dēvōvit. Hōc modō iterum Rōmānī hostēs vincere potuērunt. Deciī, et pater et fīlius, quod māximum patriae amōrem habuerant, ā Rōmānīs semper posteā laudābantur.

354. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

VERBS

āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *turn aside, avert*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, consider, ponder*

dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, *vow, devote*

NOUNS

Decius, -ī, m., *Decius*

exemplum, -ī, n., *example*

Samnītēs, -ium, m. plur., *Samnites*

355. NOTES

1. Observe in the English title of this chapter the original meaning of the word *devotion*, a consecration or sacrifice to the gods by a vow.

2. The Latins were the non-Roman inhabitants of the cities of Latium, the district of Italy in which Rome was situated.

3. **Mittō** is followed by a preposition with the accusative and not by an indirect object.

4. **Senātōrēs,** a predicate nominative after **esse,** denotes the same persons as **nōs,** the subject of the main verb **dēbēmus.**

5. See **206,** 5.

6. *The gods of the lower world.* See **332,** 4.

7. **Proelium facere** means *to fight a battle.* Remember that **pūgnō** is an intransitive verb.

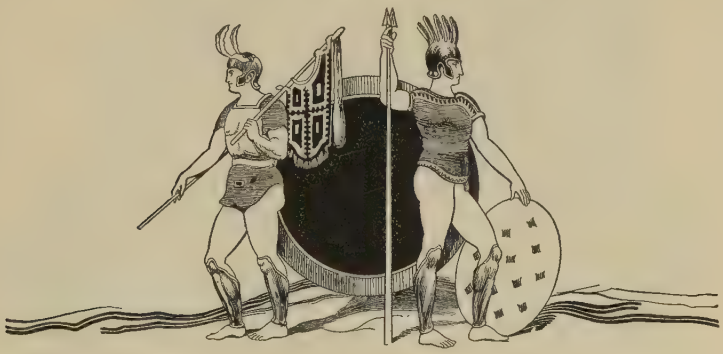
8. **Suaque omnia,** *and all their possessions,* illustrates again the use of the nounless neuter adjective meaning *things.* See **206,** 2.

356. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   - *a.* Her behavior is most *exemplary.*
   - *b.* *Egotistical* people are not usually popular.
   - *c.* Some people have a strong *aversion* to reptiles.
   - *d.* There is a *tradition* that Rome was named from Romulus.
   - *e.* The author is noted for his beautiful *diction.*
   - *f.* This man is *devoted* to his work.
   - *g.* The people were *averse* to no plan by which disaster could be *averted.*
   - *h.* After much *cogitation* a decision was reached.

2. The following words are not much changed from their Latin originals: *legion, example, arm, instruct, defend.*

3. Through the French we get the English word *voice* from **vōx.** The *vocal* cords are those which produce voice; to *vociferate* is to utter with a loud voice; *vowel* sounds are made by the vocal cords without assistance of tongue, teeth, lips, or



SAMNITE WARRIORS

palate; a *vocabulary* is a list of words which are uttered with the voice.

4. What is a *petition* (**216**)? To *compete* is to seek for something at the same time as others. What is a *competitor* (**213**)?

5. Explain the meaning of the adjective *docile* (**292**). What is meant by the *doctrines* of a religion? Does *doctor* now mean a teacher, according to its formation (**213**)?

6. What is meant by *defensive* warfare? a *defensible* action (**292**)?

EXERCISES

357. Conjugate in the present tense the Latin for *I blame myself.*

Conjugate in the imperfect tense the Latin for *I was saving myself.*

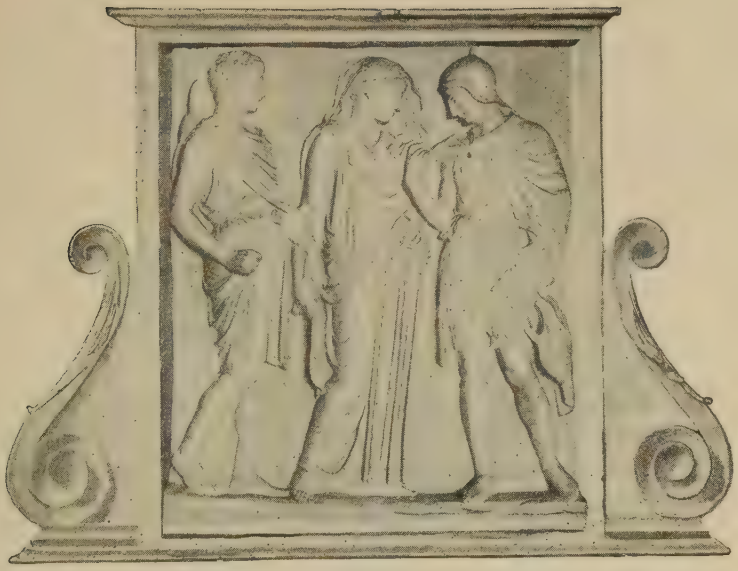
Conjugate in the future tense the Latin for *I shall see myself.*

Conjugate in the perfect tense the Latin for *I could not free myself.*

Conjugate in the pluperfect tense the Latin for *I had moved myself and all my (possessions) into the city.*

358. Write in Latin:

1. He called me and my father.
2. They saw me and my sisters.
3. The man blamed himself and his friends.
4. I do not blame him and his friends.
5. You (plur.) saw us, but we did not see you.
6. Rewards were given to the generals and their soldiers.
7. You (sing.) are carrying your books, but I shall not carry mine.
8. Did you save yourself with his aid?
9. Shall we be able to liberate ourselves?
10. Wasn't your friend walking with you (sing.) to-day?
11. Our children were walking with us in the garden.
12. Those farmers do not plow their own fields.
13. While the Romans were fighting, the enemy captured their camp.
14. The soldier wounded himself with a javelin which his friend had given him.
15. They threw themselves into the water, but we were able to save them.



Orpheus et Eurydicē

CHAPTER XXXVII

ORPHEUS AND EURYDICE

In literature, both ancient and modern, in painting, and in sculpture, the story of Orpheus and Eurydice is a frequent theme. The Roman poet Ovid (**237**, 2) tells this story, which portrays the wondrous charm and power of music as well as the sorrow visited upon disobedience to the commands of the gods.

PREPARATION

Adjectives of Special Declension. Demonstratives: **īdem** and **ipse**

359. There are ten Latin adjectives which are declined like **bonus, -a, -um** except that they have the ending **-īus** for the

genitive singular and **-ī** for the dative singular of all genders (but the genitive singular of **alter** is **alterĭus**). Compare with the declension of the demonstrative pronouns **is** and **ille** (298). Study carefully the vocabulary forms and meanings of these adjectives. If you can recite the list, you can always be sure just what adjectives have this irregularity of declension. The declension of **alius** is given as an example.

alius, alia, aliud, *other, another*
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (319), *no, not any, none*
sōlus, sōla, sōlum (221), *only, sole, alone*
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, all*
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any*
ūnus, ūna, ūnum (139), *one*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (of two)
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither* (of two)
uter, utra, utrum, *which* (of two)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each* (of two), *both*

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.		alīus		aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.		aliī			aliīs	
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō		aliīs	

360. The demonstrative pronoun **īdem,** *the same,* is made by adding the syllable **-dem** to the forms of **is** (298). Notice that **s** is dropped before **-dem** in the nominative, and that **m** becomes **n** before **-dem** in the accusative singular and the genitive plural.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem (īdem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.		ēiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.		eīdem			eīsdem (īsdem)	
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		eīsdem (īsdem)	

361. The demonstrative **ipse,** *self, very,* is declined exactly like **bonus,** except in the genitive and dative singular, where the usual pronoun endings **-īus** and **-ī** are found.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.		ipsīus		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.		ipsī			ipsīs	
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	

362. **Īdem** and **ipse,** like other demonstratives, may be used either as adjectives or as pronouns (299). You must take care not to confuse **ipse** with the reflexive pronoun **suī** (349). **Ipse** makes emphatic the word with which it agrees, but does not refer back to another noun.

Eōsdem vīdī. *I saw the same men.*

In eādem urbe habitāmus. *We live in the same city.*

Eā ipsā nocte, *on that very night*
Virum ipsum vīdī. *I saw the man himself.*
Vir ipse sē necāvit. *The man himself killed himself.*

363. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

aetās, -tātis, f., *age*

PRONOUNS

īdem, eadem, idem, *same*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self, very*

ADJECTIVES

alius, alia, aliud, *other, another*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (of two), *second;* **alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, all*
ūllus, -a, -um, *any*

CONJUNCTION

enim (postpositive), *for*

VERBS

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *run*
dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus (ascendō), *go down, descend*

VERBS (*Continued*)

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather, choose, read*
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *seek, search for, ask, inquire*
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus (raptō), *snatch, seize*
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (capiō), *take back, receive;* **sē recipere,** *betake oneself, return*
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (dō), *give back, return*
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (dūcō), *lead back*
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (teneō), *hold out against, sustain*
trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, *drag, draw*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *turn*

364. Dē Orpheō et Eurydicā

Dē Orpheō et Eurydicā haec fābula ā nūllō sine lacrimīs nārrārī potest. Hic Orpheus īdem est dē quō anteā lēgistī [1] et ūnus est ē paucīs hominibus quī ante

mortem, ita ā poētīs nārrātur, in regiōnēs īnferās,[2] domicilia mortuōrum, iter fēcērunt et rūrsus in superās terrās sē recēpērunt.

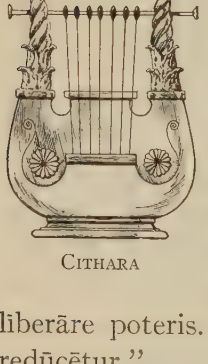
Orpheus fīlius erat Apollinis,[3] ā quō ars māgna fīliō data erat. Nūllī alīī hominī tanta ars mūsica umquam data est, neque ab ūllō aliō animī hominum eōdem modō movērī potuērunt. Animālia quoque et arborēs ipsae et saxa ipsa (ita nārrātur) ēius arte movēbantur et ad Orpheum trahēbantur.

Orpheus Eurydicēn[4] amābat et in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Fortūna autem eīs erat inimīca. Eurydicē enim, dum per herbās ambulat, serpente vulnerāta est et paucīs hōrīs ē vītā discessit. Tum quidem Orpheus māximō dolōre commovēbātur et per omnēs partēs tōtīus orbis[5] terrārum dolōrem suum canēbat et ab omnibus auxilium petēbat.

Post longum tempus, dum sōlus sedet, sēcum haec cōgitat: "Auxilium nūllīus mihi datur. Possumne ego ipse cāram uxōrem meam ūllō modō ex umbrīs līberāre?" Deinde uxōrem suam in regiōnibus, in quibus umbrae mortuōrum habitant, quaerere cōnstituit. Itaque sub terram ad rēgnum Plūtōnis, rēgis mortuōrum, māgnā celeritāte dēscendit. Mox ad portam appropinquāvit et multa perīcula, multa mōnstra horribilia apparēbant. Haec autem mōnstra omnia ab Orpheō pācāta sunt, quī māgnā arte citharā personuit (*played on his lyre*) et sine ūllā iniūriā ab eīs fūgit.

Brevī tempore multae umbrae ad eundem locum ubi Orpheus canēbat cucurrerant et multitūdō eum circumstābat. In ipsōrum mortuōrum oculīs lacrimae erant

propter Orpheī artem. Tandem Orpheus ad solium Plūtōnis ipsīus et rēgīnae Proserpinae appropinquāverat et haec verba canēbat: "Reddite mihi, Ō rēx māgne et rēgīna pulchra, cāram uxōrem meam. Post mortem nōs omnēs ad rēgnum vestrum properābimus; hūius autem fēminae aetās mortī nōn idōnea est."



CITHARA

Nūllō modō Proserpina Orpheum ēiusque artem sustinēre potuit. Plūtō ipse tantā arte superātus est et Orpheō hīs verbīs respondit: "Dūc sine ūllō timōre uxōrem tuam, sed hanc lēgem itineris tuī māximā cum dīligentiā memoriā tenē. Nūllō tempore, nūllō in locō viae oculōs tuōs ad Eurydicēn verte. Hōc sōlō modō uxōrem tuam līberāre poteris. Sī eam spectāveris, in umbrās rūrsus redūcētur."

Tum quidem Eurydicē et Orpheus māximō gaudiō ex īnferīs regiōnibus properābant. Alter ante Eurydicēn ambulat, altera celeribus pedibus post eum properat. Iam prope fīnem erant itineris, et Orpheus, quod Eurydicēn vidēre māgnōpere cupiēbat, mandātum Plūtōnis memoriā nōn tenēbat, sed ipsō tempore cum ad superās regiōnēs appropinquāverant caput vertit propter amōrem et eam spectāvit.

Statim Eurydicē in umbrās mortuōrum trācta est et ā Mercuriō,[6] duce mortuōrum, reducta est. Orpheus avidīs bracchiīs eam rapere cupiēbat, sed id facere nōn potuit. "Valē," inquit illa, "cāre mī coniūnx" et rūrsus mortua erat.

365. REFERENCE VOCABULARY

NOUNS

animal, -ālis, n., *animal*
Eurydicē, -ēs, f., *Eurydice*
mātrimōnium, -ī, n. (māter) *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *to marry*
Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury*
orbis, -is, m., *circle*
Orpheus, -ī, m., *Orpheus*
Plūtō, -ōnis, m., *Pluto*
Proserpina, -ae, f., *Proserpina*
serpēns, -pentis, m. and f., *snake*

NOUNS (*Continued*)

ADJECTIVES

īnferus, -a, -um, *below*
mūsicus, -a, -um, *of music, musical*
superus, -a, -um, *above*

VERB

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, *sing*

366. NOTES

1. What evidence of the power of Orpheus' music was mentioned in the story of Castor and Pollux, Chapter XXXIV?

2. See **332**, 4.

3. See **237**, 3.

4. **Eurydicēn** is the Greek accusative form, used because *Eurydice* is a Greek proper name. Compare **237**, 4.

5. **Orbis terrārum,** *the circle of the lands*, means *the earth* or *world.*

6. One function of Mercury was to guide the souls of the dead from the land of the living to the realm of Pluto. Besides being Jupiter's messenger (**150**), he was the inventor of the lyre, and the god of commerce and industry.

367. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words are very similar to their Latin originals: *animal, matrimony, serpent, orb, music, alter, descend, sustain, course.*

2. Explain how Latin suffixes have been used in the formation of the following adjectives: *serpentine*, *legible*, *tractable*, *reversible*.

3. Have you ever seen the abbreviation **Aet.** on gravestones? What does it mean?

4. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. The *total* expense of the entertainment was not large.

b. Castor and Pollux lived on earth and in the lower world *alternately*.

c. Congress held a *protracted* session.

d. He signified his willingness to *retract* his former statement.

e. These two governments have made a treaty of *reciprocity* in trade.

f. Galahad went on a *quest* for the Holy Grail.

g. The boats were carried away by the rapid *current* of the river.

5. Show how *chant*, *canto*, and *cantata* are connected with **canō**.

6. Two things are *identical* if they are the same; to *identify* a person, or to establish his *identity*, is to prove that he is the same person that he claims to be.

7. What sort of emotion is *rapture?*

8. Make as many English verbs as you can from **currō** (e.g., *recur*) and **vertō** (e.g., *invert*) and define them.

EXERCISES

368. Decline the following:

sōlus vir	īdem servus	illud tōtum iter
nūlla pars	aliud oppidum	hic eques ipse
altera nāvis	flūmen ipsum	eadem nox

369. Complete the following sentences by filling out the blanks:

1. In ips— oppid— qu— occupāvimus nūll— frūmentum est.
2. Duo fīliī ips— ūn— cōnsulis necātī sunt.
3. Ill— puerō —dem praemium nōn dabō.
4. Ad ips— moen— ali— oppidī appropinquāverant.
5. Nūll— pigr— puer—(sing.) praemium dabitur.
6. Vōs, quī pācem facere cup— , inimīc— nō— esse nōn dēbē—.
7. Eī nōn sunt —dem libr— qu— m— herī dēmōnstrāvit.

370. Write in Latin:

1. This man himself will be able to do it.
2. On the same night the Romans destroyed the walls of the whole town.
3. We shall wage war against the inhabitants of this city alone.
4. Those same ships will be sent from Italy to Greece.
5. The enemy themselves wish to devastate no fields of this whole region.
6. I myself, who saw the battle, can tell the same story.
7. The brave soldiers of the enemy surrendered themselves and their arms to us.
8. The inhabitants of many other towns wished to have the rights of the Romans themselves.

PŌNS RŌMĀNUS

CHAPTER XXXVIII

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

371. VOCABULARY REVIEW

The following words are those given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters XXXIII–XXXVII. Be sure that you can give correctly and rapidly the vocabulary forms of them all.

aetās	cadō	dēligō
alius	capiō (cōnsilium)	dēscendō
alter	claudō	dīcō
āmittō	cōnstituō	discēdō
armō	cupiō	doceō
ascendō	currō	dūcō
atque (ac)	dēfendō	dum

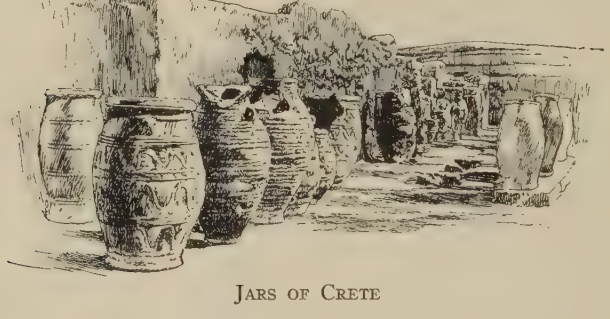
ego
enim
eques
faciō (proelium)
fugiō
gerō (bellum)
iaciō
īdem
immortālis
īnstruō
inter
interficiō
ipse
legiō
legō
mare
mittō
nāvis
nōbilis
nōs
nūllus
opus
ōrātiō
ōrō
paene
petō
pōnō
possum
premō
prīnceps
quaerō
rapiō
recipiō (sē)
reddō
redūcō
relinquō
suī
sum
sustineō
suus
tempestās
tōtus
trādō
trahō
tū
ūllus
umquam
vertō
vester
vincō
vōs
vōx

372. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

1. What two facts about **possum** will best help you to avoid mistakes in its conjugation? Distinguish between **poteris** and **potueris; potuerāmus** and **poterāmus; potuērunt** and **poterunt; potuērunt, potuerant,** and **potuerint.** Why has **possum** no passive? Time yourself in giving the full conjugation of **sum,** indicative and imperative. What rule can be given for the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of all Latin verbs?

2. How are third conjugation verbs distinguished from those of other conjugations in the vocabulary forms? What tense in the third conjugation is formed in a different way from that used in the first and second? What tense is exactly

like the same tense in one of the other conjugations you have learned? In what forms of the present tense do **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation differ from others of the same conjugation? What is the difference between the two in the imperfect tense? In the future tense? Conjugate the present active



Jars of Crete

and present passive of **vincō** and of **iaciō;** the imperfect active of **fugiō** and of **mittō;** the future active of **faciō;** the future passive of **pōnō;** the present imperative active and passive of **vincō.** What four verbs have a shortened form of the singular imperative in the present active?

Give a synopsis of **interficiō** in the active and passive, second person plural. How long a time did you need for it?

3. How is the present infinitive passive formed in the first and second conjugations? In the third? Give the present infinitives, active and passive, of the verbs meaning to *praise*, to *see*, to *send*, to *throw*, to *frighten*, to *carry on*.

4. Give the four personal pronouns and their corresponding possessives, the reflexive and its corresponding possessive. Decline each of the pronouns.

5. Recite the list of special adjectives which have an irregularity of declension. In what cases does this irregularity occur? What endings are used? Give in Latin the genitive

and dative singular of each of the following: *the whole city; one boy; no woman; the only place.*

6. Decline in as short a time as possible each of the following demonstratives: **is, īdem, ipse.**

373. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

1. Why is a complementary infinitive so called? What verbs have you met so far that are used with a complementary infinitive? Where is the negative **nōn** placed if it is used with a verb and a complementary infinitive?

2. How many kinds of subordinate clauses have you now studied? Why is a **dum** clause called a *temporal* clause? What is the rule for the verb in a **dum** clause?

3. To what does a reflexive pronoun refer? What pronouns are used as reflexives in Latin? Conjugate the entire present tense of *I betake* (**recipiō**) *myself*, expressing both the reflexive object and the personal pronouns as subjects. When are pronoun subjects generally expressed in Latin? What is the difference in the meaning and use of **ipse** and **suī?** Of the possessive adjective **suus** and the genitives **ēius, eōrum,** and **eārum?** To what ablative pronoun forms is **cum** added as an enclitic?

EXERCISES

374. Insert the proper Latin forms for the italicized words in the following:

1. I saw Marcus *himself* and *his* brother on the street. *He* had injured *his* foot, and at *the same* time had cut *himself* with *his* knife (m.), and so *his* brother was carrying *him.* I blame *myself* because I did not help *them.*

2. While *your* sister was sitting with *us* in *that very* place, a friend *who* had met *her* in *another* city related *to us his* travels (**itinera**) in Africa. He talked about the savage tribes and

their customs, and about *his own* escape (**fuga**) from many dangers with *no* assistance. *His* story was pleasing to the *whole* party, and we gave many thanks *to him* for *his* kindness.

375. Write in Latin:

1. The citizens praised their brave general, because his soldiers had conquered the enemy.

2. The field (town, city, camp) into which they hastened was large.

3. We saw the very man to whose sons that same general had given a great reward.

4. While they were doing these things, their whole city was captured by our soldiers.

5. Daedalus decided to make carefully wings by means of which he could fly.

6. I have adopted this plan; what plan will you adopt?

7. How shall we be able to flee from those who are unfriendly to us?

8. While the Romans were waging war in Gaul, the wretched inhabitants could not save themselves and their (possessions).

9. While I was walking through that same part of your city, I saw a large temple, which was near a river.

10. The citizens of this city alone have sent no envoys to us.

376. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

List in your notebook according to previous directions the following:

1. LATIN WORDS WHICH HAVE BECOME ENGLISH WITH NO CHANGE OF FORM

animal

2. English Words Derived from Latin

Derivatives from **mittō, vincō, capiō, premō, vertō, vōx, mare**

3. Latin Words and Phrases Used in English

pāx vōbīscum	inter nōs
vōx populī vōx Deī	ipse dīxit
aliās	per sē
alter ego	nūllī secundus

4. Third Declension Nouns in **-tor** (257, 5 *b*)

victor

5. Third Declension Nouns in **-tiō** (257, 5 *e*)

ōrātiō, admīrātiō, petītiō

6. Third Declension Adjectives in **-ilis** and **-bilis** (292)

List the following English adjectives, show their derivation from Latin verbs, and give the corresponding Latin adjectives if you have met them: *horrible, impossible, invincible, immutable, missile, facile, soluble, ductile, docile.*

7. Third Declension Adjectives in **-īlis, -ālis, -āris** (293)

immortālis

CHAPTER XXXIX

ATALANTA

In this tale from the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid the change of form (237, 2) occurs when the oracle given to Atalanta is fulfilled. After their marriage the happy Atalanta and Hippomenes neglected to pay the honors due to Venus, who in her displeasure caused them to offend the goddess Cybele. Cybele changed Atalanta into the form of a lioness and Hippomenes into a lion. She then yoked them to her chariot where they may still be seen in all pictures of the turret-crowned goddess Cybele.

PREPARATION

Fourth Conjugation, Active and Passive; Ablative of Separation

377. The fourth conjugation includes all verbs whose present stem ends in **-ī**, as shown by the present infinitive active (**123** and **124**). Tenses are formed on the same stems as in the other conjugations. Learn the conjugation of **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus,** *hear* (Appendix **602**), in all tenses of the indicative active and passive, and the present imperative and infinitive active and passive.

Note the following points:

1. The conjugation of **audiō** in the present tenses of the indicative closely resembles that of **capiō** (Appendix **603**), but the vowel **ī** appears instead of **ĭ** or **ĕ** in the second person singular and the first and second persons plural of the active, and in the second and third persons singular and the first and second persons plural of the passive.

2. The imperfect and future tenses are exactly like those of **capiō.**

3. The present imperative uses the present stem, ending in **-ī,** with the regular imperative endings for active and passive.

4. The present passive infinitive **audīrī** is formed like those of the first and second conjugations.

378. Note the use of the ablative in the following sentences:

1. **Imperātor ā flūmine castra mōvit.** *The general moved the camp away from the river.*

2. **Rēx lēgātōs ā sē mīsit.** *The king sent the envoys away from his presence (away from himself).*

3. **Amīcum perīculō līberāvit.** *He freed his friend from danger.*

4. **Captīvī lībertāte prīvātī sunt.** *The captives were deprived of liberty.*

The ablative in the above sentences expresses *separation,* either literally, implying actual motion, as in sentences (1) and (2), or figuratively, without implying actual motion or action, as in sentences (3) and (4). With actual separation, a preposition (**ab, dē, ex**) is used; when the separation is figurative, with such verbs as those meaning to *set free, lack, deprive, abstain,* the preposition is generally omitted. But if the ablative word refers to a person, a preposition is necessary, as in the following sentence:

Patriam ab hostibus līberāvit. *He freed his fatherland from its foes.*

Note that actual separation, expressed with a preposition, is often identical with the ablative of *place from which,* as in sentence (1).

379. Rule of Syntax. — *The ablative is used to express separation with verbs of removing, freeing, depriving, abstaining, lacking, and the like. A preposition* (**ab, dē, ex**) *is used if actual motion is expressed, or if the ablative word refers to a person.*

380. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

VERBS

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, do, act;* **vītam agere,** *to spend a life;* **grātiās agere,** *to give thanks* (78)

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum (audāx, audācia), *dare*

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear*

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus (agō), *collect;* with infin., *compel, force*

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus, *struggle, hasten, strive*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hesitate, doubt*

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set on fire, kindle*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (habeō), *keep away, restrain*

VERBS (*Continued*)

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, perceive, realize*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *test, try, tempt*

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *raise, lift up, remove*

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come*

ADJECTIVES

extrēmus, -a, -um, *the end of*

prior, -ōris, *former, earlier, first* (of two)

tot (indecl.) (quot), *so many*

ADVERBS

diū, *for a long time*

longē (longus), *a long distance, far*

CONJUNCTION

nisi (sī), *if not, unless*

Note. — In this lesson and those that follow, no Reference Vocabularies are given. For words not found in the Required Vocabularies consult the general vocabulary at the back of the book.

381. Dē Atalantā

Atalanta, virgō pulchra quae in Graeciā ōlim habitābat, ā iuvenibus multīs petēbātur sed ā nūllō in mātrimōnium dūcī cupiēbat. Ōrāculum[1] enim eam hīs verbīs monuerat: "Sī umquam ab ūllō virō in mātrimōnium ducta eris, vītam nōn beātam, sed miseram posteā agere cōgēris. Fāta tua tē mātrimōniō prohibent." Propter haec verba

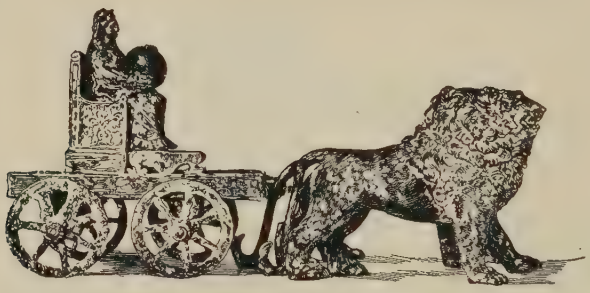
ōrāculī Atalanta similis facta est [2] deae Diānae.[3] Omnēs iuvenēs fugiēbat et per silvās cotīdiē vēlōcibus pedibus currēbat.

Brevī tempore māximā celeritāte currere poterat. Itaque tōtī multitūdinī procōrum suōrum haec respondē-

ATALANTA ALTERUM PŌMUM TOLLIT

bat: "Numquam in mātrimōnium dūcar, nisi cursū (*in running*) victa erō. Pedibus contendite mēcum. Eī quī mē celeritāte superāverit, praemium uxor dabitur. Tardīs autem praemium erit mors." Haec lēx ab omnibus procīs audiēbātur, et semper eī quī cursū superātī erant, vītā prīvābantur. Multī autem virī veniēbant neque propter timōrem mortis certāmine prohibēbantur, sed per tanta perīcula Atalantam petere audēbant.[4]

Ōlim Hippomenēs, iuvenis nōbilis, dum certāmen pedum spectat, īgnēs amōris sēnsit et sibi "Cūr," inquit, "fortūnam hūius certāminis nōn temptābō? Fortūna ipsa audācēs iuvat." [5] Deinde Atalantae ipsī, "Tēcum," inquit, "contendam et sī abs [6] tē superātus erō, māgnum nōmen et glōriam māgnam habēbis. Pater meus enim



THE CHARIOT OF CYBELE

est Megareus et avus ēius est Neptūnus." [7] Tum quidem Atalanta, dum nōbilem iuvenem spectat, dubitāvit et superārī paene cupīvit. Ab eō quaesīvit, "Nōnne caede tot procōrum monitus es? Sī vītā prīvāberis, nōn mea est culpa."

Tum Hippomenēs auxilium ā Venere, deā amōris, multīs precibus ōrat: "Tū, Ō dea, quae mē flammīs amōris incendistī, mē iuvāre dēbēs. Nunc perīculō mortis, ōrō, mē līberā." Deinde Venus amātōrī [8] tria (*three*) pōma aurea dedit atque ūtilitātem [9] eōrum cum cūrā docuit.

Tubīs sīgnum certāminis iam datum est et virgō iuvenisque pedibus vēlōcibus trāns arēnam volant. Brevī in spatiō Hippomenēs ā celerī puellā relinquitur et mēta longē abest. Deinde ūnum pōmum in arēnam mīsit ante virginem, quae admīrātiōne māgnōpere perturbābātur.

Sē vertit et aureum pōmum capit. Interim praecurrit[10] Hippomenēs, quem populus cūnctus māgnīs clāmōribus probat. Atalanta autem hāc morā non diū retenta est, sed celeritātem auget et iuvenem post tergum iterum relinquit. Tum ab eō alterum pōmum iacitur, quod virgō tollit et statim iuvenem cōnsequitur (*overtakes*). Nunc puella praecurrit et iam extrēmō in spatiō volant atque iam prope mētam veniunt. "Nunc, Ō dea bona," Venerī clāmat Hippomenēs, "mē iuvā!" Deinde tertium (*third*) pōmum longē ā virgine iēcit. Virgō dubitāre vīsa est[11] sed ā Venere pōmum tollere coācta est et gravitās[12] pōmōrum ā deā aucta est. Propter hās causās Hippomenēs ad mētam prior vēnit et māgnō clāmōre ā cīvibus laudātus est. Deinde victor suum praemium Atalantam brevī tempore in mātrimōnium dūxit.

382. NOTES

1. At Delphi and at other places in the ancient world were oracles where prophetic responses were given to those who sought advice.

2. *Become* is a translation frequently appropriate for the passive of **faciō**.

3. Read again the account of Diana in **150**.

4. Observe from the principal parts that the verb **audeō** has in the perfect tenses only the passive forms with active meanings.

5. What is the familiar English translation of this saying?

6. Before **t** the preposition **ab** sometimes takes the form **abs**.

7. See **150**.

8. Determine the meaning of **amātor**, from **amō**, according to **213**.

9. From **ūtilis,** whose meaning you know, determine the meaning of **ūtilitās.** See **215.**

10. **Prae** in English becomes the prefix *pre-*, as in *prepay, prevent, preside.* What does **praecurrit** mean?

11. The passive forms of **videō** often mean *seem.*

12. According to **215** determine the meaning of **gravitās** from **gravis,** already known to you.

383. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *oracle, fate, extreme, act, prohibit, contend, tempt, incense.*

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. Many *privations* were endured during the war.

b. He has *cogent* reasons for his decision.

c. The *velocity* of light exceeds that of sound.

d. The price of those antiques is *prohibitive.*

e. His claim to consideration was based on *priority* of arrival.

f. The *attempts* of the *incendiaries* must be *prevented.*

g. The *audience* was *actuated* by strong emotion in its applause.

3. Explain the derivation of the following English adjectives: *fatal, oracular, agile, active, repulsive, audible, audacious, indubitable.* Refer to Chapters XII and XXX.

4. One is *sensible* of pain when he can feel it; the *sensory* nerves transmit feelings, or *sensations;* friendly *sentiments* are friendly feelings; a *sentient* being is one that can feel; to *consent* is to feel with, to have the same feeling, to agree; to *dissent* is to feel differently, to disagree; a *consensus* of opinion is an agreement of feeling.

5. How many English words can you make from **veniō,** using both present and participial stems?

EXERCISES

384. Conjugate the present active and passive of **sentiō**; the imperfect and future active of **veniō**; give a synopsis of **veniō** in the second person singular active; a synopsis of **sentiō** in the third person plural passive.

385. Give the voice, mode, tense, number, and person of the following verbs, and translate them:

audīmur	sentiētis	vēnerat	sēnsī
audiēmur	sentīre	veniam	sentī
venit	audīte	vēnistī	vēnī
vēnit	sentīrī	venīmus	venī

386. Write in Latin:

1. They had come.
2. You (sing.) will feel.
3. He cannot be heard.
4. We could not come.
5. Come to the table, children.
6. Has he come?
7. You (plur.) will have heard.
8. Did they feel?
9. This can be felt.
10. Do you (plur.) hear my voice?

387. Give the Latin for the italicized phrases in the following sentences, and name the kind of ablative used in each case.

1. *In a short time* the enemy will have been driven *from our city.*
2. I shall come *with my father* to Rome.
3. The soldiers who defend themselves *with swords and shields* will not be deprived *of life by the enemy.*
4. He could *in no way* be saved *from death.*
5. The town was attacked *with great eagerness by all the troops.*

6. *At that very time* we were keeping the enemy *from our walls by a multitude of weapons.*

7. We ought to defend our towns *from the enemy with the greatest care.*

8. The Romans marched *with speed* and liberated their allies *from danger.*

9. *At daybreak* the general will hasten *with all his soldiers* to drive *away from the town* the enemy *by whom* the inhabitants are besieged.

10. Hippomenes was not kept *from the contest by fear* of death, but he was outrun *by the swift maiden.*

A Roman Woman

SIBYLLA AD TARQUINIUM VENIT

CHAPTER XL

THE SIBYLLINE BOOKS

The Cumaean Sibyl was an old woman supposed to be inspired with prophetic powers by Apollo. She lived in a cave near Cumae, not far from the present site of Naples. She appears twice in legendary Roman history, once when she guided through the lower world Aeneas, the Trojan hero who escaped to Italy, and hundreds of years later, when she brought the books to Tarquin, as told in this story.

PREPARATION

NUMERALS

388. 1. There are two kinds of number words, those that tell *how many*, as *one*, *two*, *three*, etc., called *cardinal numerals*,

and those that tell *which one in order*, as *first*, *second*, *third*, etc., called *ordinal numerals*. Learn the Latin cardinals from *one* to *twenty*, given below, and the corresponding ordinals from *first* to *tenth*.

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, -a, -um (139, 359)	prīmus, -a, -um, *first* (170)
2. duo, duae, duo (234)	secundus, -a, -um, *second*
3. trēs, tria	tertius, -a, -um, *third*
4. quattuor	quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth* (170)
5. quīnque	quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth*
6. sex (234)	sextus, -a, -um, *sixth*
7. septem (67)	septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*
8. octō	octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth*
9. novem	nōnus, -a, -um, *ninth*
10. decem	decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*
11. ūndecim	
12. duodecim	
13. tredecim	
14. quattuordecim	
15. quīndecim	
16. sēdecim	
17. septendecim	
18. duodēvīgintī	
19. ūndēvīgintī	
20. vīgintī	

Notice that the cardinal numerals from *eleven* to *seventeen*, inclusive, are made by combining earlier cardinals with **decem**, which becomes **decim**, and that the Latin cardinals meaning *eighteen* and *nineteen* are really "two from twenty" and "one from twenty."

2. The cardinals given above are indeclinable, except **ūnus**, **duo**, and **trēs**. The declension of **ūnus** has been explained in

359. **Duo** and **trēs** are given below. Note that **trēs, tria** is like the plural of a third declension adjective of two terminations (280).

duo, *two*			**trēs,** *three*	
PLURAL			PLURAL	
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.* and *F.*	*N.*
duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	trībus	
duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trīs (trēs)	tria
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	

The ordinals are all declined like **bonus, -a, -um.**

389. The Latin words for *one hundred* and *one thousand* are **centum** and **mīlle. Centum** is indeclinable. **Mīlle,** in the singular (*one thousand*), is an indeclinable adjective, like most other cardinals; in the plural (*thousands*) it is a neuter vowel-stem noun of the third declension, declined as follows:

mīlia, *thousands*
PLURAL
NOM. mīlia
GEN. mīlium
DAT. mīlibus
ACC. mīlia
ABL. mīlibus

When the plural forms **mīlia,** etc., are used they are always followed by the *genitive* of the noun giving the kind of things enumerated.

Notice the difference in the following sentences:

1. **Mīlle mīlitēs in castrīs erant.** *There were a thousand soldiers in the camp.*

Mīlitēs is the nominative subject of **erant,** modified by the indeclinable adjective **mīlle.**

2. **Tria mīlia mīlitum in castrīs erant.** *There were three thousand soldiers (three thousands of soldiers) in the camp.*

Mīlia is the nominative subject of **erant,** modified by the genitive **mīlitum** and by the adjective **tria,** which agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

390. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

VERBS

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultus, *ask advice, consult*
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, lēctus (legō), *understand*
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *say no, deny*
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *show, expose to view*
* **scrībo, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus,** *write*

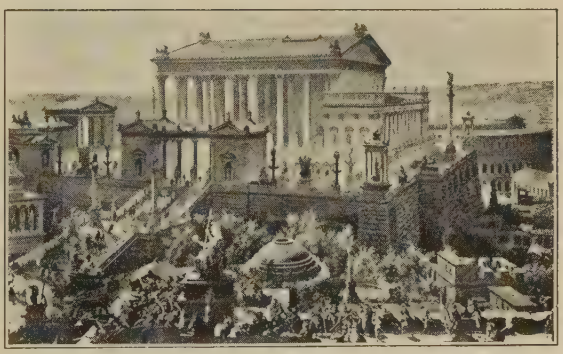
ADJECTIVES

mīlle (indecl.), plur., **mīlia, -ium,** n., *thousand*
novem (indecl.), *nine*
quīndecim (indecl.), *fifteen*
secundus, -a, -um, *second*
septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*
tertius, -a, -um, *third*
trēs, tria, *three*

391. **Dē Librīs Sibyllīnīs**

Haec fābula ab antīquīs[1] dē Librīs Sibyllīnīs nārrābātur, et per duo mīlia annōrum ad nostrum tempus mānsit. Ōlim ad Tarquinium Superbum, septimum rēgem Rōmae, dē quō anteā lēgistī, vēnit fēmina incōgnita, quae novem librōs eī ostendit et "In hīs librīs," inquit, "scrīpta sunt ōrācula deōrum. Nōnne eōs emere cupis?" "Quantum

est pretium?" rogāvit Tarquinius. Tum fēmina pretium ingēns prō novem librīs postulāvit. Rēx autem "Librōs tuōs emere nōn possum," eī respondit, "pretium quod postulās nimium est. Propter māgnam aetātem tuam stulta es," et fēminam rīsit. Illa autem discessit et trēs librōs ex novem īgnī dēlēvit. Secundō diē (*day*) sex reliquōs librōs iterum ad rēgem portāvit et rogāvit, "Nonne emere cupis? Num negābis?" "Quantum est pretium hōrum sex librōrum?" rogāvit Tarquinius, et fēmina "Idem pretium hodiē postulō," respondit, "quod prō novem librīs herī postulābam." Tum quidem rēx multō magis (*much more*) rīdēbat, et fēminam īnsānam appellāvit. "Discēde," māgnā vōce clāmāvit, "nūllōs librōs emere cupiō." Trēs aliī librī brevī tempore ā muliere incōgnitā dēlētī erant, quae deinde trēs quī sōlī relictī sunt ad rēgem portāvit et idem pretium prō hāc tertiā parte tōtīus numerī librōrum postulāvit. Nunc tandem Tarquinius verba mulieris sēriō animō audīvit et sēcum cōgitāvit, "Nōnne haec fēmina ipsa Sibylla Cūmaea[2] est, quae sīgna ōminaque intellegit, et voluntātem deōrum sentit? Hōs librōs emere dēbeō, nam sine dubiō sunt in eīs multa quae Rōmānīs auxilium



THE TEMPLE OF JUPITER AT ROME

dare possunt." Et Sibyllae pretium dedit quod prīmō prō novem librīs postulātum erat. Sibylla māgnā celeritāte discessit neque umquam posteā in urbe Rōmā apparuit.

Eī librī ā Rōmānīs Sibyllīnī appellātī sunt, et in templō Iovis in monte Capitōlīnō[3] positī sunt. Quīndecim virī[4] cūstōdēs eōrum creātī sunt, quī eōs quasi (*as if*) ōrāculum, sī Rōmānī in māgnō perīculō erant, cōnsulēbant.

392. NOTES

1. See **206**, 2. How can you tell the gender of this adjective?

2. See the introduction at the beginning of this chapter.

3. See **173**, 4.

4. These were a special order of priests known as "Keepers of the Sibylline Books."

393. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words are nearly alike in Latin and in English: *consult, dubious, insane, serious.*

2. What names of months are made from the cardinal numbers? See **71**, 3.

3. Show the relation of the following musical terms to Latin numerals: *duet, trio, quartet, quintet, octave.*

4. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. *Ridicule* is harder to bear than wrath.

b. A *negative* reply was given to the question.

c. The offenders were given into *custody.*

d. American money is reckoned by a *decimal* system.

e. He has no *intellectual* interests.

f. An *intelligent* person should be able to give an *intelligible* answer.

g. Illness was the *ostensible* reason for his resignation.

5. A *cent* is one one-hundredth part of a dollar; *percentage* is reckoned by hundredths; a *century* is one hundred years; a *centennial* celebration commemorates the one-hundredth anniversary of an event; a *centipede* is supposed to have a hundred feet.

6. From **trēs, tria** the prefix *tri-* is made, which is used in many English words. A *tripod* is a three-legged stool; a *triumvirate* was a league of three men; Neptune's *trident* was a long spear, with three teeth, like a fork; a *trireme* was a galley with three banks of oars. What do *triangle* and *triennial* mean?

7. There are many English words derived from **scrībō,** *write,* from both the present and the participial stems. Explain *scribe, script, scripture, manuscript* (**manus** means *hand*), *postscript, inscribe.* There are many other verbs made from **scrībō,** which you will be better able to understand after you have learned more about prefixes.

8. Under what circumstances does one hear the expression "We are still far from the *millenium,*" or "The *millenium* has not yet come"?

EXERCISES

394. Count to *twenty* in Latin. Decline **septimus rēx; tertia nox; eī duo agrī; meae duae fīliae; eīdem trēs mīlitēs; ūnum nōmen.**

395. Give the Latin for the following phrases and sentences:

1. With a thousand soldiers
2. With two thousand soldiers
3. The book has four parts.
4. In the fourth part of the book is a good story.
5. On the second night
6. At daybreak
7. At the third hour
8. In ten years
9. In the tenth year
10. Within three hours

396. Give a synopsis of each of the following verbs:

intellegō, second person singular, active and passive
scrībō, third person plural, active and passive
sentiō, first person plural, active
possum, second person plural, active

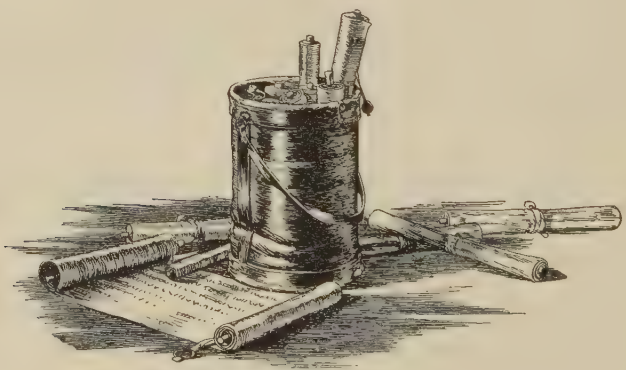
397. Write in Latin:

1. In the tenth year of the war all the inhabitants of this large city surrendered themselves and all their (possessions) to the Romans.

2. In those nine books which the Sibyl showed to the king there were many oracles of the gods.

3. The price of the whole number of books was enormous, and the Sibyl demanded the same price for three books.

4. The three apples which had been given to the young man by the goddess were useful to him.



Roman Scrolls

CHAPTER XLI

THE ROMAN MILITARY SYSTEM

This chapter is supplementary to Chapter XI, which described the Roman camp and the foot-soldier's equipment. Reread the account given there before you take up the present chapter, which gives additional details about the Roman army, and in the last paragraph describes the method of march and of battle commonly used.

PREPARATION

Fourth Declension. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space

398. The stem of nouns of the fourth declension ends in **-u.** Nouns ending in **-us** are masculine, with the exception of a few which are feminine; those ending in **-ū** are neuter. Study the following paradigms:

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack* Stem, **impetu-** Base, **impet-**		**cornū, -ūs,** n., *horn, wing* (of an army) Stem, **cornu-** Base, **corn-**	
	Singular		Singular
Nom.	impetus	Nom.	cornū
Gen.	impetūs	Gen.	cornūs
Dat.	impetuī (ū)	Dat.	cornū
Acc.	impetum	Acc.	cornū
Abl.	impetū	Abl.	cornū
	Plural		Plural
Nom.	impetūs	Nom.	cornua
Gen.	impetuum	Gen.	cornuum
Dat.	impetibus	Dat.	cornibus
Acc.	impetūs	Acc.	cornua
Abl.	impetibus	Abl.	cornibus

Note the following points:

1. Nouns of the fourth declension are recognized by the genitive singular ending **-ūs,** given in the vocabulary form.

2. The characteristic stem vowel **u** appears in all cases except the dative and ablative plural. A few nouns have the ending **-ubus** in those cases instead of **-ibus.**

3. The genitive singular, the nominative plural, and the accusative plural of nouns in **-us** are alike, and differ from the nominative singular only in the quantity of the vowel.

4. Neuters follow the rules for case endings of neuters in the nominative and accusative singular and plural given in **75,** 2.

399. Observe the use of the accusative in the following sentences:

1. **Trēs annōs in Galliā pūgnābāmus.** *We were fighting in Gaul for three years.*

2. **Tria mīlia passuum ambulāvit.** *He walked three miles (three thousands of paces,* see **389**).

3. **Mūrus decem pedēs altus est.** *The wall is ten feet high.*

In the first sentence, the accusative **trēs annōs** tells for how long a time the action of the verb lasted, *i.e.*, it expresses *duration of time.* In sentences (2) and (3) the accusative phrases **tria mīlia** (**passuum**) and **decem pedēs** give the extent of the journey and of the wall's height, *i.e.*, they express *extent of space.*

Duration of time should be carefully distinguished from time when and within which (**271**). The ablative constructions of time tell when or within what period an action happened, but do not tell how long it lasted; the accusative tells how long an action lasted, but not when it happened.

400. Rule of Syntax. — *The accusative without a preposition is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

401. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

adventus, -ūs, m. (veniō), *arrival*
āgmen, -minis, n. (agō), *column of march;* **prīmum āgmen,** *the van*
centuriō, -ōnis, m. (centum), *centurion*
cohors, -hortis, f., *cohort*
equitātus, -ūs, m. (equus, eques), *cavalry, a body of horsemen*
exercitus, -ūs, m. (exerceō), *army*
hīberna, -ōrum, n. plur., *winter-quarters*
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*
passus, -ūs, m., *pace;* **mīlle passūs,** *a mile;* plur., **mīlia passuum**
vigilia, -ae, f., *watch*

ADJECTIVES

centum, *one hundred* (389)
decem, *ten* (388, 1)
dexter, -tra, -trum, *right, right-hand*
quīnque, *five* (388, 1)
superior, -ōris (superus), *higher, former*

VERBS

committō, -ere, -mīsī, missus, (mittō), *bring together, entrust, perform;* **proelium committere,** *to begin battle*
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus (moenia), *fortify*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *strike, drive, rout.*

ADVERB

circiter, *about*

CONJUNCTION

vel, *or*

402. **Dē Rēbus Mīlitāribus** [1]

Rōma, urbs illa quae prope flūmen Tiberim posita est, tōtīus orbis terrārum domina multōs annōs erat. Ītalia prīmō, deinde aliae terrae bellō victae sunt. Gallia, Graecia, Britannia, Hispānia, Asia,[2] et multae partēs Āfricae sub imperiō [3] Rōmānō erant, et ex eīs terrīs multae prōvinciae factae sunt. Incolae eārum prōvinciārum

RŌMĀNĪ MĀGNUM OPPIDUM OPPŪGNANT

iūra cīvium nōn habēbant, sed tribūta Rōmae dabant; itaque exercitūs māgnōs Rōmānī in eīs regiōnibus pōnēbant, et per eōs cōrumque imperātōrēs prōvinciae administrābantur.

Tot regiōnēs vincere et tot prōvinciās pācāre et administrāre Rōma poterat quod tantam scientiam bellī habēbat. Et aestāte et hieme mīlitēs Rōmānī in prōvinciīs vidērī poterant. Aestāte per omnēs fīnēs Rōmānōs multa mīlia passuum itinera faciēbant, et novās terrās superābant, et hostēs agrīs Rōmānīs prohibēbant; tōtam hiemem in hībernīs manēbant et incolās prōvinciārum ā perīculō dēfendēbant. Proximā aestāte mīlitēs ex hībernīs dūcēbantur, et, cum novīs cōpiīs quae cōnscrīptae erant, nova bella gerēbant.

Exercitus Rōmānus mīlitēs legiōnāriōs vel peditēs[4] habēbat, et equitēs[5] et auxilia.[6] Una legiō habēbat circiter quīnque[7] mīlia peditum, et in decem cohortēs dīvīsa est. Imperātor tōtam potestātem exercitūs habēbat, sed lēgātī legiōnēs saepe in proelium dūcēbant, et in hībernīs cum eīs manēbant. Centuriōnēs[8] quoque erant, mīlitēs quī propter māgnam virtūtem ducēs centum mīlitum factī erant.

Legiōnēs Rōmānae, quōrum auxiliō Caesar Gallōs vincit, iam quīndecim mīlia passuum iter fēcērunt per fīnēs hostium. Caesar ipse prīmum āgmen sex legiōnum dūcit; post eās impedīmenta tōtīus exercitūs collocāta sunt, et duae legiōnēs āgmen claudunt[9] et praesidium impedīmentīs dant.[10] Propter longum iter mīlitēs iam dēfessī sunt, et nox appropinquat. Itaque equitēs ab imperātōre praemittuntur,[11] quī in colle prope parvum flūmen locum castrīs idōneum[12] dēligunt. Exercitus et impedīmenta ad collem appropinquant; eōrum adventū castra in superiōre locō pōnuntur et ā mīlitibus vāllō sex pedēs altō fossāque novem pedēs lātā māgnā celeritāte mūniuntur. Trēs vigiliās[13] noctis mīlitēs dormiunt; quārtā autem vigiliā cūstōs clāmat, "Hostēs appropinquant!" Sīgnum tubā datur, omnēs mīlitēs sē armant et in colle ā lēgātīs īnstruuntur, impetus hostium exspectātur. Imperātor legiōnēs hīs verbīs monet: "Cum virtūte pūgnāte, mīlitēs, et impetum hostium sustinēte; castra nostra dēfendite

CENTURIŌ RŌMĀNUS

et aquilam [14] ab hostibus servāte!" Tum proelium cum hostibus, quī iam proximī Rōmānīs sunt, committitur. Rōmānī prīmō in eōs pīla iaciunt, deinde gladiīs multōs vulnerant; [15] ā dextrō cornū Gallī in fugam dantur, sed auxilia, quae ā sinistrō posita sunt, eōrum impetum sustinēre nōn possunt. Tum Caesar ad eam partem novās cōpiās mittit, quārum tēlīs hostēs brevī tempore pelluntur. Dum illī fugiunt, equitātus māgnum numerum eōrum interficit.

403. NOTES

1. *Concerning military affairs.* **Rēbus** is a noun of the fifth declension; the adjective **mīlitāris** is made from **mīles** according to **293**, 3.

2. The Romans meant by this word a part of Asia Minor.

3. Which of the two meanings given for this word in section **102** should be used here?

4. The Roman legionaries were professional soldiers, mostly Roman citizens from northern Italy. Their term of service was twenty years.

5. The cavalry used by the Romans was generally made up of foreigners — Gauls, Germans, Spaniards — who were better horsemen than the Romans. They were used to reconnoitre, to make preliminary skirmishes, to forage, and to pursue the retreating enemy.

6. The **auxilia,** *auxiliaries*, were foreign foot-soldiers, used mainly to make a show of numbers, but not much actual dependence was placed upon them. They were often armed with slings, or with bows and arrows.

7. Theoretically 6000 men, 60 centuries of 100 men each, but the ranks were seldom full.

8. The centurions, though lowest in rank, were perhaps the most important officers of the army. They had risen from the ranks because of merit, were in direct contact with the soldiers, and often directed the trend of public opinion in the army. When Caesar wished to prevent a threatened mutiny on one occasion, he called together all the centurions and addressed them.

9. *Close the column, i.e.*, bring up the rear.

10. This formation of the marching column was used when an attack might be expected at any time. On other occasions each legion was generally followed by its own baggage train.

11. Determine for yourself the meaning of this verb, made from **mittō** and **prae.** See **382,** 10.

12. The Romans preferred to encamp on a hill where the rear of the camp would be at the top, and its front face the enemy. The slope could then be used to draw up the ranks for battle.

13. The time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four watches of approximately three hours each.

14. The standard of the Roman legion was always surmounted by the figure of an eagle. It was carried into battle as flags are in modern days.

15. The Roman method in battle was to wait until the enemy, advancing from below, were within range of their javelins, which were then hurled to break up the ranks. This done, each Roman soldier rushed into hand-to-hand conflict with the enemy.

404. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. Animals that *hibernate* lie *dormant* during the winter.
   b. That firm made *munitions* during the war.

c. The mountain stream flows over the rocks in an *impetuous* torrent.

2. What is the French verb meaning *to sleep?* What is a *dormitory?*

3. Give as many arithmetical terms as you can, made from **dīvidō.**

4. A person does things with *dexterity* if he is skillful with his hands (right hand); an *ambidextrous* person is able to use both hands equally well (**ambō** means *both*).

5. The following words are the same or almost the same as their Latin originals: *cohort, centurion, vigil, impetus, advent, superior, commit, compress.*

6. How many English words can you make from **pellō,** using both its present and participial stems?

EXERCISES

405. Decline **adventus tuus; dextrum cornū; hic exercitus fortis; nūllus impetus ācer; sōlus equitātus Rōmānus.**

Give a synopsis of **mūniō,** third person singular, active and passive.

406. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quot mīlitēs in ūnā legiōne erant?
2. Quot cohortēs ūna legiō habēbat?
3. Quam longē mīlitēs iter fēcērunt?
4. Quam diū mīlitēs iter fēcērunt?
5. Ubi legiōnēs Rōmānae tōtam hiemem manēbant?
6. Quandō legiōnēs ex hībernīs dūcēbantur?
7. Quālis locus castrīs idōneus est?
8. Quot pedēs altum erat vāllum castrōrum?
9. Quae tēla Rōmānī in hostēs iaciēbant?
10. Quis erat centuriō?

11. Quid lēgātī faciēbant?
12. Quibus tēlīs Rōmānī hostēs vulnerābant?

407. Write in Latin:

1. They walked for three hours; for three miles.
2. We shall be led from camp in three hours.
3. The soldiers who had marched many miles pitched camp at night.
4. All night they stayed in camp, and at daybreak the enemy attacked them.
5. They made a wall many feet high.
6. This river is two miles wide.

ROMAN SOLDIERS

METTIUS CURTIUS EQUUM IN RĪMAM AGIT

CHAPTER XLII

THE DEVOTION OF METTIUS CURTIUS

You have read how the Decii gave themselves up to death to save Rome (Chapter XXXVI). Mettius Curtius was another Roman who was capable of self-sacrifice when he thought that the good of his country demanded it, and so devoted himself as the Decii had done.

PREPARATION

FIFTH DECLENSION. IRREGULAR VERBS **volō** AND **eō**

408. The fifth declension nouns have stems ending in **-ē.** They are all feminine except **diēs,** which is always masculine in the plural, and generally so in the singular. Only **diēs** and

rēs, declined below, have all the plural forms. A few others have the nominative and accusative plural.

diēs, -ēī, m., *day* Stem, **diē-** Base, **di-**			**rēs, reī,** f., *thing* Stem, **rē-** Base, **r-**		
	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
Nom.	**diēs**	**diēs**	Nom.	**rēs**	**rēs**
Gen.	**diēī**	**diērum**	Gen.	**reī**	**rērum**
Dat.	**diēī**	**diēbus**	Dat.	**reī**	**rēbus**
Acc.	**diem**	**diēs**	Acc.	**rem**	**rēs**
Abl.	**diē**	**diēbus**	Abl.	**rē**	**rēbus**

Note that the stem vowel **ē** appears in all cases, although shortened in the genitive, dative, and accusative singular of **rēs** and in the accusative singular of **diēs.** Observe carefully which cases are alike.

409. Learn the conjugation of the indicative of **volō, velle, voluī,** *wish, be willing* (Appendix **606**).

Note the following points:

1. The present tense, although irregular, uses the usual active personal endings.

2. The imperfect and future are regular, and follow the model of the third conjugation (**326**).

3. The perfect tenses are regular.

4. There is no passive and no imperative.

410. Learn the conjugation of the indicative and the present imperative of **eō, īre, īvī** (**iī**), **itus,** *go* (Appendix **607**).

Note the following points:

1. The present stem **ī-** becomes **ĕ** before a vowel, in the

first person singular and third person plural of the present tense, and is shortened in the third person singular.

2. The imperfect uses the regular tense sign and personal endings.

3. The future is regular, and follows the model of the first and second conjugations.

4. The perfect tenses are regular.

5. The imperative is regular.

411. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

VERBS

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (eō), *go towards, approach*

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus (plēnus), *fill*

cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (iaciō), *throw, hurl*

eō, īre, īvī (iī), **itus**, *go*

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (eō), *go out*

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (capiō), *begin*

volō, velle, voluī, — (voluntās), *wish, be willing*

NOUNS

diēs, -ēī, m. (hodiē, cotīdiē), *day*

fidēs, -eī, f. (fīdus), *faith, trust, honor, pledge*

nēmō, dat. **nēminī,** acc. **nēminem** (homō), *no one, nobody*

rēs, reī, f., *thing*

spēs, -eī, f., *hope*

412. TRANSLATION AT SIGHT

After committing to memory the words in 411, read at sight the following passage. The meaning of many of the other new words can be readily determined. Use the general vocabulary only for verification.

Mettius Curtius Sē Prō Patriā Dēvovet

Omnēs bonī cīvēs Rōmānī, quī patriam amābant, vītam prō ēius salūte dare volēbant, neque umquam

timōre mortis commovēbantur, sed māgnā audāciā sē deīs dēvovēbant, sī ita ōrāculīs monitī erant. Fābulam Deciōrum, quī suā morte Rōmam perīculō līberāvērunt, anteā lēgistī; nunc fābulam audī alīus fortis Rōmānī, quī eōdem modō amōrem patriae ostendit.

Ōlim in mediō Forō Rōmānō māgna rīma subitō apparuit. Omnēs ex omnibus partibus urbis in Forum ībant, quod rīmam vidēre volēbant. "Cūr haec rīma in terrā Forī nostrī facta est?" quaesīvērunt. Sed nēmō eam rem intellegere poterat. Tum māgna saxa et terram in rīmam cōniēcērunt, sed spēs eōrum vāna erat; tālibus rēbus rīma complērī nōn poterat.

Deinde Rōmānī, quod rīma iam multōs diēs longa et lāta mānserat, īram deōrum timēre incipiēbant, et ōrāculum cōnsulere cōnstituērunt. Itaque ad ōrāculum iērunt, quod hīs verbīs illīs respondit: "Māximum bonum vestrum[1] in rīmam iacite; hōc modō sōlum rīmam complēre poteritis."[2]

Tum quidem Rōmānī diū dubitābant; "Quid," inter sē[3] rogābant, "māximum bonum nostrum est?" Ōrāculum intellegere nōn poterant, sed quod māgnam fidem deīs[4] habēbant, in rīmam cōniēcērunt gemmās multās aurumque, quae rēs eīs māximum bonum esse vidēbantur. Sed frūstrā labōrāverant, rīma enim nōn complēta est.

Eōdem diē, dum cīvēs rīmam spectant, in Forum vēnit Mettius Curtius, vir bonus et fortis. "Frūstrā," clāmāvit, "aurum gemmāsque in eum locum cōnicitis, eae enim rēs māximum bonum nōn sunt. Arma et animus intrepidus Rōmānōrum māximum bonum sunt." Tum ē Forō exiit, sed mox equō suō rūrsus in mediōs cīvēs vectus est.

Omnia arma sua gerēbat; equum quoque māgnificē exōrnāverat. Ad rīmam adiit, et dum omnēs māgnā admīrātiōne commoventur, māgnā vōce clāmāvit, "Deīs īnferīs prō patriā meā vītam meam nunc dēvoveō." Tum equum in ipsam rīmam ēgit, et ex omnium cōnspectū statim et vir et equus discesserant, rīma enim sine morā complēta est. Hōc modō Rōma māgnō timōre perīculī ā fortī cīve servāta est.

413. NOTES

1. **Māximum bonum vestrum,** *your most valuable possession;* literally, *your greatest good thing.* **Bonum** is here used as a neuter noun. See **206,** 2.

2. The replies of oracles to those asking advice were notably ambiguous, as in the present instance.

3. *Among themselves*, i.e., *of one another.*

4. Verbs and expressions meaning *to trust* or *to have faith* are followed by the dative in Latin.

414. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words are very similar to their Latin originals: *gem, vain, intrepid* (**114,** 1).

2. What is an *exit?* What does *exeunt* mean in the text of a dialogue or play?

3. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

   a. Dogs are remarkable for their *fidelity.*

   b. Their plans were not *confided* to any one.

   c. The *diurnal* motion of the earth is from west to east.

   d. The regiment lacks its *complement* of men.

   e. There were evidences of *incipient* mutiny among the soldiers.

EXERCISES

415. Decline **īdem diēs, longus diēs, nūllus diēs, haec spēs, fidēs nostra, ea rēs, rēs difficilis.**

416. Time yourself in giving the complete conjugation of **volō** in the indicative; of **eō** in the indicative and imperative.

Give a synopsis of **volō** in the second person singular; in the first person plural.

Give a synopsis of **exeō** in the third person singular; in the second person plural.

417. Write in Latin:

1. On the third day we shall go out from camp.
2. For ten days the soldiers were waging war against these towns.
3. In ten days you have gone a hundred miles.
4. Don't you (plur.) wish to go to the Forum?
5. We shall not be willing to do that thing.
6. They were filling the crevice with those things which they had carried into the Forum.
7. The faith of the Romans was great, but their hopes were groundless.
8. Are you (sing.) willing to give your life for your country?
9. Will they go out from the city on that very day?
10. Do they wish to see these things which I have with me?

CHAPTER XLIII

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

418. VOCABULARY REVIEW

The following words are those given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters XXXIX–XLII. You should be able to give correctly and rapidly all the vocabulary forms. Only those numerals are included here which have been used in the Latin of those chapters; you should be able also to give the cardinals to *twenty*, and the ordinals to *tenth*, as directed in Chapter XL.

adeō
adventus
āgmen
agō (vītam)
audeō
audiō
centum
centuriō
circiter
cōgō
cohors
committō (proelium)
compleō
cōniciō
cōnsulō
contendō
decem
dexter
diēs
diū
dubitō
eō
equitātus
exeō
exercitus
extrēmus
fidēs
hīberna
impetus
incendō
incipiō
intellegō
longē
mīlle
mūniō
negō
nēmō
nisi
novem
ostendō
passus (mīlle, mīlia)
pellō
prior
prohibeō
quīndecim
quīnque
rēs
scrībō
secundus
sentiō
septimus
spēs
superior
temptō

tertius	trēs	vigilia
tollō	vel	volō
tot	veniō	

419. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

1. Give the declension of each cardinal whose inflection you have learned. How are the ordinals declined?

2. Give the declension of **exercitus, cornū, diēs, rēs,** in as short a time as possible. Copy the form which follows and fill out the blank spaces; this will help you fix in mind the important differences in case endings of the five declensions.

	GEN. SING.	DAT. SING.	ACC. SING.	ABL. SING.	GEN. PLUR.	DAT. PLUR.	ACC. PLUR.
terra							
equus							
bellum							
rēx							
flūmen							
hostis							
mare							
passus							
cornū							
diēs							

3. How are fourth conjugation verbs distinguished from those of the other three conjugations? Which other conjugation do they most closely resemble in the formation of the tenses? Where are the only differences found?

4. How many irregular verbs have you studied? In what tenses do irregularities occur? Give the principal parts and conjugate the present tenses of each of these verbs.

5. Copy the form below and fill out the blank spaces, thus making a complete synopsis of the four conjugations and of the irregular verbs that you have studied. Use **laudō** (I), **moveō** (II), **gerō, capiō** (III), **audiō** (IV).

Third Person Singular	I	II	III	III –iō	IV	sum	possum	eō	volō
Pres. Ind. Act.									
Pres. Ind. Pass.									
Imperf. Ind. Act.									
Imperf. Ind. Pass.									
Fut. Ind. Act.									
Fut. Ind. Pass.									
Perf. Ind. Act.									
Perf. Ind. Pass.									
Plup. Ind. Act.									
Plup. Ind. Pass.									
Fut. Perf. Ind. Act.									
Fut. Perf. Ind. Pass.									
Second Person Singular Pres. Imv. Act.									
Pres. Imv. Pass.									
Pres. Inf. Act.									
Pres. Inf. Pass.									

420. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

1. What cardinal number is sometimes an adjective and sometimes a noun? Give the Latin for *a thousand years, three thousand years, ten thousand men, a mile, two miles.*

2. How many uses of the accusative have you now learned? Give a Latin phrase or sentence to illustrate each.

3. You have now studied the following uses of the ablative:

Place where	Manner	Time when
Means	Accompaniment	Time within which
Place from which	Personal agent	Separation

After reviewing **101, 158, 202, 220, 233, 271,** and **379,** make a statement about each kind of ablative, telling with what

LŪCERNAE RŌMĀNAE

Latin preposition, if any, it is used, and how it is translated in English. If with any kind a preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not, include an explanatory statement on that point.

EXERCISES

421. Give the Latin for the following expressions, which are very frequently used in Latin, and with which you should be thoroughly familiar.

1. with great care
2. in a short time
3. that famous chief
4. to form a new plan
5. at daybreak
6. the van of the army
7. for many years
8. three miles
9. to give thanks
10. the whole world

11. The soldiers began battle.
12. The Romans pitched camp.
13. We shall wage war.
14. A battle was fought.
15. I cannot go.
16. I am glad to do this.
17. While these things were going on.
18. I saved myself and all my (possessions).
19. The enemy betook themselves to the town.

422. Write in Latin:

1. For three days the army, with its baggage train, was being led by that very lieutenant through our country.

2. In those nine books which were brought to the king by the Sibyl many things useful to the Romans were written.

3. The foot-soldiers who have marched for twenty miles to-day now wish to pitch camp.

4. The armies which the Romans sent into all parts of the world used to defend their allies from the enemy.

5. Mettius Curtius had determined to give his life for his country, because he wished to free it from danger.

6. In a short time Atalanta, who could run with the greatest speed, had left the young man behind her.

7. By means of three golden apples, which Venus had given him, Atalanta's suitor was able to overcome her.

8. Who will go with us to-morrow to the town in which my brother and his sons are staying for a few days?

9. You yourself, who are so powerful, cannot do all those things which you wish to do.

423. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

According to directions previously given, list in your note-book the following words, under the headings which follow.

1. Latin Words Which Have Become English with No Change of Form

prior, impetus, superior

2. English Words Derived from Latin

Derivatives from **dīcō, sentiō, scrībō, trēs, decem, centum**

3. Latin Words and Phrases Used in English

ipsō factō	meum et tuum
alibī	per diem
tempus fugit	vīvā vōce
in tōtō	vēnī, vīdī, vīcī
Deō volente	vāde mēcum

4. English Adjectives Derived from First and Second Declension Latin Adjectives

active, negative, intrepid

5. Third Declension Adjectives in **-ōx** and **-āx**

vēlōx

6. Third Declension Adjectives in **-ilis, -bilis**

(List according to directions in **376,** 6)

audible, indubitable

7. Third Declension Adjectives in **-īlis, -ālis, -āris**

(List according to directions in **376,** 7)

fatal, oracular, diurnal

CHAPTER XLIV

A ROMAN TRIUMPH

In the centuries during which Rome was carrying her conquests throughout the Mediterranean world, many victories were won by her armies. Though the right to hold a triumphal procession through the city was accorded by decree of the senate only to the most important of these victories, it is said that the city of Rome witnessed three hundred such triumphs. The last triumphal procession in ancient Rome was in A.D. 404, celebrating her victory over Alaric the Visigoth.

PREPARATION

Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of Comparatives. Use of quam

424. 1. Many adjectives which express a quality have different forms to indicate different degrees of that quality. In English the endings *-er* and *-est* are often used for this purpose, as *swift, swifter, swiftest;* sometimes the adverbs *more* and *most* are used, as *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful.* These three degrees of quality are called the *positive,* which is the simple form of the adjective; the *comparative,* which expresses a greater degree of the quality; and the *superlative,* which expresses the greatest degree of the quality. To give the three degrees of an adjective is to *compare* it. Some adjectives have a meaning which does not admit of comparison, such as *all, such, remaining, ten, military.*

2. Latin adjectives have the same three degrees of comparison as English adjectives. The comparative is formed regularly by adding to the base of the positive the ending **-ior**

(m. and f.), **-ius** (n.), thus making a third declension adjective of two terminations. The superlative is regularly formed by adding to the base of the positive **-issimus, -a, -um,** thus making an adjective of the first and second declensions. No difference in the method of comparison is made between adjectives of the first and second declensions and those of the third declension.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
clārus, -a, -um (**clār-**), *clear, famous, distinguished*	**clārior, -ius,** *clearer, more famous, more distinguished*	**clārissimus, -a, -um,** *clearest, most famous, most distinguished*
brevis, -e (**brev-**), *short*	**brevior, -ius,** *shorter*	**brevissimus, -a, -um,** *shortest*
audāx, -ācis (**audāc-**), *bold*	**audācior, -ius,** *bolder*	**audācissimus, -a, -um,** *boldest*

425. The superlative degree is declined like **bonus** (**99**). The comparative is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and *F.*	*N.*	*M.* and *F.*	*N.*
clārior	clārius	clāriōrēs	clāriōra
clāriōris		clāriōrum	
clāriōrī		clāriōribus	
clāriōrem	clārius	clāriōrēs (-īs)	clāriōra
clāriōre (-ī)		clāriōribus	

Compare this declension with that of **fortis** and **potēns** (**280**) and note that comparatives are not vowel stems like other third declension adjectives (**269, 1**), and so do not have the genitive plural ending **-ium** or the neuter plural nominative

and accusative **-ia.** The ablative singular, however, sometimes has **-ī,** and the accusative plural masculine and feminine sometimes have **-īs,** but these endings are not the ones commonly used.

426. 1. When a comparison of two persons or things is expressed in a sentence, the adverb **quam,** *than,* is used.

a. **Mōns altior est quam collis.** *A mountain is higher than a hill.*

b. **Equōs celeriōrēs quam illōs numquam vīdī.** *I have never seen swifter horses than those.*

c. **Mārcī dōnum ūtilius est quam sorōris.** *Marcus' gift is more useful than his sister's.*

Observe that in all these sentences the word following **quam** is in the same case as the preceding word with which it is compared; **mōns** and **collis** in (*a*), **equōs** and **illōs** in (*b*), **Mārcī** and **sorōris** in (*c*).

2. Sometimes a comparison is implied but not actually expressed, *e.g.*, *This hill is rather high* (*higher than some others*). *The time is too short* (*shorter than it ought to be,* or *than is needed*). In Latin the comparatives **altior** and **brevius** are used to express the ideas in these sentences. The comparative degree may therefore be translated by *rather* or *too,* as well as by the English comparative.

3. In Latin the superlative also is often used, without making an actual comparison, to express a very high degree of quality, but not necessarily the highest, and so is often translated by *very.*

Collis altissimus est. *The hill is very high.*

427. Rule of Syntax. — *When comparison is expressed with* **quam,** *the two things compared are in the same case.*

428. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

dīgnitās, -tātis, f., *dignity*
manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band* (of men)
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*

ADVERBS

prīmum (prīmus), *first*
quam, *than*

PREPOSITION

suprā (with acc.), *above, beyond;* also adv.

ADJECTIVES

aliī . . . aliī, *some . . . others* (359)
mīlitāris, -e (mīles), *military*

VERBS

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (discēdō), *come to, approach*
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus (spectō, spectāculum, cōnspectus), *catch sight of, behold*

429. **Dē Triumphō[1] Rōmānō**

Multa spectācula māgna et splendida Rōmānī in urbe suā vidēbant, sed nūllum spectāculum superbius et splendidius erat quam pompa triumphālis.[2] Itaque nūllam aliam pompam avidiōribus oculīs incolae urbis Rōmae spectābant, neque ūllum spectāculum eīs grātius fuit quam triumphus. Nūllus honor clārior ā populō Rōmānō darī poterat quam hic, quem imperātōrēs Rōmānī māximō studiō cupiēbant. Triumphus autem nōn multīs imperātōribus, sed paucīs sōlum, quī māgnam victōriam reportāverant, ā senātū datus est.[3]

Māximum gaudium hodiē est in urbe Rōmā et laetissimī sunt omnēs cīvēs quod nova prōvincia superāta est. Cōpiae Rōmānae potentiōrēs fuērunt quam exercitus hostium atque fortiōrēs mīlitēs Rōmānī fuērunt quam audācissimae gentēs Gallōrum. Imperātor victor nōn est in urbe, sed cum exercitū suō prope portam extrā moenia paucōs diēs manet, dum senātus dē ēius triumphō

Pompa Triumphālis

iūdicat. Tandem iūdicium senātūs factum est et hic clārissimus honor imperātōrī ā senātōribus datus est.

Multōs iam diēs aedificia Forī et omnia templa urbis corōnīs flōrum (*of flowers*) exōrnāta sunt. Hodiē māxima multitūdō cīvium Forum templaque quae Forum circumstant et omnia loca ē quibus triumphus vidērī potest, complet, dum adventum imperātōris ēiusque exercitūs victōris exspectant. Aliī inter columnās templōrum stant, aliī in altiōrēs partēs aedificiōrum ascendunt, unde suprā altissima capita multitūdinis pompam cōnspicere possunt.

Post longissimum tempus tubae audiuntur quibus adventus pompae nūntiātur. Tandem per portam triumphālem pompa urbem intrat et per Circum [4] et per Sacram

Viam [5] et Clīvum Capitōlīnum accēdit ad montem Capitōlīnum, ubi in templō Iovis imperātor Iovī māximās grātiās et dōna sacra prō victōriā suā dabit.

Prīmum māgnā dīgnitāte accēdunt cōnsulēs senātōrēsque togātī [6] populī Rōmānī. Deinde mīlitēs Rōmānī, ā quibus proelia multa facta sunt, sīgna [7] mīlitāria portant. Post eōs multa scūta et gladiī et alia arma Gallōrum portantur, quae ā victōribus rapta sunt. Taurī quoque, quōs mīlitēs Rōmānī ex hostium agrīs ēgērunt, in pompā dūcuntur. Simulācra et pīctūrae oppidōrum Gallōrum portantur. Rōmānī, cum haec cōnspexērunt, cum gaudiō clāmant: "Lātiōrēs agrōs et prōvinciam nōbīs ūtilissimam habēbimus!"

A Roman Standard Bearer

Ante currum triumphālem ambulant captīvī, nōbilissimī Gallī, quōrum manūs vinculīs tenentur. "Spectāte," clāmant Rōmānī, "quam altī atque validī sunt hī Gallī! Corpora longiōra et validiōra habent quam corpora nostra. Breviōrēs sunt mīlitēs nostrī, sed semper fortiōrēs quam hostēs! Vae victīs! (*Woe to the vanquished!*)" māgnā vōce clāmant. Tandem autem in currū triumphālī imperātor victor ipse accēdit. Tunicam palmātam (*embroidered with palm branches*) et togam pīctam [8] (*embroidered*) splendidissimam gerit atque suprā caput ēius corōna tenētur ā servō quī in currū vehitur. Māgnīs

clāmōribus cīvēs imperātōrem salūtant. "Potentissima est Rōma! Nūlla gēns potentior est quam nostra! Nūllus populus pār est nōbīs! Iō triumphe![9] Iō triumphe!"

430. NOTES

1. The Latin **triumphus** does not mean a victory, but a procession through the streets in celebration of a victory.

2. Determine from the suffix the meaning of this adjective. (**293**, 2).

3. A triumph was decreed by the Roman senate in accordance with certain technical requirements regarding the nature of the conquest and the part of the army brought safely home by the victorious general.

4. Read again the English introduction to Chapter XVII.

5. Trace upon the plan of the Forum (**152**, 4) the course of the **Sacra Via**, which began near the present site of the Colosseum and passed through the Forum valley to the foot of the Capitoline Hill. From this point it was called the **Clīvus Capitōlīnus** and ascended the Capitoline Hill with divisions to each of the two summits.

6. See **306**, 7.

7. See **403**, 14.

8. The **toga pīcta**, wholly of purple and embroidered in gold, was worn by the victorious general in the triumphal procession, and later by the emperors.

9. This was the customary shout of the spectators and the soldiery on the occasion of a triumphal procession.

431. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain from your knowledge of Latin suffixes the derivation of the following English words: *triumphal* (**293**, 2),

judicial (293, 2), *coronation* (216), *dignity* (215), *military* (293, 3).

2. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *triumph, senate, judge, coronet, extra, report.*

3. To *manufacture* originally meant to make by hand (344, 2); a *manuscript* is written by hand (393, 7); *manicure* means care of the hands; *manacles* are fetters for the hands; to *manipulate* is to operate by hand; the adjective *manifest* was originally applied to things that could be touched with the hand.

4. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. The *dignitaries* were seated in a *conspicuous* place.

b. You have met with *extraordinary* success.

c. The area of the United States has been increased by many *accessions* of territory.

EXERCISES

432. Give the full comparison of the following adjectives:

grātus	longus	antīquus
cārus	laetus	plēnus
validus	ūtilis	vēlōx
brevis	fortis	potēns

433. Decline the following:

bellum brevius
longius iter
antīquissimum tempus
haec gravior poena
illud tēlum ūtilius
hic validior mīles
potentissimus rēx noster

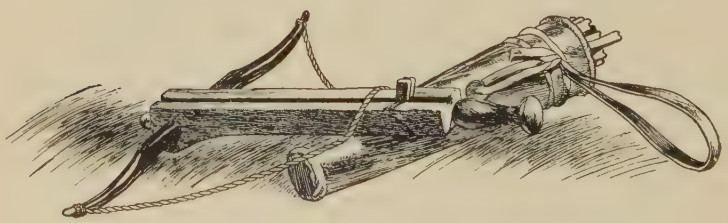
434. Complete the following sentences by adding the proper endings:

1. Rōmānī nūllum splendid— spectāculum vidēbant quam triumph—.

2. Meus frāter est fort— quam —— (*I*).
3. Gladiī brev— erant quam pīl—.
4. Corbulam plēn— habēs quam —— (*mine*).
5. Amīcōs potent— quam —— (*himself*) habet.

435. Write in Latin:

1. This is the shortest day of the whole year.
2. The Forum was very full of citizens who wished to see the triumph.
3. This day's march is the longest which the army has made at any time.
4. I cannot carry this book; it is too heavy.
5. You can carry heavier books than I.
6. The bravest of all these tribes has been conquered by the Romans.
7. Why can't you do this thing in a shorter time?
8. These weapons are very heavy, but they will be more useful to us than our own.
9. The safety of the state was dearer to a Roman than life itself.



A Roman Crossbow and Quiver

Mūcius Manum Dextram in Īgnī Pōnit

CHAPTER XLV

THE COURAGE OF MUCIUS SCAEVOLA

The story of Mucius Scaevola presents another instance of the high courage and physical fortitude which upheld the exalted standard of patriotism among the Romans.

PREPARATION

Comparison of Adjectives in -er and -lis. Ablative of Comparison

436. All adjectives whose masculine ending in the positive is **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um,** to this positive.

miser, -era, -erum	**miserior, -ius**	**miserrimus, -a, -um**
ācer, ācris, ācre	**ācrior, -ius**	**ācerrimus, -a, -um**

The comparative is formed regularly by adding **-ior, -ius** to the base of the positive (**424,** 2), which sometimes has **e,** as **miser,** sometimes not, as **ācer** (**269,** 3).

437. The following six adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive. The comparative is formed regularly.

similis, -e, *like*	**similior, -ius**	**simillimus, -a, -um**
dissimilis, -e, *unlike*	**dissimilior, -ius**	**dissimillimus, -a, -um**
facilis, -e, *easy*	**facilior, -ius**	**facillimus, -a, -um**
difficilis, -e, *difficult*	**difficilior, -ius**	**difficillimus, -a, -um**
humilis, -e, *low, humble*	**humilior, -ius**	**humillimus, -a, -um**
gracilis, -e, *slender, graceful*	**gracilior, -ius**	**gracillimus, -a, -um**

Other adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative regularly.

438. Instead of expressing comparison with **quam,** as explained in **426,** 1, **quam** is sometimes omitted, and the following word is put in the ablative of comparison. This may be done only when, if **quam** were expressed, the following word would be in either the nominative or accusative case. (Compare Rule of Syntax, **427.**)

Mōns altior est colle (**quam collis**). *A mountain is higher than a hill.*

Equōs celeriōrēs illīs (**quam illōs**) **numquam vīdī.** *I have never seen swifter horses than those.*

But, **Mārcī dōnum ūtilius est sorōre** would mean *Marcus' gift is more useful than his sister!*

439. Rule of Syntax. — *The ablative of comparison, without a preposition, may be used instead of* **quam** *and the nominative or* **quam** *and the accusative.*

440. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

cāsus, -ūs, m. (cadō), *chance, accident, misfortune*

VERBS

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (ad + sum), *be present, assist*

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began* (used only in perfect tenses)

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *become acquainted, learn, recognize;* perfect, *know*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (mittō), *send away, dismiss*

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join*

VERBS (*Continued*)

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (veniō), *arrive* (with **ad** and acc.)

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus (trāns + eō), *cross over*

ADJECTIVES

difficilis, -e (facilis), *difficult*

facilis, -e (faciō), *easy*

līber, -era, -erum (līberō), *free*

PREPOSITION

ob (with acc.), *on account of*

441. Dē Fortitūdine Mūcī Scaevolae

Porsena, rēx potentissimus Etrūscōrum quī Rōmānīs hostīlior omnibus aliīs fīnitimīs erat,[1] in Rōmānōs impetūs multōs fēcerat et proeliīs[2] ācerrimīs contenderat, sed urbem capere nōn potuerat. Multōs iam diēs prope urbem cum exercitū suō mānsit atque incolae miserrimī, quod frūmentum in urbem portārī nōn poterat, cibum nōn habuērunt. Propter hunc cāsum Gāius Mūcius, iuvenis nōbilissimus et audācior suīs comitibus, in castra hostium trānsīre cōnstituit. Dē hōc cōnsiliō senātōrēs cōnsuluit et apud senātum hanc ōrātiōnem brevissimam habuit.[3] "Trāns Tiberim, Ō patrēs,[4] trānsīre volō, sī vōbīs grātum est, et castra hostium intrāre, sī poterō. Factum populō

Rōmānō ūtilissimum,[5] sī deī mē iuvābunt, audēbō." Senātōrēs ēius cōnsilium intellēxērunt et iuvenem fortem probāvērunt.

Mūcius gladium sub veste tēxit et discessit. Difficillimum erat hoc iter, sed propter amōrem patriae facillimum[6] Mūciō vīsum est. Brevī tempore pedibus celerrimīs ad castra rēgis pervēnit et prīmā lūce sē cum multitūdine mīlitum iūnxit. Eō ipsō diē stīpendium (*pay*) mīlitibus Etrūscīs ā scrībā dabātur, quī in altō locō sedēbat cum rēge. Hic scrība, ad quem multī mīlitēs appropinquābant, vestem pulchriōrem veste reliquōrum mīlitum et simillimam vestī rēgis ipsīus gerēbat. Mūcius, quī rēgem numquam vīderat, nūllō modō eum cōgnōscere potuit, et sēcum cōgitābat: "Quis est rēx Porsena?" Difficillimum erat hoc iūdicium, nam ab aliīs quaerere nōn audēbat. Itaque sine morā longiōre gladium suum rapuit et manū celerī scrībam interfēcit et gladiō viam suam per multitūdinem facere coepit. Brevissimō autem tempore ad rēgis pedēs trāctus est. "Quis es?" inquit rēx. "Quam ob rem[7] in castrīs meīs ades?" "Cīvis Rōmānus sum," vōce audācissimā respondit iuvenis, "et nōmen meum est Mūcius. Hostem patriae meae necāre cupiēbam, sed nōn potuī. Multī aliī autem hoc idem[8] temptābunt. Numquam vīta tua, Ō rēx, perīculō līberior erit quam hodiē! Semper tū sōlus eris in perīculō!"

Tum quidem rēx māximā īrā commovēbātur. "Dīc mihi," ā Mūciō postulāvit, "omnia dē hāc rē. Sī negābis, īgnī[9] cremāberis. Īgnem, virī, statim parāte!" Iuvenis fortissimus rēgī hīs verbīs respondit: "Rōmānī patriam, nōn corpora sua amant. Neque tē neque īgnem tuum

timeō," et in īgnī, quī erat in ārā prope rēgem, manum dextram posuit atque tenēbat. Propter admīrātiōnem tantae fortitūdinis rēx verbīs dissimillimīs vōcī hostis, "Tē," inquit, "lēgibus bellī līberō atque tūtum tē dīmittam." Prō hōc tantō beneficiō Mūcius rēgī mala cōnsilia iuvenum Rōmānōrum nārrāvit. "Trecentī [10] iuvenēs Rōmae contrā tē, Ō rēx, coniūrāvērunt. Post mē reliquī in vicēs (*in turn*) contrā tē venient."

Posteā animus rēgis miserrimī propter timōrem humillimus factus est, atque lēgātōs ad senātum Rōmānum mox mīsit, quī pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcērunt. Itaque Mūcius sōlus patriam suam tantā virtūte māgnō perīculō līberāvit, et posteā nōmen tertium [11] Scaevola (*left-handed*) eī datum est, quod dextra manus īgnī dēlēta erat. Celeberrimum est hoc factum forte Mūcī, et hāc fābulā paucās celebriōrēs legētis, discipulī meī.

442. NOTES

1. This is the same Etruscan king Porsena about whose hostility to Rome we have read before (Chapter XXIII). By whom was he prevented from capturing the city?

2. Explain the case by consulting **224**, 2.

3. **Ōrātiōnem habēre** means to *deliver an oration, make a speech.*

4. Originally the senate was composed of heads of families.

5. **Hostīlis, nōbilis, ūtilis,** form the superlative in **-issimus.** Why not **-limus?** See **437**, end.

6. How is **facillimum** used here? In what case?

7. What part of speech is **quam** here?

8. Observe the short **i.**

9. See **217**, 2.

10. Determine for yourself the meaning of this word, made from **trēs** and **centum.** Note that multiples of **centum** are declinable.

11. Read again **264,** 3.

443. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. With the help of your knowledge of Latin suffixes, show the formation of the Latin words to which the following English words correspond, and trace the development of the meaning of the English words: *casual* (**293,** 2); *fortitude* (**214**); *difficulty*, *facility*, *faculty*, *humility*, *celebrity* (**215**); *celebration*, *recognition* (**216**); *recognizable* (**292**).

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. Umbrellas *protect* us from rain.

b. The authorities will take *cognizance* of this important matter.

c. He was greatly *humiliated* because of his mistake.

d. Communication has been greatly *facilitated* by the radio.

3. What is a railroad *junction?* Why is one of the parts of speech called a *conjunction?*

EXERCISES

444. Compare the following adjectives:

celer	piger	ūtilis	dissimilis
nōbilis	celeber	facilis	niger
līber	sacer	pulcher	humilis

445. Decline the Latin for the following:

1. that very black horse
2. our most sacred temple
3. a swifter messenger
4. this most famous story
5. the easiest journey
6. a humble citizen
7. the most difficult thing
8. the more graceful girl

446. Express in two ways the comparison in each of the following sentences:

1. This road is shorter and easier than that (one).
2. These tribes are braver than their bravest neighbors.
3. We have seen many rivers longer than the Tiber.
4. The Romans used to build temples more beautiful than our most beautiful buildings.
5. That boy is lazier than you.

447. Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quam fābulam celeberrimam hodiē lēgistī?
2. Eratne Mūcius audācior reliquīs Rōmānīs?
3. Nōnne audācissimus omnium iuvenum erat?
4. Quō Mūcius iter fēcit?
5. Quāle erat hoc iter Mūcī?
6. Quālibus pedibus hoc iter fēcit?
7. Quandō Mūcius ad rēgis castra pervēnit?
8. Quid Mūcius in castrīs rēgis facere cupiēbat?
9. Quot iuvenēs Rōmānī rēgem Porsenam necāre cupiēbant?
10. Quam ob rem Mūciō nōmen Scaevola datum est?

Roman Masks

CHAPTER XLVI

THE TOGA OF MANHOOD

Of great significance in the life of a Roman boy was the day on which with solemn ceremony he laid aside the purple-bordered toga of boyhood and donned the white toga of manhood. This was at about sixteen years of age, and the day chosen was frequently that of the *Liberalia*, a festival celebrated in March. After this the youth no longer attended his boyhood school, but devoted a year or more to preparation for his chosen work. He joined the staff of a governor of a province, or of a general in the field, and so gained much practical knowledge of administration and warfare, or, if he wished to be a lawyer or to enter public life, he might attach himself to an eminent jurist.

PREPARATION

Ablative of Degree of Difference. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

448. When a comparison of two persons or things is expressed, it is often necessary to state the amount of difference between them in respect to some special quality. For this purpose the ablative of degree of difference is used.

1. **Meus frāter paulō longior mē (quam ego) est.** *My brother is a little taller than I (taller by a little).*

2. **Mūcius multō fortior erat suīs comitibus.** *Mucius was much braver than his companions (braver by much).*

3. **Arbor vīgintī pedibus altior aedificiō est.** *The tree is twenty feet higher than the building (higher by twenty feet).*

The degree of difference in these sentences is expressed by **paulō** (1), **multō** (2), and **vīgintī pedibus** (3). **Paulō** and

multō are adverbs (really neuter adjectives in the ablative, as the endings show), which express the degree of difference with less exactness than is done by the ablative **vīgintī pedibus.** The ablative of degree of difference is usually expressed by **paulō, multō,** or some phrase containing a number.

449. Rule of Syntax. — *The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree of difference when two objects are compared.*

450. Many of the most common adjectives in Latin are irregularly compared, that is, they form their comparative and superlative on stems different from that of the positive.

A Ruin at Pompeii

In some cases also the comparative has some irregularity of declension. The following vocabulary contains the most important of these irregular comparisons. Commit them thoroughly to memory. Are any of the corresponding English adjectives irregularly compared? Besides those given here, you should note the following irregular comparative and superlative forms, which have been given in previous chapters.

Comparative	Superlative
prior, -ius, *former* (380)	**prīmus, -a, -um,** *first, foremost* (170)
	proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next* (283)
	extrēmus, -a, -um, *last, farthest, the end of* (380)

The comparative of **multus,** given below, is irregularly declined.

plūs, plūris, *more*

Singular		Plural	
M. and *F.*	*N.*	*M.* and *F.*	*N.*
——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
——	plūris	plūrium	
——	——	plūribus	
——	plūs	plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
——	——	plūribus	

451. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
* bonus, -a, -um, *good*	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
* malus, -a, -um, *bad*	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
* māgnus, -a, -um, *large*	māior, -ius	* māximus, -a, -um
* parvus, -a, -um, *small*	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
* multus, -a, -um, *much*	—, plūs, plūris	plūrimus, -a, -um
* multī, -ae, -a, *many*	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
* īnferus, -a, -um, *below*	īnferior, -ius	īnfimus, -a, -um *or* īmus, -a, -um, *lowest*
* superus, -a, -um, *above*	* superior, -ius	suprēmus, -a, -um *or* summus, -a, -um, *highest, the top of*

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
* **iuvenis, -e** (203), *young* (*young man*)	**iūnior** *or* **minor nātū** (*less by birth*)	**minimus nātū**
senex, senis, *old* (*old man*)	**senior** *or* **māior nātū** (*greater by birth*)	**māximus nātū**
iūstus, -a, -um, *just, fair*		
sēdecim, *sixteen* (388)		

NOUN

laus, laudis, f. (laudō), *praise*

VERBS

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (veniō), *come together, assemble*

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (eō), *go back, return*

ADVERBS

multō, *much*

nē . . . quidem, *not even*

paulō, *a little*

452. Dē Togā Virīlī [1]

Herī erant Līberālia [2] et in domiciliō Mārcellī, poētae Rōmānī, summum gaudium erat. Mārcus enim, quī fīlius māximus nātū Mārcellī est et tribus annīs senior frātre suō, nunc sēdecim annōs nātus est atque togam virīlem ā patre suō cēpit. Non iam puer, sed iuvenis est Mārcus atque vir līber et cīvis Rōmānus factus est.

Prīmā hōrā [3] herī Mārcus ante āram sacram,[4] quae in ātriō domicilī stābat, bullam, quam ā minimō puerō gesserat, et togam praetextam,[5] vestem puerīlem,[1] posuit. Deinde sacrificium deīs parātum est in ārā domicilī et bulla [6] suprā focum posita est, ubi manēbit. Post haec

MĀRCUS TOGAM VIRĪLEM RECIPIT

Mārcus suprā tunicam summā cum cūrā suō corporī accommodāvit albam togam virīlem.

Deinde Mārcellus: "Māgnus puer, Mārce, mī fīlī," inquit, "es et iam iuvenis paulō longior mē, patre tuō, factus es. Bonus fīlius semper fuistī et vir optimus esse dēbēs. Summā dīligentiā semper in lūdō labōrāvistī neque ūllus puer optimōs librōs māiōre studiō quam tū lēgit. Omnia officia et māxima et minima summā cūrā fēcistī. Optimōs comitēs semper dēlēgistī et ā pessimīs discessistī. Nūllus pater Rōmānus gaudiō māiōre togam virīlem fīliō suō hodiē dat." Patrī hīs verbīs respondit Mārcus: "Optimus et iūstissimus vir esse cupiō et multō similior patrī meō optimō quam nunc sum, sed nē paulō quidem melior et iūstior tē, mī pater cāre, esse poterō."

Interim in domiciliō aderant plūrimī servī et clientēs, quī ā patre Mārcellō convocātī erant et multī amīcī propinquīque [7] in domicilium conveniēbant. Paulō post [8] cum hāc tōtā multitūdine Mārcellus fīliusque dē superiōre parte urbis, in quā habitant, ad Forum, quod est īnferius multīs pedibus, dēscendērunt. Tandem in Forum pervēnērunt, ubi multitūdō cīvium optimōrum eōs brevī tempore premēbat. Aliae enim pompae plūrimae amīcōrum quī cum aliīs puerīs vēnerant tōtum spatium Forī complēbant.

Hōc in locō amīcī clientēsque patrem et fīlium salūtābant atque Mārcellō "Māximō gaudiō," inquiunt, "Mārcelle, complēmur quod optimus fīlius tuus iam vir est et cīvis Rōmānus." Summā cum laude amīcī Mārcum probābant. "Nēmō," inter sē inquiunt, "fīlium meliōrem Mārcō habet. Ācerrimus in lūdō semper fuit et propter summam dīligentiam pār est, ita dīcitur, plūrimīs discipulīs, quī multīs annīs māiōrēs nātū sunt. Plūrēs et māiōrēs partēs librōrum poētārum nēmō memoriā tenet." Mārcellō, quī haec verba audīvit, nūllus pater superbior fuit.

Posteā nōmen Mārcī in tabulīs cīvitātis in numerō cīvium Rōmānōrum scrīptum est. Post haec per clīvum Capitōlīnum ad summum (*the top of*) montem Capitōlīnum cum amīcīs pater et fīlius ascendērunt, ubi erat templum Iovis Optimī Māximī [9] et templum quoque deī Līberī, cūius in ārā pūblicum sacrificium prō Mārcō datum est. Deinde ad domicilium poētae rediērunt, ubi māgna cēna parāta erat, et amīcī multī cum Mārcellō et Mārcō cēnāvērunt.

453. NOTES

1. Determine the meanings of these two adjectives from **293**, 1.

2. On March seventeenth was celebrated the **Līberālia**, the festival of the god **Līber**, an old Italian deity presiding over agriculture.

3. The time from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve equal portions called hours, as the night was divided into watches (**403**, 13). **Prīma hōra** therefore means the first hour after sunrise.

4. This was the altar of the **Larēs**, the guardian deities of the household. In the later form of Roman house this altar stood in the atrium near the place where the hearth had been in the earlier time.

5. See **70**, 2.

6. See **54**, 2. After the **bulla** was hung up it might be taken down and worn on occasions when the man who had worn it in boyhood might be subject to the envy of gods or men. Thus a general is said to have worn his **bulla** during his triumphal procession through the city.

7. **Propinquus**, *near* (**294**), is here a noun meaning *those near of kin, relatives*.

8. Observe that **post** here is an adverb stating a difference in time and accompanied by an ablative, **paulō**, which measures the amount of the difference.

9. On the Capitoline Hill Jupiter was worshiped with the titles **Optimus** and **Māximus**.

454. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The present chapter contains an unusual number of words which have been taken from Latin into English with no change of form. Tell in what connection each of the follow-

ing words is used: *inferior, superior; junior, senior; major, minor; plus, minus; maximum, minimum.*

2. The following words have changed very little from their Latin originals: *just, supreme, client, laud* (noun), *summit.*

3. Explain the meaning of the terms *majority, minority, plurality,* as shown by their Latin derivation.

4. What is the difference between an *optimist* and a *pessimist?*

5. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. Many nations of the ancient world acknowledged the *supremacy* of Rome.

b. An adventurous person is inclined to *minimize* the risks he runs.

c. This settlement is attempting to *ameliorate* conditions in the crowded quarters of our city.

d. Please make a *summary* of this chapter.

6. Why is the *plural* number so called?

EXERCISES

455. Decline the Latin for the following:

a lower place	the best citizen
the worst misfortune	a larger army
the least danger	a smaller band
a better law	a worse fate

Give a synopsis of **redeō** in the second person singular, indicative and imperative.

456. Write in Latin:

1. The Romans have more soldiers in Gaul than in the city itself.

2. The top of the mountain is 10,000 feet higher than the sea.

3. The wall is three feet longer than the ditch.

4. This road is a few miles longer than that (one).

5. Your brother is two years younger than you.

6. The enemy's army is much smaller than ours.

7. The Romans used to draw up their line of battle on higher ground (**locus**).

8. They awaited the approach of the enemy, who came from a lower position.

9. I have a good book, yours is a little better, but my brother's book is the best of them all.

ROMANS CLAD IN THE TOGA

CHAPTER XLVII

APPIUS CLAUDIUS' REPLY TO PYRRHUS

We have seen how Rome extended her power by wars with her neighbors, the Latins, Volscians, Samnites, and other peoples of central Italy. See the story of the *Sabine Women* (Chapter XXI), of *Cincinnatus* (Chapter XXXI), of *Coriolanus* (Chapter XXXIII), and of the *Decii* (Chapter XXXVI). After several hundred years of war she was mistress of Italy as far south as the Greek settlements in the southern end of the peninsula. In her wars with these Greeks she fought for the first time with an enemy from across the sea, for help was brought by Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, to his countrymen in southern Italy. For many years the Romans contended with this able foe, and at the close of the war they had gained control of all southern Italy. About these wars many stories are told, in which are shown the indomitable courage and steadfast persistence of the Romans, even in the face of defeat.

PREPARATION

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. Ablative of Specification

457. 1. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base of the positive degree of the adjective.

Adjective	Base	Adverb
clārus, *clear*	**clār-**	**clārē,** *clearly*
pulcher, *beautiful*	**pulchr-**	**pulchrē,** *beautifully*
miser, *wretched*	**miser-**	**miserē,** *wretchedly*

2. Adjectives of the third declension usually form the adverb by adding **-iter** to the base of the positive degree of the adjective.

Adjective	Base	Adverb
fortis, *brave*	**fort-**	**fortiter,** *bravely*
ācer, *sharp*	**ācr-**	**ācriter,** *sharply*
celer, *swift*	**celer-**	**celeriter,** *swiftly*

3. Some third declension adjectives of one termination form the adverb by adding **-ter** to the base of the positive degree of the adjective, and if the base ends in **-nt, t** is dropped.

Adjective	Base	Adverb
audāx, *bold*	**audāc-**	**audācter,** *boldly*
vehemēns, *violent*	**vehement-**	**vehementer,** *violently*
dīligēns, *careful*	**dīligent-**	**dīligenter,** *carefully*

4. Some adverbs are the accusative or ablative singular neuter of the adjective.

Adjective	Adverb
prīmus, *first*	**prīmum,** *first,* **prīmō,** *at first*
multus, *much*	**multum,** *much;* **multō,** (*by*) *much*
facilis, *easy*	**facile,** *easily*

458. 1. The comparative degree of an adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative adjective and ends in **-ius.** The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative adjective by changing final **-us** to **-ē.**

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
audā**cter**	audā**cius**	audā**cissimē**
celeri**ter**	celeri**us**	celerri**mē**
facile	facili**us**	facilli**mē**

2. Adverbs formed from irregular adjectives show some irregularities of formation or of comparison.

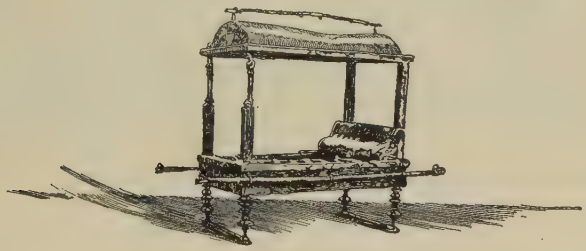
Adjective	Positive Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
bonus	**bene,** *well*	**melius**	**optimē**
malus	**male,** *badly*	**peius**	**pessimē**

Adjective	Positive Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
māgnus	**māgnōpere,** *greatly*	**magis**	**māximē**
parvus	**parum,** *little*	**minus**	**minimē**
multus	**multum,** *much*	**plūs**	**plūrimum**

3. The comparison of **diū,** *for a long time,* is **diū, diūtius, diūtissimē.**

4. Observe that an adverb of manner is equivalent to a noun in the ablative of manner; *e.g.*, **celeriter = cum celeritāte** (202).

459. In the sentence, *This boy excels in tennis, but not in mathematics,* the meaning of the verb *excels* is true in one respect and not true in another respect. The noun *tennis*



Lectīca Rōmāna

specifies in what respect the meaning of the verb is true. Latin expresses this by using the ablative without a preposition.

Rōmānī fīnitimōs virtūte superant. *The Romans surpass their neighbors in valor.*

The ablative **virtūte** specifies in what respect the meaning of the verb **superant** applies. The *ablative of specification* is also used to show in what respect the meaning of a noun or of an adjective applies.

Vir nōmine, nōn factīs, amīcus erat. *The man was a friend in name, not in deeds.*

Hostēs Rōmānīs parēs erant numerō hominum. *The enemy were equal to the Romans in number of men.*

460. Rule of Syntax. — *The ablative of specification without a preposition is used to tell in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies.*

461. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

aciēs, -ēī, f., *edge, line of battle*
condiciō, -ōnis, f., *terms, agreement*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore, beach*
vīs, vim, vī, f., *force, energy;* plur., **vīrēs, -ium,** *strength*[1]
vulnus, -eris, n. (vulnerō), *wound*

ADJECTIVES

aequus, -a, -um, *even, equal, fair*
complūrēs, -a, (-ia), *several, many*

ADVERBS

ācriter (ācer), *sharply, fiercely*
celeriter (celer), *swiftly*
facile (facilis), *easily*
fortiter (fortis), *bravely*
graviter (gravis), *severely, seriously*

VERBS

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (capiō), *take to, receive, accept*
perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (terreō), *terrify thoroughly, demoralize*

[1] Carefully study the declension of **vīs** (Appendix **584**), and distinguish its forms from those of **vir**.

462. **Appius Claudius Pyrrhō Bene Respondet**

Dum Rōmānī in eā parte Ītaliae quae Māgna Graecia[1] appellābātur bellum gerunt, quod in suā potestāte tōtam Ītaliam habēre cupiēbant, incolae eārum regiōnum, quī bellō Rōmānīs parēs nōn erant, auxilium petere coāctī sunt. Ad Pyrrhum, rēgem Ēpīrī,[2] quī omnēs ducēs eōrum temporum virtūte et vīribus et scientiā bellī superābat, lēgātī missī sunt. Ille, quod multō magis quam reliquī imperātōrēs bellum amābat, libenter auxilium dedit, et ipse cum māgnō exercitū ad lītora Ītaliae celer-

APPIUS CLAUDIUS GRAVITER SENĀTŌRĒS MONET

rimē nāvibus vectus est. Complūrēs annōs bellum contrā Rōmānōs gerēbat. Contrā hunc hostem cōnsul Rōmānus mīlitēs prīmō nōn multōs numerō dūxit, et proelium commissum est. Peditēs Rōmānī diū atque ācriter pūgnāvērunt, et Graecōs, quī eōs numerō superābant, paene vīcērunt, sed elephantīs,[3] quī ā Ƥyrrhō ā Graeciā trānsportātī erant et nunc in aciem Rōmānam agēbantur, vehementissimē perturbābantur et perterrēbantur; tālia enim animālia Rōmānī numquam anteā vīderant. Hōc modō Pyrrhus prīmō proeliō hostēs suōs facile in fugam dare poterat.

Post proelium Pyrrhus, dum plūrima corpora Rōmānōrum mortuōrum spectat, quae in terrā iacēbant, quōrum omnia vulnera adversa[4] erant, clāmāvit, "Imperātor quī

tālēs mīlitēs habet facillimē tōtum orbem terrārum superāre potest!" Atque Pyrrhus ipse multa mīlia mīlitum suōrum āmīserat, et amīcīs, "Sī iterum," inquit, "eōdem modō vīcerō, sōlus sine ūllō mīlite in Ēpīrum redībō."

Tum Pyrrhus ad urbem Rōmam contendit; caede īgnīque omnēs agrōs fīnitimōs longē lātēque vāstāvit. Multīs proeliīs Rōmānī cum hostibus fortissimē contendērunt, sed eōs vincere nōn potuērunt. Tandem Pyrrhus post multās victōriās pācem et amīcitiam cum Rōmānīs cōnfīrmāre volēbat, et lēgātum Cīneam nōmine ad senātum mīsit. Cīneās erat amīcus rēgis, ā quō hoc saepe dīcēbātur: "Plūrēs urbēs verbīs Cīneae quam vī et armīs occupāvī." Cīneās in senātum Rōmānum vēnit et virtūtēs rēgis aequāsque pācis condiciōnēs laudāvit, et senātōrum animī ad pācem vertere incipiēbant. Tum Appius Claudius,[6] quī nōn iam in senātum cotīdiē veniēbat, quod caecus et māximus nātū erat, lectīcā in cūriam portātus est, et graviter senātōrēs monuit: "Nisi dīgnitātem salūtemque āmittere vultis, tālēs condiciōnēs accipere nōn dēbētis. Ego, quī māximus nātū sum omnium quī adsunt, vōbīs haec dīcō. Huīc lēgātō rēgis breviter respondēte: 'Rōma pācem cōnfīrmāre cum nūllō hoste poterit quī nōn ē terrīs Rōmānīs discesserit.'" Atque hoc respōnsum ā senātū Cīneae datum est, quī celeriter ad Pyrrhum rediit et eī "Rōma," inquit, "mihi templum esse vīsa est,[7] et senātōrēs ēius rēgēs sunt."

463. NOTES

1. Southern Italy was called **Māgna Graecia** because of its large number of Greek settlements. Many large and flourish-

ing cities were there, which had a highly developed civilization. One of the largest was Tarentum. Locate it on the map.

2. Epirus was a district in northwestern Greece, just opposite southern Italy. Locate it on the map.

3. Pyrrhus brought from Greece twenty elephants, which at his orders were turned loose in the midst of the battle.

4. **Adversus** is from **ad** and **vertō,** whose meaning you know. It is here an adjective, and is best translated *in front.* The Romans kept their faces *turned toward* the enemy, even to the point of death.

5. A victory won only at great cost has ever since been termed a " Pyrrhic victory."

6. This is the Appius Claudius from whom the Appian Way was named. See **247,** 6.

7. See **382,** 11.

464. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. Nothing seems to disturb her *equanimity.*
   b. The news was received with *transports* of joy.
   c. All creatures were *responsive* to the music of Orpheus.
   d. The *violence* of the storm caused much damage.

2. How many English words can you find beginning with *equi-*, in which, as in many other English words, the long *e* represents the Latin diphthong **ae**? What is an *equilateral* triangle? An *equivocal* answer or saying is capable of a double interpretation because it has two nearly equal meanings.

3. A person is *responsible* or answerable when he may be called to account for a trust.

4. Why is *littoral* spelled with an *o* and *literal* with an *e?* See **71,** 7. What is the *littoral* of a country?

5. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *equal, accept, elephant, response, transport, vehement, vim.*

EXERCISES

465. Form and compare the adverbs from **facilis, pulcher, laetus, bonus, nōbilis, malus, miser, māgnus, parvus.**

Decline **māior spēs, māxima vīs, hoc minus vulnus.**

466. 1. Express the following in two ways in Latin, using (1) a noun phrase and (2) an adverb: *most bravely; more eagerly* (**ācer**); *swiftly; very boldly; more carefully.*

2. Write in Latin:

a. The Romans used to excel the Gauls in courage, not in size of body.

b. In what country can better roads be seen than in the Roman provinces?

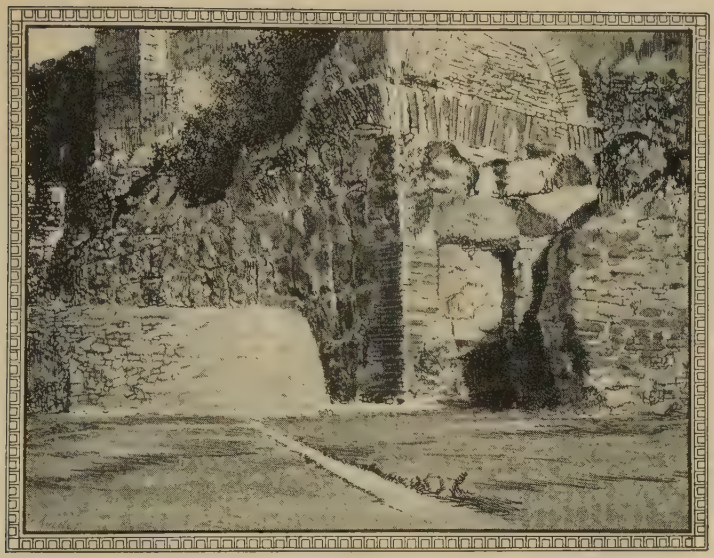
c. Marcus, who surpasses most boys in diligence, can read the most difficult books very rapidly.

d. In all respects (**rēs**) this boy greatly pleases his father.

e. In musical skill he is equal to much older boys.

f. Never did the soldiers fight longer or more fiercely than on the following day.

Bit, Stirrup, and Battle Mace



MŪRUS RŌMULĪ

CHAPTER XLVIII

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

467. VOCABULARY REVIEW

You should be able to give correctly and rapidly the vocabulary forms of the following words, which are those given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters XLIV–XLVII.

accēdō	aequus	cōgnōscō
accipiō	aliī . . . aliī	complūrēs
aciēs	cāsus	condiciō
ācriter	celeriter	cōnspiciō
adsum	coepī	conveniō

difficilis	manus	plūrimus
dīgnitās	melior	plūs
dīmittō	mīlitāris	prīmum
facile	minimus	quam
facilis	minor	redeō
fortiter	multō	sēdecim
graviter	nē . . . quidem	senātus
īnferior	ob	senex
iungō	optimus	summus
iūstus	paulō	suprā
laus	peior	tegō
līber (adj.)	perterreō	trānseō
līmus	perveniō	vīs
māior	pessimus	vulnus

468. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

1. How do most adjectives form the comparative degree? the superlative? What ending forms the superlative of adjectives in **-er**? To what is this ending added? Is the superlative of **nōbilis** and **ūtilis** formed like that of **facilis**? How does **facilis** form the superlative? What other adjectives form the superlative in the same way?

2. To what declension do all comparative adjectives belong? To what stem group of this declension? Name by gender, number, and case the forms of the comparative adjective whose endings differ from those of the positive of a third declension adjective, *e.g.*, in what forms do the endings of **brevior** differ from those of **brevis**? What group of third declension adjectives may have in the ablative singular of the positive the same case endings as the usual comparative? Give the ablative singular of **audāx** in both positive and comparative degrees. What three letters may be regarded

as the sign of all regular comparatives? In what two forms only of a comparative do these three letters not appear? Decline in the singular and plural the comparative of **multus.** Give the genitive singular of **minus,** of **māius.** To what declension do all superlative adjectives belong?

3. How is an adverb regularly formed from an adjective of the first and second declensions? from an adjective of the third declension? Name three common exceptions.

HEAD OF NEPTUNE (COIN)

4. What is the maximum number of forms of one adverb? Why is it necessary to know the comparison of an adjective in order to compare the adverb formed from it? From what adjective is formed an adverb ending in **-um** in both the positive and superlative?

469. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

1. When **quam** follows a comparative, in what case is the second of the things compared? When **quam** is omitted after a comparative, in what case is the second of the things compared? When only is it possible to omit **quam** after a comparative?

2. When comparison is implied, but not actually expressed, what is the translation of the comparative? of the superlative?

3. By what use of a noun may *swiftly* be expressed in Latin? Express in Latin by means of this noun construction all degrees of the adverb *swiftly.*

4. Express in Latin the italicized words and give the reason for the case used.

a. This house is *many feet* high.

b. This house is *many feet* higher than the wall.

What sort of word must accompany every ablative of degree of difference?

5. What question is answered by the ablative of specification? With what three parts of speech may it be used? Does this use of the ablative take a preposition in Latin?

EXERCISES

470. 1. Write the complete declension of **potentior prīnceps, hic māior exercitus, id brevius tempus.**

2. Write the accusative plural of *worse misfortune, longer name, very difficult journey, smaller part, better plan.*

3. Write the genitive plural of *very high mountain, more beautiful city, smallest town, swifter ship, wider bridge.*

4. Form and compare the adverbs from **līber, bonus, similis, māgnus, sacer, malus, ācer, ūtilis, parvus, gravis, vēlōx, multus.**

Compare **superus** and **īnferus.**

471. Write in Latin the italicized words and name each kind of ablative used.

1. They fought *with equal courage.*
2. He came *with a very old man.*
3. He fought *with a short sword.*
4. They came *within a shorter time.*
5. He struck *with greater force.*
6. They entered *with a very great noise.*
7. He lives *in a rather small town.*
8. This happened *in the first year of the war.*
9. He will go *with the largest number of soldiers.*
10. It will be done *very easily.*

472. Write in Latin:

1. The smallest seas are many feet deeper than the deepest rivers.

2. The Gauls were not equal to the Romans in courage or in strength.

3. Have you ever seen a road worse than this? It is the worst road that I have ever seen.

4. In a larger city we shall see better roads than in this very small town.

5. More battles were fought by the Romans in summer than in winter.

6. In strength and knowledge of war this king surpasses the most skillful leaders.

7. How much larger and stronger were the Gauls than the Romans?

8. No honor greater than a triumph could be given to a Roman general.

9. What father can be more greatly pleased on account of his son's diligence?

10. Rome seemed to him very (much) like a temple.

473. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

According to directions previously given, list in your notebook the following words under the headings given below.

1. LATIN WORDS WHICH HAVE BECOME ENGLISH WITH NO CHANGE OF FORM

facile, vim, corona, victor, extra, superior, inferior, junior, senior, major, minor, plus, minus, maximum, minimum

2. ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN

Derivatives from **aequus, adversus, facilis, summus, manus**

3. Latin Words and Phrases Used in English

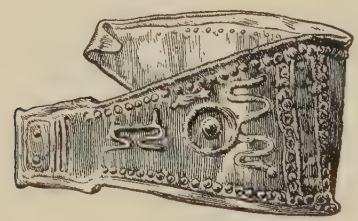
summā cum laude	in mediās rēs
summum bonum	cāsus bellī
Excelsior	in statū quō
nē plūs ūltrā	Larēs and Penātēs
S. P. Q. R.	

4. Third Declension Nouns in **-tās**
dīgnitās

5. Third Declension Nouns in **-tūdō**
fortitūdō

6. Third Declension Adjectives in **-ilis, -bilis**
facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis

7. Third Declension Adjectives in **-īlis, -āris, -ālis**
mīlitāris



Girdle Ornament Worn by a Roman Soldier

FABRICIUS ELEPHANTŌ NŌN TERRĒTUR

CHAPTER XLIX

THE INTEGRITY OF FABRICIUS

This story is another one of those belonging to the period of the war with Pyrrhus (Chapter XLVII). The name of Fabricius has always been a synonym for stern integrity and incorruptibility, as the incidents here related illustrate.

PREPARATION

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

474. A temporal subordinate clause (327) shows whether the action of the subordinate verb is before, after, or at the same time as the action of the main verb.

1. You have learned (328) that a temporal clause introduced by **dum,** *while,* has a verb in the present indicative, and

refers to a past event. In such a sentence the action of the subordinate clause is going on when the main action occurs.

2. Temporal subordinate clauses are introduced also by **ubi,** *when,* **postquam,** *after,* **simul atque** (**ac**), *as soon as,* and **priusquam,** *before,* as in the following sentences:

Cīvēs, ubi haec audīvērunt, māgnōpere commovēbantur. *When the citizens heard this, they were greatly disturbed.*

Postquam sīgnum datum est, mīlitēs proelium commīsērunt. *After the signal had been given, the soldiers began battle.*

Nūntius, simul atque haec dīxit, discessit. *As soon as the messenger said this, he departed.*

Rēx, priusquam vēnit, nūntium mīsit. *Before the king came, he sent a messenger.*

The parts of **prius quam,** *sooner than, before,* are sometimes separated, thus:

Hostēs nōn prius proelium commīsērunt, quam sīgnum datum est. *The enemy did not begin battle until (before) the signal was given.*

Notice

1. That a temporal clause introduced by **ubi, postquam,** or **simul atque** has a verb in the perfect indicative and expresses an action prior to that of a main verb in a past tense.

2. That in these clauses the perfect tense may be rendered by the English pluperfect, because these subordinate verbs express actions prior to those of main verbs in the past.

3. That a temporal clause introduced by **priusquam** has a verb in the perfect indicative expressing an action occurring after that of a main verb in a past tense.

4. That if these temporal clauses precede the main clause, a subject common to both clauses stands before the subordinate clause (**327**).

475. Rule of Syntax. — *A temporal clause introduced by* **ubi, postquam,** *or* **simul atque** *has a verb in the perfect indicative.*

476. Rule of Syntax. — *A temporal clause introduced by* **priusquam** *has a verb in the perfect indicative, if the main verb is in a past tense.*

477. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

obses, -idis, m. and f. (sedeō), *hostage*

ADJECTIVE

posterus, -a, -um (post), *next, following, later*

CONJUNCTIONS

postquam, *after*
priusquam, *before, sooner than*
ubi, *when*

VERBS

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, *become accustomed;* perfect tenses, *be accustomed*
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch*

ADVERBS

minus, *less*
simul, *at the same time, together;* **simul atque** (conj.), *as soon as*

478. **Dē Integritāte Fabricī**

Pyrrhus, postquam respōnsum illud [1] ā senātū Rōmānō eī datum est, ad urbem Tarentum [2] rediit, et in eā regiōne complūrēs annōs mānsit. Ōlim lēgātī ad eum ab urbe Rōmā dē obsidibus [3] vēnērunt, quī haec rēgī dīxērunt: "Nōs tibi obsidēs tuōs reddēmus, sī nōbīs abs tē nostrī reddentur." In hōc numerō lēgātōrum erat vir nōbilis et bonus et fortissimus, Gāius Fabricius nōmine, quem propter virtūtem integritātemque Rōmānī māgnōpere laudābant. Tōtam vītam autem pauper fuerat. Pyrrhus,[4] ubi haec audīvit, quod Fabricium temptāre volēbat, multās et pulcherrimās rēs eī ostendit, quās eī

dare cupiēbat; nūlla autem dōna Fabricius accipere volēbat. Tum rēx ab eō quaesīvit, "Cūr nūlla dōna accipere vīs? Mihi grātissimus es, et libenter[5] tē in Ēpīrum mēcum redūcam, et tibi quārtam partem rēgnī meī dabō!" Illī māximā dīgnitāte respondit Fabricius, "Sī meam integritātem sentīs, cūr mē temptāre cupis? Sī mē malum virum iūdicās, cūr mēcum habitāre vīs?"

A Roman Eagle Bearer

Posterō diē Pyrrhus eum subitō cōnspectū elephantī terrēre voluit. Itaque, ubi animal post aulaeum (*curtain*) cēlātum est, Pyrrhus sē et Fabricium prope eum locum posuit. Simul atque sīgnum ā Pyrrhō datum est, servī aulaeum remōvērunt et elephantum ostendērunt, quī strīdōrem (*noise*) horribilem fēcit et caput Fabricī proboscide (*trunk*) tetigit. Ille tamen nōn perterritus est, sed rīsit et Pyrrhō "Neque herī," inquit, "aurō tuō mē temptāre poterās, neque hodiē elephantō tuō terreor."

Haec facta sunt priusquam Fabricius ā populō Rōmānō cōnsul creātus est. Post paucōs annōs, dum cōnsul est, exercitum contrā Pyrrhum dūxit. Priusquam duo exercitūs proelium commīsērunt, medicus Pyrrhī ad castra Fabricī nocte vēnit et eī "Sī mihi," inquit, "māgnum praemium dederis, rēgem venēnō interficiam. Hoc quidem tibi grātum erit, et tālī modō Rōma ab hoste līberābitur quī eam diū perterruit." Fabricius, simul atque

haec verba audīvit, medicum perfidum in vinculīs ad Pyrrhum mīsit, et eōdem tempore nūntium, quī hās līterās portāvit: "Hic medicus tuus est nōn sōlum perfidus sed etiam stultus. Omnēs enim integritātem Rōmānōrum sentīre dēbent, quī nūllō modō nisi virtūte hostēs vincere cōnsuēvērunt. Medicus tuus gravissimē pūnīrī dēbet." Pyrrhus, postquam eās līterās lēgit, admīrātiōne commōtus est, et māgnā vōce clāmāvit, "Fabricius minus facile ab integritāte suā quam sōl ā cursū movērī potest!"

479. NOTES

1. See Chapter XLVII.

2. See 463, 1.

3. Hostages were people, generally sons of kings or other persons of importance in the state, given by each of two nations to the other as surety for the maintenance of peace, or fulfillment of agreements. Violation of a pledge by either party meant torture or death to its hostages at the hands of the other. Frequently, as in the present instance, an exchange of hostages was agreed upon.

4. Why does **Pyrrhus** stand first in this sentence? See 327. Watch for other instances of the same word order in this story.

5. See 35, 5.

480. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *course, edit, integrity, pauper, remove, venom.*

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

   a. Why was a *punitive* expedition sent by the government?

b. Tarpeia's *perfidy* was punished by death.
c. The two letters arrived *simultaneously*.
d. Failure results in a *diminution* of enthusiasm.
e. This is not a *venomous* snake.
f. *Minute* particles of dust are in the air.
g. His invention will benefit all *posterity*.

3. A *tangent* is a line touching a circle at one point; *tangible* evidence can be touched; a *contagious* disease is transmitted by touching; *contiguous* parts touch together; *tact* is a way of touching people; *contact* is a touching together.

4. The *minuend* is the number which is to be made less in the arithmetical process of subtraction; a *minister* is one who makes himself less and serves others.

5. An *excursion* is a running out; a *concourse* is a running together or gathering of persons, then a place where people gather; *cursive* handwriting is a running hand; a *course* is a running.

EXERCISES

481. Write a synopsis of **eō** in the third person plural; of **volō** in the third person singular.

482. In writing the following sentences in Latin carefully distinguish the prepositions *after* and *before* from the conjunctions of the same meaning. Classify each subordinate clause as adjective or adverbial.

1. After the king understood the danger, he greatly desired to make peace.

2. Before the battle, the soldiers armed themselves very carefully.

3. After this very bold deed, Mucius, whose right hand had been destroyed, was called Scaevola.

4. Before peace was made, these chiefs who had been conquered in battle were compelled to hand over their children as hostages.

5. As soon as this plan had been formed, Mucius very bravely decided to go.

6. Because Orpheus very eagerly desired to see his wife, he turned his head before the end of the journey.

483. Write in Latin:

1. While the enemy were crossing an unusually wide river, the Romans made a very fierce attack upon them.

2. The mountain on which the Romans pitched camp was many feet higher than this hill, which is one hundred feet high.

3. After the generals heard this story, they decided to begin battle without longer delay.

4. By these very swift ships this grain can be carried easily across the widest river within a shorter time.

5. As soon as the citizens caught sight of the procession, they shouted with much greater joy.

A Roman Altar

CHAPTER L

THE PUNIC WARS

The period of the Punic Wars (264–146 B.C.) is one of the most brilliant in the history of the Roman Republic. Rome was still a young and vigorous state, retaining the sturdy virtues of earlier years, and her desire for conquest had not yet brought her into contact with older civilizations from which she afterward absorbed much that was detrimental to her moral and social strength. Her victory over Carthage was gained by surmounting difficulties almost insuperable and overcoming the heaviest odds, and, as in the war with Pyrrhus, her courage never flagged, even when she suffered defeat after defeat at the hands of a foreign invader.

PREPARATION

Infinitives: Complementary, Objective, Subjective

484. Review the formation of the present infinitive active and passive in the four conjugations (318; 326, 3; 377, 4) with special attention to the third conjugation.

Conjugation	Present Infinitive Active	Present Infinitive Passive
I.	**amāre,** *to love*	**amārī,** *to be loved*
II.	**monēre,** *to advise*	**monērī,** *to be advised*
III.	**dūcere,** *to lead*	**dūcī,** *to be led*
IV.	**audīre,** *to hear*	**audīrī,** *to be heard*

485. The infinitive may be used like a noun, as the subject of a verb used impersonally, that is, one which has no personal subject. An infinitive so used is called a *subjective* infinitive. This construction is common in English.

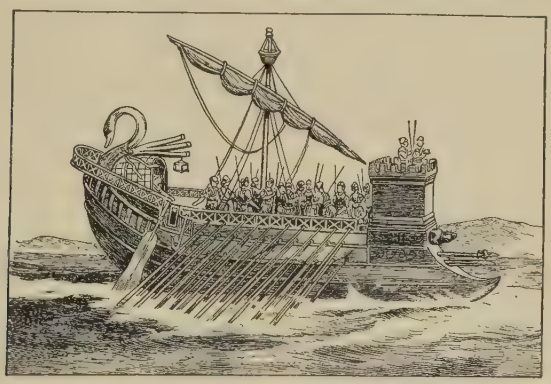
Study the following sentences:

1. **Legere est grātum.** *It is pleasant to read (to read is pleasant).*

2. **Montem ascendere difficile erat.** *It was difficult to ascend the mountain (to ascend the mountain was difficult).*

3. **Puerum īre necesse est.** *The boy must go (it is necessary that the boy go).*

The infinitives **legere, ascendere,** and **īre** are used as neuter nouns, subjects of the verbs **est** and **erat,** which are used



Nāvis Rōmāna

impersonally. The predicate adjectives **grātum, difficile,** and **necesse** are neuter nominative singular to agree with those subjects. **Ascendere** (2) has a direct object **montem. Legere** (1) and **ascendere** (2) have no subjects, as the sentences do not indicate who performs the action; **īre** (3) has a subject **puerum,** which is in the accusative case.

486. Rule of Syntax. — *The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.*

487. You have already learned that some verbs, requiring another action of the same subject to complete their meaning,

take a *complementary* infinitive (318), which has no subject accusative, because the doer of the action of the infinitive is the subject of the main verb.

488. In the sentence, **Imperātor agrōs vāstārī iūssit,** *The general ordered the fields to be laid waste,* the words **agrōs vāstārī** tell what the general ordered and are the object of **iūssit,** and **vāstārī** is an *objective* infinitive. **Agrōs** is not the object of **iūssit,** but the *subject* of the infinitive **vāstārī.** The general did not order the fields, but he ordered the fields to be laid waste. As shown by the sentence, **Imperātor virōs agrōs vāstāre iūssit,** *The general ordered the men to lay waste the fields,* the action of the objective infinitive (**vāstāre**) is done by a subject (**virōs**) different from the subject (**imperātor**) of the main verb.

The objective infinitive is common with such verbs as **cōgō,** *force, compel,* **iubeō,** *order,* and **prohibeō,** *prevent.* A few verbs, as **cupiō** and **volō,** may take either a complementary or an objective infinitive.

Vir fīdus esse cupit. *The man desires to be faithful.*

Vir fīlium fīdum esse cupit. *The man wishes his son to be faithful.*

489. Observe the following points:

1. A complementary infinitive has no subject accusative, because it expresses another action of the same subject as that of the main verb.

2. An objective infinitive always has a subject accusative, because it expresses an action of a doer different from the subject of the main verb.

3. A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive is in the nominative (318, 3), while a predicate adjective after an objective infinitive is in the accusative.

4. A subjective infinitive may or may not have a subject accusative.

490. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

VERBS

iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus, *order, bid*
ōdī, ōdisse, *hate*
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (faciō), *accomplish, finish, carry out*
sciō, -īre, scīvī *or* **sciī, scītus** (scientia), *know, know how*
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (sub + capiō), *undertake*

NOUN

ūsus, -ūs, m. (ūtilis), *use, advantage, experience*

ADJECTIVES

necesse (indecl.), *necessary*
neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither of two* (359)
quattuor, *four* (388)
vīgintī, *twenty* (388)

491. **Dē Bellīs Pūnicīs**

Postquam Pyrrhus ex Ītaliā discessit et Rōma domina tōtīus Ītaliae facta est,[1] aliud et gravius bellum ab ēius cīvibus cum Carthāginiēnsibus susceptum est. Carthāginiēnsēs, quī Poenī quoque appellābantur, quod ā Phoenīciā[2] ad Āfricam trānsierant, māgnam et pulcherrimam urbem, Carthāginem[3] nōmine, māgnāsque dīvitiās habuērunt, et scientiā rērum nāvālium omnēs reliquās gentēs superābant.

Per centum annōs tribus bellīs Rōmānī contrā eōs contendērunt. Difficillimum erat hostēs tam perītōs vincere, Rōmānī enim paucās nāvēs habēbant, neque ūsum nāvium sciēbant; necesse tamen erat in marī pūgnāre, nam prīmum bellum quattuor et vīgintī annōs prope Siciliam[4] gerēbātur. Quam ob rem Rōmānī nāvēs aedi-

HANNIBAL DIFFICILLIMUM ITER IN ĪTALIAM FACIT

ficāvērunt, simillimās nāvī Carthāginiēnsī quam frāctam (*wrecked*) in lītore invēnerant, et novō modō [5] bellī sē meliōrēs hostibus ostendērunt. Ubi pāx cōnfīrmāta est, Poenī tōtam Siciliam māgnāsque pecūniās trādere coāctī sunt. Sicilia statim prīma prōvincia Rōmāna facta est.

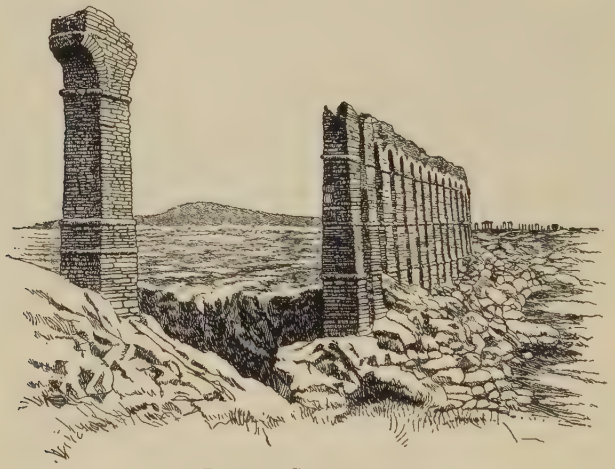
Sed neutrī urbī pāx diū grāta erat. Prīncipēs Carthāginis Rōmānōs vehementissimē ōderant,[6] et Rōmānī plūrēs terrās vincere cupiēbant. Hamilcar, dux Carthāginiēnsis, dum in Hispāniā [7] pūgnat, fīlium suum Hannibalem, puerum quī novem annōs nātus est, contrā Rōmānōs iūrāre (*take an oath*) coēgit. Ille post patris mortem imperātor exercitūs Carthāginiēnsis factus est, et contrā Rōmānōs in Ītaliā ipsā pūgnāre cōnstituit. Per

Hispāniam et Galliam in Ītaliam īre volēbat. Difficillimum erat hoc iter facere, nam altissimōs montēs flūminaque lātissima [8] mīlitēs trānsīre et per gentēs hostīlīs īre necesse erat. Sed nūllī cāsūs Hannibalem cōnsilium perficere prohibēre poterant. Tandem, postquam māgnam partem exercitūs āmīsit, in Ītaliam pervēnit, et complūribus proeliīs Rōmānōs vīcit. Tum quidem in urbe Rōmā erat dolor et timor māximus. Ūnā vōce cīvēs clāmāvērunt: "Dictātōrem [9] creāre dēbēmus; necesse est nōs hōc perīculō līberārī!" Itaque Quīntus Fabius ā senātū dictātor creātus est. Ēius cōnsiliō nūlla proelia facta sunt; "Morā sōlā," inquit, "Hannibalis exercitus vincī poterit." [10] Sed cōnsul, cuī hoc cōnsilium nōn grātum erat, proelium cum Hannibale posteā commīsit et superātus est.[11] · Eō diē multa mīlia Rōmānōrum interfecta sunt. Tandem, postquam senātus Scīpiōnem bellum in Āfricā contrā Carthāginiēnsīs gerere iūssit, Hannibal ad urbem suam revocātus est et proeliō victus est ā Scīpiōne.[12] Iterum Poenī māgnās pecūniās terrāsque multās[13] Rōmānīs trādere coāctī sunt; urbs tamen eōrum nōn dēlēta est.

ROSTRA NĀVIUM CARTHĀGINIĒNSIUM

Multī Rōmānī Scīpiōnem graviter culpāvērunt quod Carthāgō, urbs tam potēns et Rōmae tam inimīca nōn

dēlēta erat. Etiam post quīnquāgintā[14] annōs multī contrā eam urbem exercitum mittī cupiēbant. In hōc numerō erat Catō senex, quī Poenōs vehementer ōderat et cotīdiē in senātū ōrātiōnis suae fīnem hīs verbīs faciēbat: "Dēlenda est Carthāgō!"[15] Tandem senātus imperātōrem[16] in Āfricam īre atque Carthāginem capere et



RUĪNAE CARTHĀGINIS

dēlēre iūssit. Incolae urbem suam fortissimē dēfendērunt, sed frūstrā. Postquam māgna praeda capta est et multī interfectī sunt, urbs īgnī dēlēta est, et locus ubi Carthāgō fuerat arātrō arātus est.

492. NOTES

1. See Chapter XLIX.

2. Locate Phoenicia on the map. This was one of the oldest Mediterranean countries. Its people were noted for their activity in navigation, commerce, and colonization.

3. Locate Carthage on the map. It was one of the most important Phoenician colonies.

4. Locate Sicily on the map. Both Carthage and Rome wished to gain possession of this island.

5. The Romans invented a device for lowering a drawbridge from their ships to the decks of the enemy's vessels; by means of this drawbridge they could cross to a hand-to-hand conflict with the enemy, a kind of fighting in which the Romans excelled.

6. This verb has in the perfect the meaning of the present, in the pluperfect the meaning of the imperfect, and in the future perfect the meaning of the future.

7. Carthage had many colonies in Spain, and was eagerly strengthening her power there as a preliminary to renewing hostilities with Rome.

8. The passage of the Rhone River and the Alps mountains was especially difficult.

9. See **306,** 3.

10. Fabius' idea was to cut off the enemy's supplies, and wear out the foe without risking battle. Because of this policy he was called **Cūnctātor,** *the delayer.* The term "Fabian policy" is still used to mean a policy of delay.

11. This was the battle of Cannae, one of the worst defeats ever incurred by Rome.

12. The name **Āfricānus** was given him in honor of this victory.

13. Spain was at this time surrendered to Rome, and was made by her into two provinces.

14. The ending **-gintā** denotes a multiple of ten (compare with **vīgintī**). What does this word mean?

15. This is another way of saying **Necesse est Carthāginem dēlērī.**

16. This was the younger Scipio, the grandson by adoption of the elder Scipio. The name **Āfricānus** was given to him also in recognition of the destruction of Carthage, and the words **Māior** and **Minor** were added to distinguish the two men.

493. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words are very similar to their Latin originals: *invent, naval, neuter, use.*

2. What is *omniscience* (**287,** 3)? *prescience* (**382,** 10)? What kind of action is expressed by the *perfect* tense?

3. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. *Necessity* is the mother of *invention.*

b. Our plans have not been *perfected.*

c. Comparisons are *odious.*

d. *Neutrality* is difficult to maintain.

EXERCISES

494. Give all possible translations of the following forms, and for each present infinitive give the Latin form of the opposite voice:

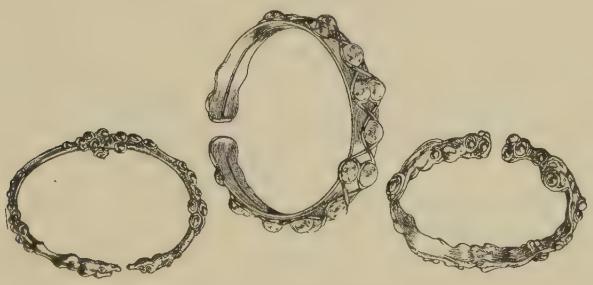
iacī	posuī	dēfendī	tetigī
pōnere	cēpī	coepī	incendī
iēcī	capī	cōgī	potuī
vīcī	dīxī	coēgī	pūnīre
vincere	tangī	scīre	rapuī
fēcī	scrīpsī	mīsī	rapī
dīcī	scrībī	cōnstituī	iūvī
audīrī	mittere	vidērī	iuvārī

495. Complete the following sentences and write above each infinitive *S* or *O* or *C* to indicate whether it is subjective, objective, or complementary.

1. Dare est meli— quam accipere.
2. Imperātor exercit— proelium committere iūssit.
3. Tribūn— plēbem iuvāre dēbet.
4. Omnēs hominēs līber— esse volunt.
5. Laudāre est facil— et laudārī est grātissim—.
6. Captīvī līberā— cupiēba—.
7. Nēmō culpā— vult.
8. Bon— est miserōs iuvāre.
9. Discipul— verba magistrī memoriā tenēre dēbent.

496. Write in Latin:

1. Who can prevent our leader from carrying out his plans?
2. The leader wishes the soldiers to be skillful, because the forces of the enemy are said to be large.
3. The soldier ought to be brave, because the general wishes him to be brave.
4. All men ought to wish their friends to be set free from danger.
5. For many days the Romans could not compel the enemy to contend in battle.



GALLIC BRACELETS

CHAPTER LI

THE HONOR OF REGULUS

The later Romans proudly honored Regulus, whom they regarded as a typical Roman embodying the highest qualities of Roman character. He was famous not only for his heroic loyalty to his country, but also for the simplicity of his life. His high sense of honor was in contrast to what the Romans called **Pūnica fidēs,** *Punic faith*, an expression frequently used by them as a synonym for faithlessness, showing their estimate of this trait of the Carthaginians.

PREPARATION

GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE.
COMPOUNDS OF **volō: nōlō** AND **mālō.** SUBORDINATE CLAUSES WITH **sī** AND **nisi**

497. 1. Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive of the word expressing the whole to which that part belongs. Nouns, words denoting number, superlative and comparative adjectives, and many neuter words denoting quantity, are included in this construction. Notice in the following phrases the genitives and the words upon which they depend.

Pars eōrum, *part of them* (noun)

Māior nātū duōrum frātrum, *the older of the two brothers* (comparative adjective)

Fortissimus mīlitum, *the bravest of the soldiers* (superlative adjective)

Tria mīlia mīlitum, *three thousand soldiers* (389) (word expressing number)

Satis cibī, *enough* (*of*) *food* (noun of quantity)

Nihil perīculī, *no danger* (*nothing of danger*) (noun of quantity)

Note that this use of the genitive is in most cases exactly like English, but with **satis, nihil,** and some other words of quantity, English usage prefers an adjective modifier.

2. With cardinal numerals, except **mīlia,** and with **quīdam,** *a certain one,* the ablative with **dē** or **ex** is more commonly used than the genitive of the whole.

Ūnus dē mīlitibus, *one of the soldiers*

Quīdam ē senātōribus, *a certain one of the senators*

3. Remember that the genitive of the whole can be used only after words denoting some part of that whole. Consequently words like **cūnctus, omnis,** and **tōtus,** which mean the whole, cannot be followed by the genitive, as they sometimes are in English.

498. Rule of Syntax. — *Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive of the whole to which that part belongs.*

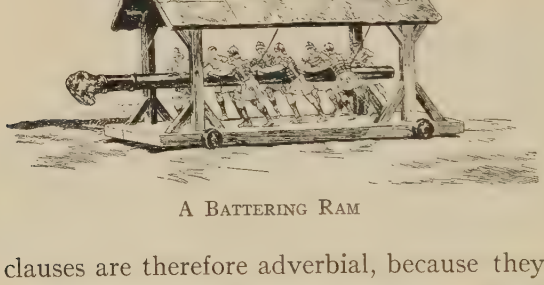
499. 1. Learn from Appendix **606** the conjugation of **nōlō,** *be unwilling,* in the indicative and imperative, and of **mālō,** *prefer,* in the indicative. These verbs are compounds of **volō. Nōlō** is **nōn** + **volō; mālō** is **magis** (458, 2) + **volō.** Note that the irregularity of these verbs occurs in the present tense, and that the imperfect and future tenses follow the model of the third conjugation.

2. **Nōlō** and **mālō,** like **volō,** may be followed by a complementary infinitive or an objective infinitive. **Nōlī** and **nōlīte,** the imperatives of **nōlō,** with a complementary infinitive, are used to express *negative commands.*

Nōlī īre. *Don't go* (*be unwilling to go*).

Nōlīte id dīcere. *Don't say that* (*be unwilling to say that*).

500. The conjunctions **sī,** *if*, and **nisi,** *if not, unless*, have already often been used to introduce subordinate clauses in the Latin you have read. These clauses are called *conditional* clauses, because they state the conditions or circumstances in which the action expressed by the main clause is true. Con-



A Battering Ram

ditional clauses are therefore adverbial, because they modify the verb of the main clause. An indicative verb may be used in any tense in a conditional clause, depending on the meaning of the sentence. Especially common are the present, future, and future perfect.

Present: **" Sī meam integritātem sentīs, cūr mē temptāre cupis? "** (Chapter XLIX)

Perfect: **Sī id dīxit, errāvit.** *If he said that, he was mistaken.*

Future: **" Castra hostium intrāre volō, sī poterō."** (Chapter XLV)

Future Perfect: **" Sī iterum eōdem modō vīcerō, sōlus in Ēpīrum redībō."** (Chapter XLVII)

" Numquam in mātrimōnium dūcar, nisi cursū victa erō." (Chapter XXXIX)

The Latin future and future perfect in conditional clauses are best translated in English by the present. In English the future tenses are not ordinarily used after *if*, even to refer to future time, but the use of tenses in Latin is much more exact.

501. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

nihil (indecl.), n., *nothing*

VERBS

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (faciō), *bring about, effect, complete*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break, crush*

VERBS (*Continued*)

mālō, mālle, māluī, — (volō), *wish rather, prefer*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (volō), *be unwilling*

ADJECTIVE

satis (indecl.), *enough* (also adv.)

502. **Dē Fidē Rēgulī**

Dum Rōmānī bellum Pūnicum prīmum gerunt, Rēgulus, ūnus ē cōnsulibus, Poenōs māgnā pūgnā nāvālī superāvit. Senātōrēs autem Rōmānī inter sē[1] dīcēbant: "Satis victōriae numquam reportābimus, nisi Carthāginem ipsam cēperimus." Simul atque hoc temptāre cōnstituērunt, Rēgulus et Vulsō, alter cōnsul, in Āfricam prīmī ducum Rōmānōrum cum exercitū trānsiērunt. Postquam cōnsulēs Poenōs plūrimīs proeliīs superāvērunt, Vulsō cum parte mīlitum in Ītaliam rediit atque vīgintī septem mīlia captīvōrum redūxit. Rēgulus trēs ē Poenīs ducibus vīcit et Carthāginiēnsēs pācem petere coēgit. Sevērissimās autem condiciōnēs Rēgulī accipere nōn grātum erat Poenīs. "Nisi," inquit Rēgulus, "hās condiciōnēs accipere vultis, pācem dare nōlō." Poenī igitur, quod bellum gerere quam condiciōnēs Rēgulī accipere mālēbant, ā Lacedaemoniīs[2] auxilium petīvērunt. A duce Lacedaemoniō perītissimō nōn sōlum exercitus Rōmānus victus est, sed etiam Rēgulus ipse captus est atque in vincula iactus est.

RĒGULUS AD URBEM CARTHĀGINEM REDIT

Paucīs post annīs [3] Poenī iterum dē pāce agere [4] coāctī sunt. Deinde Rēgulum cum lēgātīs Poenīs ad urbem Rōmam īre iūssērunt atque ā senātū pācem et commūtātiōnem captīvōrum petere. Rēgulus, priusquam ex Āfricā discessit, Carthāginiēnsibus, "Nisi," inquit, "commūtātiōnem captīvōrum effēcerō, ego ipse ad vōs redībō," quae verba iūreiūrandō cōnfīrmāvit. Rēgulus, ubi in senātum Rōmānum cum lēgātīs inductus [5] est et mandāta eōrum nārrāvit, sententiam suam dare prīmō nōluit. "Neque senātor," inquit, "neque cīvis Rōmānus sum ex illō diē quō in potestātem Poenōrum vēnī." Tandem autem, postquam senātōrēs eum dīcere iūssērunt, respondit, "Nōlīte pācem cum Poenīs cōnfīrmāre. Illī, quod tot cāsibus bellī frāctī sunt, nūllam spem victōriae habent.

Multō ūtilius est Rōmānīs captīvōs retinēre. Captīvī Poenī enim iuvenēs et ducēs bonī sunt. Propter mē, quī senex sum, et paucōs Rōmānōs quī captī sunt, tot mīlia captīvōrum Poenōrum reddere nōn dēbēmus. Exemplum quoque malum erit, si populus Rōmānus, potentissimus omnium populōrum, captīvōs redimet." Propter auctōritātem Rēgulī captīvī ā Rōmānīs retentī sunt.

Dum haec in senātū geruntur, uxor līberīque Rēgulī et propinquī amīcīque multī convēnērunt. Hī omnēs cum senātōribus Rēgulum in patriā manēre vehementissimē cupiēbant. Hoc autem facere nōlēbat, sed cum lēgātīs redīre mālēbat. "Ego," inquit, "quī captīvus Poenōrum factus sum, nihil dīgnitātis cīvis Rōmānī habēre iam possum. Quod fidem dedī et iūreiūrandō meō teneor, redībō."

Rēgulus, postquam ad urbem Carthāginem rediit, ā Poenīs necātus est. Tālī modō Rēgulus, quī fidem quam vītam servāre māluit, exemplum fideī Rōmānae dēmōnstrāvit et mors ēius clārior erat quam ipsa vīta clārissima.

503. NOTES

1. See **413**, 3.

2. The Lacedaemonians or Spartans of southeastern Greece were famous for their skill in warfare.

3. Note that **post** is here an adverb and that **paucīs annīs** is ablative of degree of difference. See **453**, 8. The whole expression is another form of **post paucōs annōs.**

4. **Agere** with **dē** and the ablative means to *treat* about something.

5. Determine the meaning of this word from **in** and **dūcō**, its two parts.

CARTHĀGŌ ANTĪQUA

504. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. **Frangō** has given many words to the English language. *Fragments* are broken pieces; to *fracture* a bone is to break it; a *fraction* is a part, or fragment, of a whole number; a *fragile* thing is easily broken (**292**).

2. *Effect*, from **efficiō**, means that which is brought about; *effectual* or *effective* measures are those which bring about desired results; an *efficient* person is one who can carry things through and bring about results.

3. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. That piece of work is entirely *satisfactory*.

b. One can be *satisfied* without becoming *satiated*.

c. The government has set the date for the *redemption* of its bonds.

d. The judge will pronounce *sentence* on the criminal.

e. He is much given to *sententious* sayings.

4. **Nihil**, *nothing*, is often contracted to **nīl**, and that form is used in English, as in, *The value of that document is nil.* What is a *nihilist?*

EXERCISES

505. 1. Time yourself in giving the complete conjugation of **volō**, of **nōlō**, of **mālō**.

2. Give the Latin for the following sentences, and tell which use of the infinitive is illustrated in each.

a. We are not willing to go.

b. Do not go away.

c. I prefer to return.

d. We wish to be heard.

e. Do not (plur.) say this to him.

f. You (sing.) will wish to see her.

g. He does not wish me to go.

h. Are they willing to be advised?
i. Don't you (plur.) prefer to walk?
j. He will prefer to carry those things.

506. Give the Latin for the following phrases:

1. A large number of horsemen
2. A thousand horsemen
3. Ten thousand horsemen
4. The larger part of the army
5. The first of the Roman kings
6. No grain (*two ways*)
7. Enough liberty
8. One of these islands
9. Many of the citizens
10. Many citizens
11. No ships (*two ways*)
12. Enough soldiers
13. The whole of the city
14. All of us

507. Give the Latin for the italicized verbs in the conditional clauses of the following sentences:

1. If my friend *is* now *here*, I will ask him for the book.
2. If my friend *is here* to-morrow, we shall go for a walk.
3. If he *is able*, he will go to the lecture to-night.
4. If you *give* me the letter, I will post it.
5. If you *hear* what I am saying, please answer me.
6. Unless the Romans *wish* to be conquered, they must fight bravely.
7. They will not receive this letter in time, if I *do* not *send* it before night.

CHAPTER LII

THE GRACCHI

After the close of the Punic Wars (Chapter L), the wealth of Rome was increased by vast acquisitions of treasure and of land. This new wealth benefited mainly the rich class by whom the greater part of the land was held. The small farmers were gradually losing their lands and crowding into the cities. It is said that Tiberius Gracchus resolved to devote his life to the relief of this condition when, on a journey through Etruria, he saw the distress of the peasant farmers who had been displaced by the barbarian slaves of the great landowners.

PREPARATION

Expressions of Place. Locative Case

508. Learn the declension of **domus,** *house, home* (Appendix **584**), which has forms of both the second and the fourth declensions.

509. Review carefully section **158,** in which was explained the regular method of expressing place *where,* place *to which,* and place *from which* with prepositions. But with names of cities and towns, and with **domus,** *home,* **rūs,** *the country,* and **humus,** *ground,* no prepositions are used in expressing place.

1. The ablative of these words without a preposition is used to express place *from which.*

Domō discessit. *He went away from home.*
Rōmā vēnit. *He came from Rome.*

2. The accusative of these words without a preposition is used to express place *to which.*

Domum rediit. *He returned home.*
Rūs iit. *He went to the country.*

3. Place *where,* with these words, is expressed by a case form called the *locative* (**locus**).

Rōmae habitat. *He lives in Rome.*
Domī sum hodiē. *I am at home to-day.*

The locative case endings are as follows:

Declension	Singular	Plural
I.	**-ae**	**-īs**
II.	**-ī**	**-īs**
III.	**-e** (**-ī**)	**-ibus**

Note that the singular ending in the first and second declensions is like the genitive, in the third declension singular and in plural forms of all declensions it is like the dative or ablative. The locative of **domus** is **domī,** following the second declension form.

510. Rules of Syntax

With names of cities and towns, **domus,** home, **humus,** ground, *and* **rūs,** the country,

1. *To express place where the locative case is used instead of the ablative with the preposition* **in.**

2. *To express place to which the accusative is used, but without the preposition* **in** *or* **ad.**

3. *To express place from which the ablative is used, but without the preposition* **ab, dē,** *or* **ex.**

511. The following adverbs of place should be carefully distinguished and learned. Those starred have been given in previous vocabularies.

PLACE FROM WHICH —

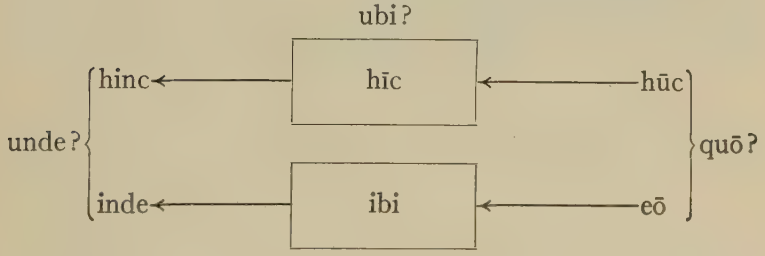
inde, *thence* **hinc,** *hence* * **unde,** *whence* (relative or interrogative)

PLACE WHERE —

ibi, *there* **hīc,** *here* * **ubi,** *where* (relative or interrogative)

PLACE TO WHICH —

eō, *thither* **hūc,** *hither* * **quō,** *whither* (relative or interrogative)



512. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUNS

domus, -ūs or **-ī** (domicilium), f., *home, house, family*
lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*
portus, -ūs, m. (dat. and abl. plur. **portubus**), *port, harbor*

VERB

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut down, kill*

ADVERBS

eō, *thither, to that place*
hūc, *hither, to this place*
ibi, *there, in that place*
inde, *thence, from that place*
sīc, *so, in this manner*
māximē (māgnōpere), *very greatly, especially*

513. Dē Gracchīs

Dē tribūnō plēbis, cūius officium erat omnia iūra plēbis dēfendere contrā potestātem potentiōrum cīvium, anteā lēgistī.[1] Inter omnēs tribūnōs plēbis clārissimī fuērunt Tiberius Semprōnius Gracchus ēiusque frāter minor nātū Gāius Semprōnius Gracchus, fīliī Semprōnī Gracchī, virī nōbilissimī, et Cornēliae, ēius uxōris. Cornēlia, nōbilis mātrōna Rōmāna, fīlia erat Scīpiōnis Africānī, ā quō Poenī, quī Carthāginī habitābant, superātī sunt.[2]

Optima māter erat Cornēlia, quae nōn sōlum fīliōs suōs māximē amābat, sed etiam eōs bene ēducārī māgnōpere cupiēbat. Cornēlia ipsa linguae Graecae scientiam habēbat atque omnibus artibus optimīs (*fine arts*) docta erat. Quam ob rem nūntium mittere cōnstituit, quī līterās multa mīlia passuum portāvit. Prīmum per Viam Appiam[3] Rōmā Brundisium iter fēcit, unde ad portum Graeciae nāvigāvit et Athēnās celeriter properāvit. Deinde nūntius Athēnīs celeberrimōs doctōrēs quī ibi habitābant quaesīvit, quibus līterās Cornēliae trādidit. Ūnus ex hīs doctōribus, postquam sīc vocātus est, longissimum iter Athēnīs Rōmam fēcit. Itaque fīliī Cornēliae et domī et in lūdō ab optimīs doctōribus magistrīsque et Graecīs et Rōmānīs docēbantur.

Per hiemem familia Gracchī Rōmae habitābat, sed aestāte Semprōnius Gracchus et Cornēlia cum fīliīs duōbus inde discēdēbant et rūs ībant, ubi in vīllā suā complūrēs mēnsēs agēbant. Ōlim, dum rūrī manent, mātrōna quae in vīllā fīnitimā habitābat Cornēliam vīsitāvit. Haec

"Haec Sunt Mea Ōrnāmenta"

fīnitima, dum inter sē dīcunt, multās gemmās suās atque multa ōrnāmenta ostendēbat et ōrnāmenta Cornēliae vidēre vehementissimē cupiēbat.

Eō ipsō tempore Tiberius et Gāius, quī domō cum paedagōgō [4] māne exierant, domum rediērunt. Cornēlia puerīs, "Hūc," inquit, "venīte," et postquam mātrōnam fīnitimam salūtāvērunt, "Haec," inquit, "sunt mea ōrnāmenta. Tua ōrnāmenta sunt pulchra, sed tē sōlam exōrnant. Mea ōrnāmenta ad ūsum cīvitātis ēducāvī, et mē satis exōrnant, sī reī pūblicae [5] ūtilia sunt."

Tiberius et Gāius, ubi togam virīlem [6] accēpērunt et cīvēs Rōmānī factī sunt, amīcissimī erant plēbī et pauperibus. Tiberius, ōrātor perītus, postquam grātiam populī conciliāvit, tribūnus plēbis creātus est et agrōs pūblicōs

plēbī dīvidere[7] volēbat. Agrōs autem plēbī dīvidī nōn grātum erat senātōribus, quī Tiberium ōderant et eum tribūnum plēbis iterum[8] creārī prohibēre cupiēbant. Dum cīvēs inter sē in viīs vī contendunt, Tiberius, quī eō vēnerat, interfectus est. Gāius quoque paucīs post annīs, ubi tribūnus plēbis creātus est, frūmentum et agrōs plēbī dare volēbat. Deinde, quod senātus cōnsulēs rem pūblicam perīculō līberāre iūsserat,[9] Gāius fugere coāctus est, et dum fugit occīsus est.

Semper posteā populus Rōmānus māximam grātiam Gracchīs habēbat, et prō tantīs beneficiīs statuās duōrum frātrum et Cornēliae mātris eōrum Rōmae collocāvit. In Cornēliae monumentō nōmen nūllum, sed haec duo verba, "Māter Gracchōrum," scrīpta sunt.

514. NOTES

1. Read again **322**, 2 and 3.
2. See Chapter L.
3. See **245**.
4. See **70**, 6.

5. **Rēs pūblica** (*public affair*) is used as one word to mean the commonwealth, the republic. Both parts of the word are declined.

6. See **452**.

7. Tiberius secured the enactment of an agrarian law renewing the provision of an old law that limited the amount of land which might be held by a single owner.

8. In order to carry on his reforms for the benefit of the poor, Tiberius attempted by illegal methods to secure his re-election as tribune.

9. In times of public peril the senate had the authority to invest the consuls with power to execute a dangerous citizen.

515. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words have very nearly the same form in English as in Latin: *port*, *doctor* (356, 5), *orator* (333, 4), *republic*.

2. From **domus** the Latin adjective **domesticus** (114, 2) is made, which gives us the English words *domestic* and *domesticate*. Define these words.

3. *Rural* districts are country districts; *rustic* (Latin **rūsticus**, 114, 2) fences or buildings are those supposed to imitate such as are seen in the country; in some country places summer visitors are called "*rusticators*."

4. A *linguist* is a person versed in languages; a person who can speak two tongues or languages is called *bi-lingual*; *linguals* are those consonants made with the tongue, as *t*, *d*. The slang expression *lingo* is another form of **lingua**.

EXERCISES

516. Write in Latin the following phrases:

1. At home, in Rome, in Gaul, in the country, in the city, in Athens, in Carthage, in the city (of) Rome, on the long journey, on the ground.

2. From Rome, out of Italy, down from the hill, from Athens, from Greece, from Carthage, out of the city (of) Rome, away from home, from these islands.

3. To the country, to the city (of) Carthage, to Carthage, to Rome, to my house, home, into Italy, to the ground, to the Forum.

517. Answer each of the following questions in six ways, (1) with two adverbs of place, (2) with the proper form of each of the following nouns, **domus, Rōma, rūs, Ītalia.**

1. Ubi est frāter tuus hodiē?
2. Quō amīcus tuus herī iter fēcit?
3. Unde eōs librōs portās?

518. Translate the following and explain all the words expressing place:

Rōmam paucīs post diēbus vēnimus. Cum amīcīs paucīs **hūc** vēnimus. **Rōmae** sunt multa templa. **Hīc** Forum vidēbimus. Brevī tempore **hinc** discēdēmus, et **Athēnās** ībimus. Amīcī nōbīscum **eō** nōn ībunt. **Ibi** paucōs diēs manēbimus, et alia templa, quae **Athēnīs** sunt, vīsitābimus. **Inde rūs** iter faciēmus. **Rūrī** multōs amīcōs habēmus.

519. Write in Latin:

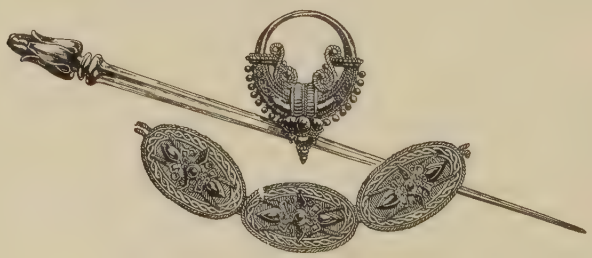
1. While we were in Rome, many captives were brought there from Carthage.

2. The army which has been fighting all summer in Gaul will return thence in a few days.

3. Come here, children; walk with me to the Forum, and there we will look at the great ruins.

4. Have you been here a long time? We came here from the country yesterday, and from here we shall go home.

5. After Regulus came to Rome, his friends wished him to remain there, but he returned to Africa, and was killed in Carthage.



Roman Jewelry

The Appian Way as It Is To-day

CHAPTER LIII

REVIEW. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

520. VOCABULARY REVIEW

The following words are those given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters XLIX–LII. You should be able to give the vocabulary forms correctly and rapidly.

cōnsuēscō	ibi	minus
domus	inde	necesse
efficiō	iubeō	neuter
eō (adv.)	lingua	nihil
frangō	mālō	nōlō
hūc	māximē	obses

occīdō	priusquam	suscipiō
ōdī	quattuor	tangō
perficiō	satis	ubi (conj.)
portus	sciō	ūsus
posterus	sīc	vīgintī
postquam	simul (atque)	

521. REVIEW OF INFLECTION

1. What words are combined with **volō** to make the compounds **nōlō** and **mālō?** How is the form of these words changed in making the combination? Give the present tense of each of these three verbs; the future of **nōlō;** the imperfect of **mālō.**

2. In the first and second declensions what case endings are used for the locative in the singular? In the third declension? What case ending is always used in the plural? Give the locative of **Rōma, Carthāgō, rūs, domus, Athēnae.**

3. Decline **domus.**

522. REVIEW OF SYNTAX

1. How many conjunctions do you know that are used to introduce temporal clauses? Give the meaning of each, and the tense of the verb that is used with it, and tell what time relation to the main verb is expressed by each.

2. What uses of the infinitive have you learned? In which of these uses may the infinitive have a subject different from that of the main verb? In what case is the subject of an infinitive? In which use of the infinitive is an accusative subject always found? Which kind never has an accusative subject? Why? Name at least ten verbs which may be followed by a complementary infinitive. You have studied seven verbs which may take the objective infinitive; can you name them? What ones of these seven may also be used

with a complementary infinitive? How does one tell which kind is used in a given sentence? What kind of verb may have an infinitive as its subject? What form is used of a predicate adjective referring to a subjective infinitive? How are negative commands expressed in Latin?

3. What meaning have words that are followed by the genitive of the whole? What forms of adjectives may take this construction? Give two indeclinable words denoting quantity which take this construction. What substitute for the genitive of the whole commonly follows cardinal numerals? Is there any exception? After what Latin words must you be careful not to follow the English construction which uses the genitive of the whole?

MINERVA

4. What conjunctions are used to introduce conditional clauses? What tenses of the verb may be used in these clauses? What important difference is there between Latin and English in the use of tenses in conditional clauses?

5. With what words is there an exception to the regular rules for expression of ideas of place? In which relations does the exception consist merely in the omission of the preposition? In which one is a different case used? Give three adverbs which express place *where*, three that express place *from which*, three that express place *to which*.

EXERCISES

523. Give the Latin for the italicized words and phrases in the following:

1. *The larger part of the army* has been sent back *to Rome.*
2. *In the whole of Gaul* there were *a hundred thousand soldiers.*
3. *One of these generals* attacked the town and seized *all the booty* which he found *there.*
4. The general chose *the bravest of his soldiers* and sent them *here* to help us.
5. There is *no grain here,* but we have *enough food at home.*
6. Caesar hastened *from Rome into Gaul with a large number of foot-soldiers.*
7. I have brought *from home the better of the two books;* I am going *to the country,* and will take it *there* with me.
8. *Three of our legions* were attacked *in the town,* and they escaped *thence* with great difficulty.
9. *A few of the children* are *at home,* but *one of the girls* is *in the country.*
10. *On the ground* I see a large rock; *where* did it come *from?*

524. Write in Latin:

1. While Pyrrhus was waging war for so many years in Italy, he lost a greater number of soldiers than the Romans (did).
2. Before Appius Claudius began to deliver his speech, the senate was beginning to wish to make peace.
3. When the senators heard the bold speech of the blind old man, they ordered the ambassadors to reply to Pyrrhus with the same words.

4. If the king himself decides to come to Rome with his army, it will be necessary for the citizens to fight very bravely.

5. Our legions ought not to pitch camp in such a place, unless they are willing to withstand a sudden attack of the enemy.

6. After we had come from Carthage to Athens, we stayed there four days, and then went from there to Rome.

7. I shall send a few of my best legions home, for the city must be defended from very fierce enemies.

8. The Romans forced the Carthaginians to give over their noblest young men (as) hostages, after they had been conquered in a great naval battle.

9. The entreaties of many of Regulus' friends could not prevent him from returning to Carthage.

10. As soon as Regulus had arrived there, he was killed by his enemies.

525. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

List the following in your notebook according to directions given in previous review lessons.

1. Latin Words Which Have Become English with No Change of Form

pauper, nil, neuter, doctor, orator

2. English Words Derived from Latin

Derivatives from **tangō, satis, frangō**

3. Latin Words and Phrases Used in English

facile prīnceps	quot hominēs, tot sententiae
semper idem	hodiē mihi, crās tibi
nihil ad rem	dē mortuīs nīl nisi bonum
lapsus linguae	prō et con(trā)

4. First Declension Abstract Nouns

sententia

5. English Adjectives Derived from First and Second Declension Latin Adjectives

odious

6. Third Declension Nouns in **-tor** (**-sor**)

doctor, ōrātor

7. Third Declension Nouns in **-tās**

integritās

8. Third Declension Nouns in **-tiō** (**-siō**)

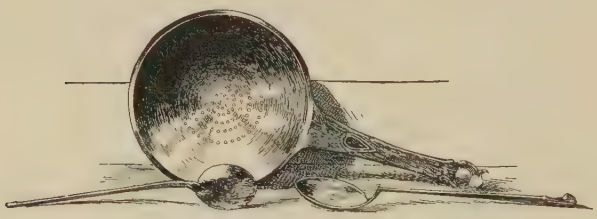
commūtātiō

9. Third Declension Adjectives in **-ilis, -bilis**

English adjectives *fragile, tangible*

10. Third Declension Adjectives in **-īlis, -ālis, -āris**

nāvālis



A Roman Wine Strainer

GERMAN WARRIORS

From the sculptural relief on the column of Marcus Aurelius

CHAPTER LIV

MARIUS AND SULLA

Although both Gaius Marius and Lucius Cornelius Sulla waged successful wars on behalf of their country, and Sulla made many wise changes in the Roman constitution, both also brought great sorrow upon the state, when, through their rivalry, they became the leaders of the opposing parties in the first and most horrible civil war at Rome.

PREPARATION

INFINITIVES: ALL TENSES. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES WITH **etsī**

526. Latin infinitives have forms for three tenses, present, perfect, and future, in both the active and passive voices. In

the list below, no form is given for the future passive infinitive, for which a circumlocution is generally used in classical Latin.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	**vidēre,** *to see*	**vidērī,** *to be seen*
PERF.	**vīdisse,** *to have seen*	**vīsus, -a, -um esse,** *to have been seen*
FUT.	**vīsūrus, -a, -um esse,** *to be about to see*	——, *to be about to be seen*

The rules for the formation of these infinitives are as follows:

1. The present infinitives, active and passive, are formed according to the rules stated in sections **318**; **326**, 3; **377**, 4; and **484**.

2. The perfect infinitive active is the perfect stem (**123**) + the ending **-isse.**

3. The perfect infinitive passive is the perfect passive participle, or fourth principal part (**123**), + the infinitive **esse.**

4. The future active infinitive is made of the future active participle + the infinitive **esse.** The future active participle is made from the participial stem (**123**) and the ending **-ūrus, -a, -um.**

Learn the infinitives of **sum, possum, eō, volō, nōlō,** and **mālō** (Appendix **604, 605, 606, 607**).

527. 1. Tenses of the infinitive denote time relative to that of the verb upon which they depend. The present infinitive denotes an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; the perfect infinitive denotes an action prior to the time of the main verb; the future infinitive denotes an action which will occur after the time of the main verb.

2. For the infinitive constructions explained in sections **485–489** any tense required by the meaning may be used.

The subjective infinitive with **necesse est** and the complementary infinitive with **dēbeō** must, however, always be in the present tense. Past or future time is in these cases indicated by the verb on which the infinitive depends.

Study carefully the following sentences, and note that the participial part of the perfect passive and future active infinitives is declinable, and agrees like an adjective with the noun to which it refers.

1. **Caesar dux perītus fuisse putātur.** *Caesar is thought to have been a skillful general.* (Complementary)

2. **Pompa in arēnam ventūra esse dīcitur.** *The procession is said to be about to come (to be on the point of coming) into the arena.* (Complementary)

3. **Virī necātī esse videntur.** *The men seem to have been killed.* (Complementary)

4. **Pulchrum est prō lībertāte pūgnāvisse.** *It is a noble thing to have fought for liberty.* (Subjective)

5. **Hoc facere dēbuī.** *I ought to have done this.* (Complementary)

6. **Necesse erit tē domum venīre.** *You will have to come home.* (Subjective)

528. Adverbial subordinate clauses with **etsī,** *even if, although,* are called *concessive clauses,* because the main clause is true in spite of some opposing circumstance whose truth is conceded in the subordinate clause. These clauses are like conditions (500), and may take any tense of the indicative required by the meaning of the sentence.

Mīles, etsī vulnerātus erat, fortiter pūgnābat. *The soldier was fighting bravely, although he had been wounded.*

Etsī mē culpābis, hoc faciam. *Even if you do blame me, I shall do this.*

529. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

ADJECTIVE

vetus, -eris, compar. **vetustior, -ius,** superl. **veterrimus, -a, -um,** *old, of long standing*

ADVERB

omnīnō (omnis), *altogether, completely;* with neg., *at all*

VERBS

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus (caedēs, occīdō), *cut, cut down, kill*

VERBS (*Continued*)

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (faciō), *accomplish, complete, wear out, exhaust;* **bellum cōnficere,** *to bring a war to a successful close*

ēripiō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptus (rapiō, raptō), *snatch, rescue*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus (premō), *crush, overwhelm*

CONJUNCTION

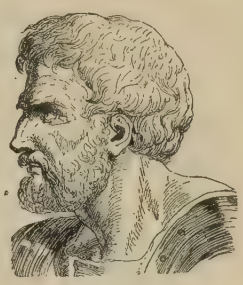
etsī, *even if, although*

530. **Dē Mariō et Sullā**

Gāius Marius, etsī ex humillimō locō nātus est (*was born*), cōnsul Rōmae septiēs (*seven times*) creātus est. Virtūte et scientiā reī mīlitāris clārus erat inter omnēs imperātōrēs Rōmānōs et rem pūblicam saepe summō perīculō ēripuit. Marius prīmum mīles erat in exercitū Scīpiōnis, ā quō Carthāgō dēlēta est,[1] et Scīpiōnī cārus et grātissimus fuisse dīcitur. Deinde, postquam cōnsul ā cīvibus creātus est, bellum in Africā[2] cōnfēcit, quō bellō Sulla quaestor[3] Marī fuit.

Duae potentēs gentēs Germānicae nova domicilia hōc tempore quaerēbant, quārum altera, Teutonēs, in Galliam vēnerat, altera, Cimbrī, Ītaliam intrāverat. Māgnus timor erat Rōmae, quod hae gentēs Ītaliam victūrae esse vidēbantur. Tum quidem propter māgnum perīculum necesse erat exercitum Rōmānum ab imperātōre perītis-

simō dūcī. Marius igitur, simul atque iterum cōnsul creātus est, Teutonēs, quibus gentēs Galliae parēs esse nōn potuerant, proeliō superāvit in quō ducenta[4] mīlia hostium caesa esse dīcuntur. Posterō annō Cimbrī ā Mariō māgnā caede victī sunt. Propter hās victōriās Marius Rōmae triumphāvit atque servātor[4] reī pūblicae appellātus est.



MARIUS

Marius viam populārem in rē pūblicā secūtus erat (*had followed*). Sulla autem senātuī et nōbilibus semper fuerat amīcus. Sulla post paucōs annōs cōnsul creātus est et ā senātū contrā Mithridātem,[5] rēgem Pontī, quī multa mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum in prōvinciā Asiā necāverat, missus est. Mariō autem nōn grātum erat imperium tantī bellī iūniōrī imperātōrī committī. Quam ob rem per lēgem hunc honōrem Sullae ēripere ausus est. Deinde Sulla, quī Rōmā, sed nōn ab Ītaliā discesserat, simul atque hoc audītum est, exercitum Rōmam redūxit et adversāriōs vīcit, et necesse erat Marium ex Ītaliā fugere.

SULLA

Dum Sulla in Graeciā et in Asiā contrā Mithridātem pūgnat, Marius Rōmam ab ūnō ē cōnsulibus revocātus est et, ubi exercitum in urbem dūxit, māxima quīnque diēs noctēsque caedēs fuit. Alter cōnsul et plūrimī nōbilēs interfectī sunt. Domus Sullae dēlēta est atque uxor ēius līberīque fugere coāctī sunt. Haec

Sullae nūntiāta sunt, quī Rōmam mox reditūrus esse dīcēbātur. Mithridātem, etsī pācem cōnfīrmāre coāctus erat, Sulla nōn omnīnō oppresserat, quod in Ītaliam ad bellum cīvīle properābat. Marius, quī iam senex labōribus multōrum bellōrum cōnfectus erat, cum vetere inimīcō iterum contendere dubitāre vīsus est, et brevī tempore mortuus erat.

HEAD OF SULLA (COIN)

Sulla mox cōnsulēs, quī erant partis populāris, complūribus proeliīs superāvit. Deinde Rōmam intrāvit, ubi eōs quī Mariō amīcī fuerant māximā crūdēlitāte oppressit. Multa mīlia cīvium occīdī et nōmina plūrimōrum in tabulā prōscrīptiōnis [6] scrībī iūssit. Sulla dictātor ā senātū creātus est [7] et lēgēs reī pūblicae māgnōpere mūtāvit. Post trēs annōs autem hanc potestātem māgnam subitō dēposuit et rūs abiit, ubi in vīllā suā reliquam vītam ēgit. Sulla ante victōriam māximē laudābātur, sed propter eās rēs quās post victōriam gessit numquam (ita Rōmānī dīcēbant) satis culpārī poterat.

531. NOTES

1. See Chapter L.

2. The war against Jugurtha, king of Numidia, was ended in 106 B.C. and he graced the triumphal procession of Marius in Rome.

3. The quaestors were financial officers elected by the people. One **quaestor** accompanied each **imperātor** and looked after the pay, clothing, and equipment of the soldiers.

4. Determine for yourself the meanings of these words.

5. Mithridates VI, king of Pontus on the Black Sea, was a

powerful and able ruler with whom the Romans disputed for many years the mastery of western Asia.

6. Sulla proscribed or posted in the Forum lists of those whom he wished to have killed and their property confiscated on the ground that they were enemies of his party.

7. The senate decreed that Sulla should be dictator as long as he desired. This was the first time a dictator had been appointed since the war with Hannibal, and the first time that authority had been conferred for a longer period than six months. See **306**, 3.

532. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *proscription* (**216**), *proscribe*, *popular* (**293**, 3), *civil* (**293**, 1), *oppress*.

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. Her *popularity* among her acquaintances is well deserved.

b. The *veteran* soldier is wearing *civilian* dress to-day.

c. The heat of the room is very *oppressive*.

d. The king was *deposed* because of his *oppression* of the people.

e. The funds are *deposited* in the bank.

EXERCISES

533. Write, with English meanings, all the infinitives of **gerō, sentiō, portō, sum, eō, iubeō, nōlō, relinquō, iaciō, possum.**

534. Give the Latin for the following:

1. to have been sent
2. to be killed
3. to have done
4. to be about to conquer
5. to have come
6. to be about to be

7. to have had
8. to be about to defend
9. to be joined
10. to have been put
11. to have preferred
12. to have been able

535. Write in Latin the following sentences, name the tense and voice of the infinitive in each, and tell which use of the infinitive is illustrated.

1. Although Atalanta could run with the greatest swiftness, she was surpassed by the young man.

2. Although the lieutenant ought to have begun battle, he seems to have been unwilling to do it.

3. We ought to have made an attack on the enemy, even if their army was larger than ours.

4. It was most pleasing to the Romans to have conquered so many cities.

5. One of these ships seems to be about to come into the harbor.

6. Although there can be no danger, we must walk with the greatest care.

7. This temple is said to have been built by the Romans many years ago (**ante**).

ROMAN KNIVES

CHAPTER LV

THE VICTORIES OF POMPEY

The history of the last century of the Roman Republic is characterized by the gradual decline of the power of the senate, hitherto a body of great dignity and prestige and the chief factor in shaping Rome's policy, and by the rise of one-man power, leading to the establishment of the Empire. Ambitious leaders struggled with one another for control of affairs, and the Roman world was repeatedly plunged into civil wars, of which the struggles of Marius and Sulla (Chapter LIV) were but the first. The bitter rivalry of Pompey and Caesar for supremacy in Roman affairs is described in this and two succeeding chapters.

PREPARATION

Indirect Statements

536. The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted *directly* or *indirectly*. If A says to B, " I am building a boat," B, in telling C what A said, may either (1) quote A's exact words, as, " A said to me, ' I am building a boat,' " which is a direct statement, indicated by quotation marks, or (2) B may say to C, " A said that he was building a boat," or " A says that he is building a boat," which are indirect statements reproducing the speaker's meaning with a change in the words. In Latin also an indirect statement changes the words of the speaker quoted. An indirect statement is a subordinate clause, used as the subject or object of the verb on which it depends. It is therefore called a *substantive* or *noun* clause. Study the following sentences:

1. Direct statement. **Puer scrībit.** *The boy is writing.*

2. Indirect statement. **Dīcunt puerum scrībere.** *They say that the boy is writing.*

When a simple statement is indirectly quoted in Latin, the verb changes from the indicative mode in the direct form to the infinitive in the indirect statement, and the subject changes from the nominative to the accusative. Why is this change of case necessary?

Indirect statements may be used also after verbs meaning *to think*, *to know*, and *to hear*, *see*, or *perceive* in any way, if what is thought, known, or perceived would be expressed in the form of a statement.

Sciō puerum scrībere. *I know that the boy is writing.*
Putō puerum scrībere. *I think that the boy is writing.*
Videō puerum scrībere. *I see that the boy is writing.*

537. Infinitives in indirect statements express time relative to the verb of saying, etc., as explained in **527, 1**: the present infinitive, an action going on at the same time as that of the main verb; the perfect, an action completed before the time of the main verb; and the future, an action after that of the main verb, or not yet begun at the time of the main verb.

The tense of the infinitive to be used in translating an English indirect statement into Latin may be determined by changing the indirect statement to its direct form in English, as, *He said that he would come.* The speaker quoted said, *I will come*, using the future tense, and the future infinitive expresses this in the Latin indirect statement. If the speaker quoted used any past tense, the indirect statement in Latin has the perfect infinitive. The following table shows the tenses of the infinitive in indirect statements.

Tense	Direct Statement	Indirect Statement
Present	**Puer scrībit.** *The boy is writing, writes.*	**Dīcit puerum scrībere.** *He says that the boy is writing, writes.* **Dīcet puerum scrībere.** *He will say that the boy is writing, writes.* **Dīxit puerum scrībere.** *He said that the boy was writing.*
Imperfect	**Puer scrībēbat.** *The boy was writing.*	**Dīcit puerum scrīpsisse.** *He says that the boy was writing, wrote, has written, had written.*
Perfect	**Puer scrīpsit.** *The boy wrote, has written.*	**Dīcet puerum scrīpsisse.** *He will say that the boy was writing, wrote, has written, had written.*
Pluperfect	**Puer scrīpserat.** *The boy had written.*	**Dīxit puerum scrīpsisse.** *He said that the boy wrote, had written.*
Future	**Puer scrībet.** *The boy will write.*	**Dīcit puerum scrīptūrum esse.** *He says that the boy will write.* **Dīcet puerum scrīptūrum esse.** *He will say that the boy will write.* **Dīxit puerum scrīptūrum esse.** *He said that the boy would write.*

538. The following points are of the greatest importance in the study of indirect statements:

1. The English *that* introducing an indirect statement has no Latin equivalent.

2. When a future active or perfect passive infinitive is used in an indirect statement, its inflected participle (**527**, 2) must have an accusative ending to agree with the subject accusative of the infinitive.

Dīxit urbem captam esse et agrōs vāstātōs esse. *He said that the city had been captured and the fields laid waste.*

3. The reflexive pronoun of the third person and the reflexive adjective **suus, -a, -um** are regularly used in an indirect statement to refer to the speaker or the subject of the main verb.

Mārcus dīxit sē ventūrum esse. *Marcus said that he (Marcus) would come.*

Mārcus dīxit eum ventūrum esse. *Marcus said that he (another) would come.*

Mārcus dīxit suum librum āmissum esse. *Marcus said that his (Marcus') book had been lost.*

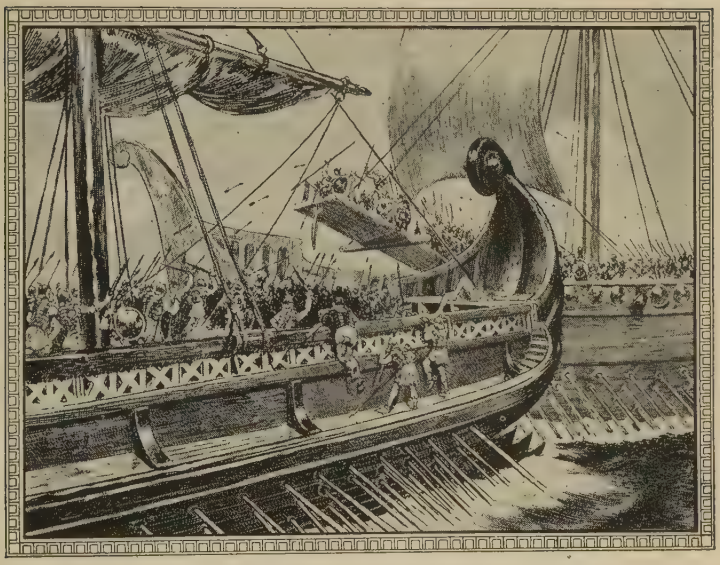
539. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *The infinitive with subject accusative is used to express a simple statement indirectly quoted after a verb or other expression of saying, thinking, knowing, or perceiving.*

540. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

VERBS	ADVERB
accidō, -ere, -cidī, — (cadō), *befall, happen*	**multum,** *much;* compar. **plūs,** superl. **plūrimum** (458, 2); **multum** (**plūs, plūrimum**) **posse,** *to have much (more, most) power*
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, suppose*	
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (spēs), *hope*	

541. **Dē Victōriīs Pompēī**

Dum Marius et Sulla, dē quibus anteā lēgistī,[1] tot annōs dē potestāte cīvitātis Rōmānae inter sē contendunt, senātus auctōritātem dignitātemque illam, quam superiōribus temporibus semper habuerat, nōn iam ostendēbat. Post ea bella, nōn senātus, sed eī ducēs quī māgnōs exercitūs māximamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēbant, et bellō suam virtūtem probāverant, Rōmae plūrimum



POMPĒIUS LATRŌNĒS Ē TŌTŌ MARĪ EXPELLIT

poterant. Inter eōs erat Gnaeus Pompēius, quī lēgātus Sullae fuerat, et bellō cīvīlī ē Siciliā et Āfricā et Hispāniā victōriās reportāverat. Sed nōn satis laudis auctōritātisque habēbat Pompēius, et spērābat Rōmānōs sibi alia imperia datūrōs esse. Neque fortūna eī inimīca erat. Latrōnēs plūrimī eō tempore omnia maria īnfēstābant,[2] atque nāvēs hominēsque capiēbant. Eōs vincī necesse erat, neque enim Rōmānīs nāvigātiō[3] tūta erat, neque cibus Rōmam trānsportārī poterat. Hoc bellum Pompēiō commissum est, quī summā celeritāte latrōnēs ē tōtō marī expulit et Rōmānōs hōc māgnō perīculō līberāvit.[4]

Priusquam hoc bellum cōnfēcit, Mithridātēs, quī ā Sullā complūribus ante annīs victus erat,[5] iterum contrā Rōmānōs bellum in Asiā[6] gerēbat. Rōmānī Pompēiō,

quod hunc rēgem ab eō vincī posse putābant, imperium dedērunt, et brevī tempore audīvērunt exercitum Rōmānum hostēs in fugam dedisse. Pompēius, postquam alia bella in fīnitimīs regiōnibus cōnfēcit, domum rediit, et duōbus diēbus, id quod [7] nēminī anteā acciderat, trēs triumphōs dūxit, prīmum ex Āfricā, secundum ex Eurōpā, tertium ex Asiā, neque ūllae pompae triumphālēs splendidiōrēs quam illae ā Rōmānīs umquam vīsae sunt.

Tum quidem Pompēius, etsī tantam auctōritātem iam habēbat, multō māiōrem potestātem cupiēbat. Scīvit senātum sibi inimīcum nōn esse, sed ūnum ē prīncipibus Rōmānīs, quī ipse in cīvitāte plūrimum posse cupiēbat, māximē timuit. Hic erat Gāius Iūlius Caesar, vir nōbilis et dux perītus, quī ōlim suīs mīlitibus, dum parvum vīcum spectant, dīxerat sē ibi prīmum quam Rōmae secundum esse mālle. Itaque hī duo prīncipēs, Pompēius et Caesar, quōrum alter alterum timēbat et ōderat, et Mārcus Crassus, quod māgnīs dīvitiīs Pompēium et Caesarem iuvāre poterat, societātem [8] inter sē iūnxērunt, quod spērābant sē hōc modō cīvitātem administrātūrōs esse. Et quod satis et auctōritātis et pecūniae habuērunt, hoc cōnsilium perficere potuērunt.

Prīmō annō Pompēius et Caesar cōnsulēs creātī sunt; posterō annō prōvinciae eīs, Caesarī Gallia, Pompēiō Hispānia, ā senātū datae sunt. Caesar māximō gaudiō commovēbātur, quod eō cōnsiliō sē māgnam glōriam et exercitum sibi amīcissimum habēre posse intellēxit, et cum legiōnibus statim ad Galliam contendit. Pompēius autem prōvinciam suam ipse nōn administrāvit, sed Rōmae manēre mālēbat, quod senātōrum grātiam con-

ciliāre cupiēbat, et putāvit sē facilius in urbe quam in Hispāniā sua cōnsilia perfectūrum esse.

542. NOTES

1. See Chapter LIV.

2. Determine the meaning of this word from the English word which it so closely resembles.

3. The meaning of this word is easily ascertained from its suffix, and from its English derivative.

4. Pompey was given command of the entire Mediterranean and all its shores for fifty miles inland, for a term of three years. In less than three months he had cleared the seas of pirates.

5. See Chapter LIV.

6. See **403**, 2.

7. **Id quod,** *a thing which.* To what does **id** refer?

8. What is the meaning of **societās,** derived from **socius,** *ally?* What is the English derivative? This alliance is known in history as the First Triumvirate. From what Latin words is *triumvirate* made, and what does it mean?

543. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain from your knowledge of suffixes in Latin the meaning of the English word *expulsion.*

2. The following words are very similar to their Latin originals: *expel, accident, infest, society.*

3. To *dispute* is to think differently (**dis-,** *apart*); a person is in good *repute,* or has a good *reputation,* who is well thought of.

EXERCISES

544. 1. Write with English meanings the infinitives of **opprimō.** Write the infinitives of **pūniō** and **videō.**

2. Time yourself in giving the Latin for the following:

a. to have recognized
b. to be about to go
c. to have been broken
d. to be written
e. to be about to fall
f. to be seeking
g. to have been lost
h. to be surpassed
i. to have found
j. to be coming together

545. Translate the following sentences and tell what use of the infinitive is illustrated by each word in black type.

1. Scīmus uxōrem Sullae **fugere coāctam esse.**
2. Multī **occīsī esse** dīcuntur.
3. Putāvērunt oppidum suum **capī** nōn **posse.**
4. Rōmānī Mithridātem Asiam **rēgnāre prohibēre** voluērunt.
5. Nūntiātum est Sullam multōs cīvīs **necārī iūssisse.**
6. Difficile est altōs montēs **trānsīre.**
7. Puellae **territae esse** videntur.

546. Write in Latin:

1. Cornelia thought that her sons ought to be well trained (**ēducō, ēducāre**).
2. We heard that many citizens had been captured and were being led to the town.
3. The girls said that they did not wish to go.
4. The Gauls said that they would give hostages.
5. These citizens are said to have been saved by our general.
6. Sulla heard that the command of the whole war had been entrusted to Marius.
7. It is reported that many men have come to the city, and that a larger army is now approaching and will soon make an attack.
8. They hoped that the gods would give them aid.

THE NEWPORT ARCH AT LINCOLN, ENGLAND

One of the most perfect specimens of Roman architecture in Britain.

CHAPTER LVI

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES: LATIN WORD FORMATION

PREFIXES: COMPOUND VERBS

547. In previous chapters we have seen that many Latin nouns and adjectives are made from other Latin words by the use of suffixes, and that many of these suffixes appear in English in slightly modified form. (Chapters XII, XXII, XXX.) Latin also makes extensive use of prefixes whereby the meaning of verbs may be modified or more exactly defined. Many of these prefixes are prepositions; some are not used as separate words. Nearly every simple verb in Latin has several compounds made in this way, and these compounds are much

more commonly used than the simple verbs themselves. The same prefixes appear in English, in words derived from the Latin compounds, and with them new English words are often made. It is largely by means of prefixes and suffixes that languages live and grow.

548. 1. Several Latin prefixes ending in consonants, particularly **ad-, ex-, in-, con-, ob-, sub-,** often change the final consonant to make it the same as the initial letter of the

EQUITĒS RŌMĀNĪ

word to which the prefix is attached. This is called *assimilation* (**ad, similis**). Show what prefix has been used in each of the following words:

efficiō	appropinquō
impōnō	sustineō
collocō	committō
oppūgnō	

2. The prefix **re-,** *back,* often becomes **red-** before a vowel, as in **redeō.**

3. The prefix **trāns-** is often shortened to **trā-** as in **trādūcō, trādō.**

4. Review the statement in section **339** about vowel changes in verbs to which a prefix is added, as in **accipiō** (**capiō**).

549. The following list of verb prefixes is not a complete one, but those most commonly used in Latin are included. With each prefix make compounds of the verbs given below it, give their Latin meanings, and as many English derivatives as you can.

1. **ā, ab,** *away*
   vertō
2. **ad,** *to, toward*
   capiō, cadō
3. **con** (**cum**), *together, forcibly, thoroughly*
   moveō, vocō, teneō
4. **in,** *in, on, against*
   pellō, pōnō, veniō
5. **ē, ex,** *out*
   spectō, veniō
6. **ob,** *against, to meet*
   currō, premō
7. **prae** (English *pre*), *in front of, before*
   dīcō, scrībō
8. **prō,** *ahead, forward*
   iaciō, videō
9. **re,** *back, again*
   pellō, cēdō
10. **sub,** *under, up from below*
    portō, scrībō
11. **trāns,** *across*
    mittō, portō

550. 1. Explain the meanings of the following English words derived from compounds of **mittō**: *admit, admissible, commit, emit, remit, remittance, transmit, submit, submissive.*

Make additions to the list of derivatives you have already made from **mittō** (**376,** 2).

2. Can you now add to your derivatives of **capiō** and **vertō** (**376,** 2) and **scrībō** (**423,** 2)?

3. List in your notebook, on the page headed ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN, as many English words as you can make from each of the following verbs, using the prefixes explained in this chapter: **faciō, dō, eō, iaciō, dūcō, pellō.**

551. The three verbs **cadō,** *fall,* **caedō,** *cut,* and **cēdō,** *go, yield,* must be carefully distinguished from one another, especially when they are compounded. Study carefully the principal parts of these verbs and a compound of each as given below.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus
accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessus
(no vowel change)
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus
accidō, accidere, accidī, —
(**a** becomes short **i,** as explained in section **339,** and the extra syllable of the perfect is dropped)
caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus
(**ae** becomes long **i,** and the extra syllable of the perfect is dropped)

On the page of your notebook headed ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM LATIN, using the prefixes explained in this chapter, list as many English words as you can make from compounds of **cadō, caedō,** and **cēdō.**

CAESAR'S WAR IN GAUL

Caesar's Gallic Wars are famous in history. His brilliant military genius was displayed throughout the eight years of their duration. By his conquest of Gaul, that country was brought into contact with Roman civilization, which still survived there long after Rome herself had fallen, and was through France transmitted to the modern world. Caesar's expeditions to Britain introduced that country to the Romans, whose later occupation of the island played a prominent part in early English history.

552. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

NOUN

māgnitūdō, -dinis, f. (māgnus), *size*

VERBS

consīdo, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus (sedeō), *sit down, settle*

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, *believe*

VERBS (*Continued*)

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (dūcō), *lead across*

ADJECTIVES

octō, *eight* (388)

quīntus, -a, -um (quīnque), *fifth* (388)

553. Dē Bellō Gallicō ā Caesare Gestō [1]

Circiter octō annōs Caesar in Galliā manēbat,[2] et eīs annīs multa et gravia bella gessit. Nōn sōlum prōvinciam suam [3] administrāvit, sed etiam suīs legiōnibus complūrēs novās terrās occupāvit. Māxima virtūs, māximumque ingenium erant in Caesare, quī proeliō numquam victus est. Brevī tempore legiōnēs sēnsērunt eum omnia temptāre, omnia audēre velle, semperque hostēs ēius superāre. Itaque ducem suum amābant, summamque fidem eī [4] habēbant. Hostēs quibuscum bella gessit admīrātiōne ēius virtūtis, dum pūgnant, clēmentiae ēius, postquam victī sunt, commovēbantur. Tamen omnēs

dēfectiōnēs māximā sevēritāte [5] pūniēbat, et necesse erat eōs quī perfidī erant, vītā poenās dare.

Prīmō annō bellī Gallicī Helvētiī, gēns fortissima quae in Alpibus habitābat, domō cum omnibus suīs exiērunt, quod lātiōrēs terrās dēsīderābant, et in terrīs novīs consīdere cōnstituērunt. Caesar, ubi audīvit eōs hoc cōnsilium cēpisse, quam celerrimē [6] in eōs impetum fēcit, et tōtam gentem domum redīre iūssit. Deinde Ariovistus, potentissimus rēx Germānicus, quī multitūdinem suōrum trāns Rhēnum trādūxerat et optimōs agrōs Galliae occupāverat, ē Galliā discēdere coāctus est.

A Testudo
A Roman military formation.

Posterō annō Belgae,[7] fortissimī omnium Gallōrum, contrā Rōmānōs coniūrāvērunt, quod crēdēbant Caesarem mox in suās terrās exercitum ductūrum esse et sē lībertāte prīvātūrum esse. Eī quoque ā Caesare superātī sunt, summā autem difficultāte,[5] nam ācerrimē et diūtissimē pūgnāvērunt. Caesar ipse dīxit sē numquam contrā hostēs fortiōrēs pūgnāvisse.

Proximā aestāte Caesarī nūntiātum est Venetōs, quae gēns māgnam auctōritātem habēbat [2] cōnsilium contrā Rōmānōs cēpisse. Quod prope ōceanum illī

habitābant, necesse erat Caesarem nāvibus cum eīs contendere. Tandem autem Venetī sociīque eōrum, postquam Caesar oppida multa occupāvit et nāvēs eōrum omnīnō dēlēvit, sē suaque omnia Rōmānīs trādi-
dērunt.

Quārtō bellī annō Caesar in Rhēnō pontem ingentem fēcit et exercitum in Germāniam trādūxit, quod incolās ēius regiōnis terrēre volēbat. Nūllās terrās tamen occupāvit, et paucīs post diēbus cōpiās redūxit pontemque quī factus erat dēlēvit. Eōdem annō Caesar cum parte exercitūs in Britanniam trānsiit, quae īnsula numquam anteā ā Rōmānīs vīsa erat. Nōn diū ibi mānsit, sed ante hiemem in Galliam rediit. Quīntō annō iterum ad lītora Britanniae nāvigāvit et complūra proelia fēcit. Sed nūllī mīlitēs in īnsulā relictī sunt, postquam Caesar discessit, et per centum annōs nūllī Rōmānī in Britanniam vēnērunt.[8]

Priusquam Caesar Rōmam rediit, ūnus ē prīncipibus Gallōrum, Vercingetorīx nōmine, complūrēs gentēs incitāvit, quae Rōmānīs amīcae nōn erant et eōs ē Galliā expellī volēbant. Tandem omnēs paene gentēs Galliae societātem inter sē iūnxērunt et ācerrimē prō lībertāte pūgnāvērunt. Caesar autem, auxiliō lēgātōrum fīdōrum fortisque exercitūs, suāque virtūte scientiāque bellī, eōs vincere potuit, atque tōta Gallia sub imperiō Rōmānōrum tenēbātur.

Dē omnibus hīs bellīs ā Caesare ipsō scrīptum est in librō suō.[9] Tālī modō cīvibus Rōmānīs ēius victōriae nūntiātae sunt, etsī Caesar ipse longē aberat. Nōnne hunc librum legere cupis?

554. NOTES

1. **Gestō,** *waged;* the perfect passive participle of **gerō,** agreeing with **bellō.**

2. Caesar took over his province in Gaul in 58 B.C.

3. The province which Caesar governed was the south-eastern part of what is now France. It is now called *Provence.*

4. See **413,** 4.

5. You should be able to translate this word without assistance. From what adjective is it derived?

6. A superlative adjective or adverb with **quam** has the meaning *as . . . as possible:* **quam celerrimē,** *as quickly as possible;* **quam plūrimae nāvēs,** *as many ships as possible.*

7. These were the inhabitants of what is now Belgium and Holland.

8. About half of the island of Britain was subjugated by the Romans, in A.D. 43, and remained a Roman province for four hundred years. But it never became so thoroughly Romanized as Gaul.

9. Caesar's Commentaries, *Caesaris Commentāriī dē Bellō Gallicō.*

555. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:
   a. Much *ingenuity* is needed to solve this problem.
   b. A certificate of birth must be presented among other *credentials* in obtaining a passport.
   c. My story was listened to with *incredulity.*
   d. It is *incredible* that any one should feel so.

2. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals; *severity* (**215**), *difficulty* (**215**), *clemency* (**113**), *magnitude* (**214**), *creed.*

EXERCISES

556. Each of the verbs in the following list may be used as a main verb with a dependent infinitive. Give the meaning of each verb and tell which of the four kinds of infinitives (complementary, subjective, objective, indirect statement) may be used with it.

cōnstituō	respondeō	cōgō
audeō	prohibeō	cupiō
audiō	necesse est	putō
sciō	possum	dubitō
est	dēbeō	spērō
nūntiō	videō	volō
iubeō	incipiō	sentiō
dīcō	crēdō	

557. Give the Latin for the following expressions, which are very commonly used in Latin. This list is supplementary to the one given in **421**, which you should review.

1. at home
2. a few years later
3. one of the soldiers
4. enough time
5. I ought to go.
6. I must go.
7. to successfully finish a war
8. to make an attack upon them
9. as quickly as possible
10. no danger
11. Do not run.
12. to have much, more, most power

558. Write in Latin:

1. Caesar told the Romans that many powerful tribes had been conquered in Gaul.

2. If you think that Pompey had more power than Caesar, you are mistaken (**errāre**).

3. The general says that he will send one of the lieutenants to Rome in a few days.

4. Do not stay here longer; we ought to hasten home as quickly as possible.

5. After Caesar had successfully finished many wars in Gaul, the senate ordered him to return to Rome.

6. Although these tribes fought as bravely as possible, Caesar was able to prevent them from conquering.

7. When Pompey heard that Caesar was approaching with an army, he thought that he must flee from Rome.

8. Unless a messenger is sent to the general, he will not know that his army has been put to flight.

GALLIC SOLDIERS

CAESAR EXERCITUM FLŪMEN RUBICŌNEM TRĀDŪCIT

CHAPTER LVII

THE CIVIL WAR OF CAESAR AND POMPEY

Caesar has written, besides *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, an account of his war with Pompey, *Dē Bellō Cīvīlī*. His victory over Pompey really marked the end of the Roman Republic, for Caesar as the sole ruler at Rome was in fact, though not in name, the first Roman emperor. For an account of events at the time of his assassination read Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*.

PREPARATION

SUMMARY OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

559. Your attention has several times been called to the importance of understanding and clearly expressing the relation of different parts of a sentence to one another (**186**; **264**, 8).

This chapter is devoted to a summary and review of the various subordinate clauses you have studied, for the interrelation of clauses is of the utmost importance in expressing a thought. A simple main clause may have no very definite meaning until certain limitations are placed upon that meaning by some modifying clause. The sentence, *The boy was running*, calls up in one's mind a clear enough picture, but one wonders, "What boy?" "Why was he running?" "When did this happen?" This additional information needed to make the situation clear is given by subordinate clauses. A relative clause tells what boy is meant: *The boy whom I sent on an errand was running.* A causal clause gives the reason of the action: *The boy was running because the wind had taken his hat.* A temporal clause tells when the incident occurred: *The boy was running before he came to the top of the hill.* Very few sentences are without one or more subordinate clauses to make more definite the statement given by the main clause, and that very definiteness is lost by inaccuracy in expressing the exact relation intended by the modifying clauses.

MĪLES LEGIŌNĀRIUS

560. You have learned (**302, 536**) about three groups of subordinate clauses: (1) *adjective* clauses, which modify nouns, (2) *adverbial* clauses, which modify verbs, and (3) *substantive* clauses, used as nouns. To the first class belongs the *relative* clause (**259**); to the second class the *causal* clause (**302**), the *temporal* clauses (**327, 474**), *conditional* clauses (**500**), and *concessive* clauses (**528**); and to the third class the *indirect*

statement (536). The following table will help you to recall the necessary facts about each of these kinds of clauses:

Clause	Introducing Word	Mode of Verb	Tense of Verb
Relative	**quī, quae, quod** Agrees with antecedent in number and gender; case depends on use in clause	Indicative	Any tense
Causal	**quod**	Indicative	Any tense
Temporal	**dum** **ubi, postquam, simul atque, priusquam**	Indicative Indicative	Present Perfect (main verb past)
Conditional	**sī, nisi**	Indicative	Any tense; English present often future or future perfect in Latin
Concessive	**etsī**	Indicative	Any tense (like conditions)
Indirect Statement	none	Infinitive	Present, perfect, or future, denoting time relative to that of the main verb

561. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

ADVERB

optimē (bene), *best, exceedingly well* (458, 2)

VERBS

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, — (stō), *take a stand, halt*

VERBS (*Continued*)

praesum, -esse, -fuī, futūrus (sum), *be at the head of* (with dative)

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *find out, discover*

562. Dē Bellō Cīvīlī ā Pompēiō et Caesare Gestō

Eīs annīs cum Caesar in Galliā bella gerēbat, Pompēius, quī Rōmae manēbat neque ūllās victōriās reportāre poterat, māximā invidiā commovēbātur. Dē hīs prīncipibus dictum est neque Caesarem parem neque Pompēium superiōrem habēre voluisse. Pompēius igitur, quod sēnsit Caesaris nōmen clārissimum sua cōnsilia impedītūrum esse, sē potentiōrem probāre cupiēbat. Propter mortem Crassī, ūnīus dē triumvirīs, et Iūliae,[1] fīliae Caesaris, quam Pompēius in mātrimōnium dūxerat, neuter iam ūllā rē prohibēbātur invidiam alterius dēmōnstrāre. Caesar, quī iterum cōnsul creārī cupiēbat, ad senātum nūntium mīsit, "Nōnne sinētis mē, dum in Galliā sum, cōnsulātum petere?" [2] Sed propter auctōritātem Pompēī senātus respondit contrā exempla esse populī Rōmānī Caesarem hoc facere, et eum exercitum dīmittere et Rōmam redīre iūssit.

Tum Caesar propter hanc iniūriam māgnā īrā commōtus est; exercitum nōn dīmīsit, sed cum legiōnibus suīs, quārum amīcitia nunc eum māximē iuvābat, in Ītaliam contendit. Ubi ad flūmen Rubicōnem,[3] fīnem prōvinciae suae, pervēnit, breve tempus cōnstitit, quod sciēbat sē contrā patriam bellum gestūrum esse.[4] Tandem autem "Ālea," inquit, "iacta est!" [5] et exercitum trādūxit atque māximā celeritāte iter Rōmam fēcit. Pompēius et cōnsulēs et senātus, simul atque repperērunt Caesarem accēdere, cum amīcīs multīs in Graeciam discessērunt, aliī prīncipēs tamen sē cum Caesare coniūnxērunt. Ille, postquam Pompēiānōs [6] in Ītaliā Hispāniāque superāvit,

exercitum Pompēī ipsīus in Graeciā ācerrimō proeliō in fugam dedit. Pompēius, etsī ā rēge Aegyptī auxilium petīverat, ab eō necātus est. Caesar dīcitur caput adversārī suī, quod ad eum ā rēge missum est, multīs lacrimīs spectāvisse. Post multās aliās victōriās, Caesar Rōmam rediit, ubi quīnque triumphōs dūxit.

POMPĒIUS

Caesar sōlus iam cīvitātī Rōmānae [7] praeerat, quam duōs annōs optimē administrāvit. Grātiam multōrum conciliāvit quod in omnēs quī bellō cīvīlī contrā eum pūgnāverant māgnam clēmentiam ostendit. Multās rēs illīs temporibus cūrābat. Urbem multīs aedificiīs exōrnābat, viās mūniēbat, prōvinciās melius quam anteā administrābat, iūra dīcēbat,[8] ex ingentī multitūdine lēgum optimās in paucōs librōs collēgit, annum ad sōlis cursum accommodāvit,[9] bibliothēcās Graecās et Latīnās pūblicāvit (*made public*).

Etsī haec et alia prō bonō pūblicō māgnā dīligentiā faciēbat, multī eī inimīcī erant et dīcēbant eum rēgem creārī cupere; neque tamen id nōmen, neque corōnam, sīgnum rēgnī, Caesar accipere voluit, sēnsit enim Rōmānōs rēgēs vehementissimē ōdisse.[10] Propter eam invidiam Caesaris inimīcī, quōrum ducēs erant Brūtus et Cassius, contrā eum coniūrāvērunt et cōnsilia dē ēius morte capere coepērunt. Etsī multa sīgna deōrum eum monuerant mortem ad eum Īdibus Mārtiīs [11] ventūram esse, neque

dīgnitātem potestātemque ēius eum dēfēnsūrās esse, in senātum eō diē vēnit. Simul atque consēdit, impetus in eum factus est, et prope Pompēī statuam, ubi propter multa vulnera cecidit, inimīcī eum occīdērunt. Caesar ubi inter reliquōs cōnspexit Brūtum, quem semper amāverat quemque sibi fīdum esse putābat, "Et tū, Brūte" clāmāvisse dīcitur. Haec erat mors ūnīus dē fortissimīs virīs clārissimīsque imperātōribus omnium temporum.

563. NOTES

1. Why was Caesar's daughter named **Iūlia?** See **35**, 4.

2. Caesar did not wish to give up his military authority and return to Rome as a private citizen subject to Pompey's attacks, and so he wished to come back as consul elect. It was, however, contrary to Roman regulations for a person who was absent from Rome to stand for the consulship (**cōnsulātum petere**).

3. The Rubicon, a small river on the east coast of Italy, was the boundary between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul.

4. The military governor of a province, by Roman custom, could not return to Rome while he kept his **imperium.** Therefore Caesar's act in crossing the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, at the head of his army, was equivalent to a declaration of war.

5. **Ālea iacta est.** *The die is cast! i.e.*, the decision is irrevocable.

6. **Pompēiānī,** *the Pompeians*, or adherents of Pompey's party.

7. Many Latin verbs which are formed with special prefixes, of which **prae** is one, are followed by a dative.

8. **Iūs dīcere,** *to pronounce judgment*, or to give a judicial decision.

9. It is to Caesar that we owe the calendar in very nearly its present form. Only once since has it been corrected.

10. See Chapter XXVII. Caesar did, however, assume the title **Imperātor,** which, together with the name *Caesar* was used by all Roman emperors.

11. **Īdibus Mārtiīs,** *on the Ides* (15th) *of March;* ablative of time.

564. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *Egypt, consulate, triumvir, consist, collect, impede.*

2. What Latin adjective made from **invidia** is the original of the English adjective *invidious?* See **114,** 5. What are *invidious* remarks or comparisons?

3. To *consist* really means to stand together. What does the following sentence mean? "Such an act is *inconsistent* with good citizenship."

EXERCISES

565. Give the words composing each subordinate clause in the Latin passage of this chapter, tell what kind of clause it is, name its introducing word, and explain the mode and tense of the verb, in accordance with the table in **560.**

566. Write in Latin:

1. While Caesar was conquering fierce tribes in Gaul, the senate ordered him to return to Rome.

2. Before Caesar crossed the Rhine, the Germans thought that a river so wide would protect their lands.

3. After this town was captured by the Romans, two legions were left there for several days.

4. The army must march to Rome with the greatest speed if it wishes to arrive there before night.

5. If you think that there is no danger, we ought to lead back our troops as quickly as possible.

6. Caesar decided to wage war against Pompey because he himself wished to be at the head of the state.

7. The senate ordered Pompey to wage war against the pirates by whom the city was being deprived of food.

8. " Unless we drive out these Romans," said the leader of the Gauls, " we shall lose that liberty which we have had for so many years."

9. Although many soldiers were being hindered by severe wounds, the whole army fought zealously.

10. As soon as I had read the letter which you sent, I gave a reward to the messenger by whom it was brought.

11. When the Gauls had surrendered themselves and all their possessions to the Romans, many captives were led to Rome.

Soldiers' Shoes

CHAPTER LVIII

AUGUSTUS

During the happy reign of Augustus Rome enjoyed greater peace and prosperity than ever before. Although after the battle of Actium, which gave him the supremacy, the Roman Republic was in a state of chaos and exhaustion following nearly a hundred years of strife, Augustus formed an empire which continued for five hundred years longer. Many historians consider the establishment of the Roman Empire "the greatest political work that any human being ever wrought."

After the Augustan Age the glory and power of Rome began to wane until, about five hundred years later, the empire fell before the invasion of the Goths, the Vandals, and the Huns from the north. But the civilization of Rome has been handed on to modern times through France, Italy, Spain, and Britain. Of all our legacy from Rome the greatest contributions are laws and the art of government. From the Roman provincial administration modern states have learned the art of governing subject peoples. The body of Roman law compiled under Justinian (Emperor of the East) has profoundly influenced the legal systems of the modern world.

PREPARATION

Participles

567. 1. Participles are verbal adjectives, *i.e.*, they are verb forms which are used like adjectives to modify nouns. In English there are four participles, illustrated by the following sentences:

a. The *rising* sun dispelled the mists. (Present Active Participle)

b. A letter now *being written* will explain the matter. (Present Passive Participle)

c. The jury, *having heard* the evidence, retired to confer. (Perfect Active Participle)

d. Truth, *crushed* (*having been crushed*) to earth, shall rise again. (Perfect Passive Participle)

In each of the sentences above the participle is used as an adjective modifier of the subject noun. The verbal nature of the participle is shown by its voice and tense; also, in (*b*) the participle has an adverb modifier, *now*, and in (*c*) the participle has a direct object, *evidence*.

2. Latin lacks two of the participles given above, the present passive, and the perfect active. Sentences (*b*) and (*c*) cannot be expressed in Latin in the same way as in English. Latin has a present active participle as well as a perfect passive participle, which you have already learned is the fourth principal part of the verb. It also has a future active participle, which is not found in English. These participles, being verbs, may have objects or adverbial modifiers; being adjectives, they are declined, and agree in number, gender, and case with the nouns they modify.

3. The following table shows the formation of the participles of **amō**:

	Active	Passive
Present	**amāns, amantis** *loving*	——
Perfect	——	**amātus, -a, -um** *having been loved*
Future	**amātūrus, -a, -um** *about to love*	

The present participle always ends in **-ns,** which is added to the present stem (lengthened in the third conjugation); but

-iō verbs of the third and fourth conjugations have **ie** before the ending **-ns**: *e.g.*, **monēns, monentis; dūcēns, dūcentis; capiēns, capientis; audiēns, audientis.**

The perfect participle is the fourth principal part of the verb.

The future participle is formed from the perfect participle by adding **-ūrus, -a, -um** to the participial stem (123): **monitūrus, -a, -um; ductūrus, -a, -um; captūrus, -a, -um; audītūrus, -a, -um.**

568. 1. Learn the declension of the present participle of **amō** (Appendix 587). Present participles are one-termination adjectives of the third declension and are declined like **potēns** (280). Note that the long vowel of the nominative singular is shortened in the base.

Learn the declension of the present participle of **eō** (**iēns**), the only irregularly formed present participle (Appendix 587).

2. The perfect passive participle and the future active participle are declined like **bonus** (99), of the first and second declensions.

569. The perfect passive participle, we have seen, is used with the auxiliary **sum** to form the perfect tenses of the passive voice (243). The future active participle is also used in combination with **sum**, you will learn later; the present active participle is never so used. The English form *he is walking* is in Latin the same as *he walks*, both being expressed by **ambulat** (41). But the most common use of participles in Latin is to express in concise form ideas which in English are put into various kinds of subordinate clauses, relative, temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional. The tense of the participle, like that of the infinitive, denotes time relative to that of the main verb; the present participle means an action occurring at the same time as the main verb, a perfect participle, one completed

at the time of the main verb, and a future participle, one which is to occur after the time of the main verb. The following sentences illustrate Latin participial constructions, which are much more extensively used in Latin than in English:

a. **Helvētiī, ā Caesare victī, domum redīre coāctī sunt.**

The Helvetians, { *having been conquered by Caesar* / *conquered by Caesar* / *who had been conquered by Caesar* / *after they were conquered by Caesar* / *after being conquered by Caesar* } *were forced to return home.*

b. **Pompam arēnam intrantem vīdī.**

I saw the procession { *entering* / *which was entering* / *as it was entering* / *when it was entering* } *the arena.*

c. **"Nōs moritūrī tē salūtāmus!"** *We (who are) about to die salute you!*

d. **Vulnerātus ācriter pūgnāvit.** *Although he had been wounded (having been wounded), he fought fiercely.*

e. **Lātōna, īrā commōta, Niobēn pūnīre volēbat.** *Latona, moved to anger (because she was moved to anger), wished to punish Niobe.*

f. **Castra oppūgnāta fortiter dēfendēmus.**

We shall bravely defend the camp { *if it is attacked.* / *when it is attacked (having been attacked).* }

Note the following points:

1. The participle always agrees in gender, number, and case with a noun or pronoun expressed or understood. In (*d*) the case of **vulnerātus** shows that it agrees with the unexpressed subject of **pūgnāvit.**

2. Although the literal translation of the Latin participle is sometimes possible, as in (*a*), (*b*), and (*e*), it cannot always be rendered by the English participle, and a clause is always a more definite expression of the relation of ideas (559). Always, however, arrive at the exact meaning of a sentence containing a participle by a literal translation, being careful to translate the participle as a modifier of a noun with which it agrees, and to reproduce exactly its tense and voice. Then an idiomatic English rendering can be decided upon, the kind of clause chosen depending upon the setting in which the sentence is found, *e.g.*, **Puerum pūnītum nōn vīdī,** literally, *I did not see the having-been-punished boy,* may be rendered, *I did not see the boy who had been punished,* or, *after he had been punished.*

TEMPLUM IĀNĪ

3. A present participle may be equivalent to a temporal clause with **dum,** translated by a clause introduced by *as, while,* or *when,* with a verb of continued action; a perfect participle may be equivalent to a clause with **ubi** or **postquam,** translated by a clause introduced by *after* or *when* with a verb of completed action.

4. The English perfect participle in the passive is more commonly expressed in the shorter form without the words *having been*, as in (*a*) and (*e*). This form should be used if a participial translation of the perfect passive participle is retained.

570. REQUIRED VOCABULARY

VERBS

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus (accēdō, discēdō), *move, yield, grant*

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (faciō), *put at the head of, put in command of* (with dative)

ADJECTIVES

barbarus, -a, -um, *savage, uncivilized, barbarous*

sextus, -a, -um (388), *sixth*

ūndēvīgintī (indecl.) (388), *nineteen*

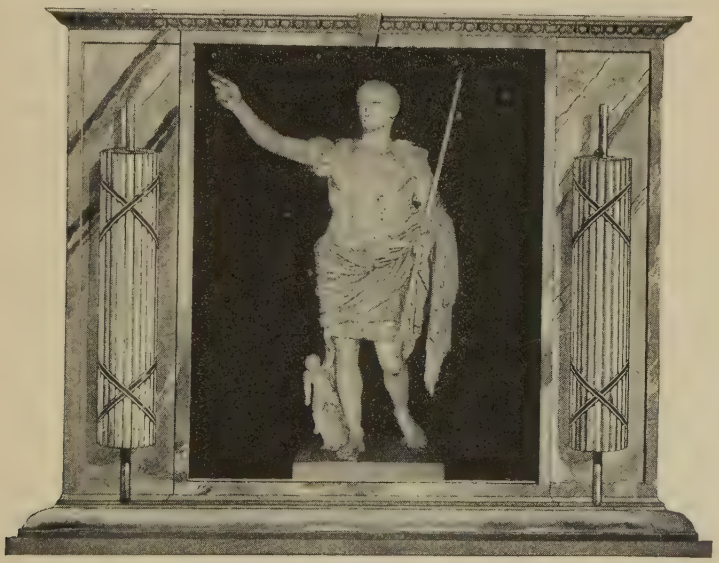
vērus, -a, -um, *true, real*

571. **Dē Augustō**

Postquam Iūlius Caesar interfectus est, Antōnius, dux dēlēctus partis Caesaris, bellum cīvīle iterum parāvit. Bellō ab Antōniō parātō Octāviānus ā senātū praefectus est. Hic Octāviānus,[1] quī ūndēvīgintī annōs nātus est fīlius erat sorōris Caesaris, quem Caesar hērēdem (*heir*) testāmentō relictum nōmine suō appellārī iūsserat. Octāviānus, postquam Brūtum Cassiumque [2] prope Philippōs,[3] et Antōnium ad Actium,[4] oppidum Graeciae, superāvit, sōlus summam potestātem [5] tenēbat atque ā senātū Imperātor et Augustus et Prīnceps [6] appellātus est. Senātus sextum mēnsem annī ē nōmine ēius Augustum appellārī iūssit.

Augustus, etsī populum Rōmānum plūs terrārum vincere nōlēbat, intellegēbat necesse esse prōvinciās gladiō occupātās gladiō tenērī, et extrēmōs imperī fīnēs dēfendī. Itaque complūrēs gentēs ultrā Alpēs, et in

Hispāniā quoque reliquae gentēs ab Augustō pācātae sunt. Deinde pāx erat per tōtum imperium Rōmānum. Ter, dum Augustus imperiō praeest, templum Iānī [7] clausum



AUGUSTUS

est. Multās prōvinciās māximā dīligentiā administrāvit et populīs in prōvinciīs habitantibus plūrima iūra cīvium Rōmānōrum cessit.

Itaque, multī Rōmānī pācem post tot bella habentēs ad līterārum studium sē vertēbant. Maecēnās, vir nōbilis, quī Augustum dē multīs rēbus monēbat, amīcus poētīs scrīptōribusque erat, inter quōs clārissimī erant Vergilius, Horātius, Līvius, Ovidius.[8] Quam ob rem hoc tempus aurea aetās līterārum Latīnārum appellātur.

Aedificiīs quoque multīs et pulchrīs Augustus Rōmam ipsam et urbēs prōvinciārum exōrnāvit. In templīs antīquīs refectīs novīsque aedificātīs populum antīquōs deōs Rōmānōrum māiōre studiō adōrāre iūssit.

Augustus, postquam quadrāgintā [9] et quattuor annōs imperium tenuit, ē vītā discessit, atque eī post mortem Rōmānī honōrēs deōrum dedērunt, quod similis deō Augustus eīs vīsus est.

VERGIL
(*From a painting by Raphael*)

Post Augustī mortem multī imperātōrēs cīvitātī [10] praefectī aliī bene, aliī male imperium administrāvērunt. Post multōs annōs imperium Rōmānum in partēs duās dīvīsum est,[11] alteram in orientem [12] (*east*), alteram in occidentem [12] (*west*) spectantem.

Virtūtēs autem antīquōrum Rōmānōrum in posterīs nōn erant. Dīvitiae lūxuriaque apud Rōmānōs māximē auctae erant et, quod cīvēs hās rēs cupientēs impetūs barbarōrum sustinēre nōn potuerant, cīvitās post multōs annōs īnfīrma facta cecidit. In mōribus et modō vītae populī vērae causae ruīnae reperīrī possunt. Paucī et potentiōrēs cīvēs plūrimōs agrōs ā multitūdine servōrum arātōs tenēbant.[13] Rōmae erat multitūdō cīvium pigrōrum quibus nōn

labōrantibus et semper spectācula petentibus cibus pecūniā pūblicā emptus cotīdiē dabātur.[14] Multī incolae 60
prōvinciārum, tribūta gravissima Rōmae dare coāctī, ē
fīnibus Rōmānīs in terrās barbarās discēdere mālēbant.
Multitūdō hominum minor facta est quod plūrimī et
optimī Rōmānī cāsibus bellōrum interfectī sunt. Propter
hās aliāsque causās, quod cīvēs et vīrēs et pecūniās Rōma 65
āmīserat, imperium Rōmānum ā barbarīs superātum est.

572. NOTES

1. **Octāviānus,** first named **Gāius Octāvius,** became after his adoption by the will of **Gāius Iūlius Caesar, Gāius Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus,** in accordance with the customary form of name given to an adopted son.

2. See **562.**

3. Locate on the map Philippi in Macedonia.

4. Locate on the map the promontory and town of Actium.

5. The government of Augustus was in fact a monarchy. Although the magistracies of the republic remained, Augustus exercised their chief functions, and the senate lost all real power and was subject to the will of the **Imperātor,** whence the title Emperor.

6. Augustus, like Julius Caesar, did not take the title of king, remembering how hateful that name had been to the Romans since the expulsion of the Tarquins.

7. The gates of the temple of Janus in Rome were kept open in time of war and closed in time of peace.

8. Vergil's greatest work is the *Æneid,* an epic poem. Horace is famous for his *Odes* and *Satires* written in verse; Livy wrote a monumental history of Rome; about Ovid you have already learned.

9. See **492, 14.**

10. See **563, 7.**

11. The final division of the Roman Empire into the eastern and western empires was in A.D. 395 when the Emperor Theodosius, just before his death, divided the empire between his two sons. The monarchy in the east endured for over a thousand years until the capture of Constantinople by the Turks in 1453.

12. These are the present active participles of the verbs meaning *rise* and *fall;* **sōlem** is to be understood.

13. Read again the introduction to Chapter LII.

14. It is estimated that during the reign of Augustus more than half a million persons in Rome were receiving the state dole of grain.

573. RELATION OF LATIN WORDS TO ENGLISH

1. The following words closely resemble their Latin originals: *testament, august, cede, luxury, infirm.*

2. Explain the meanings of the italicized words:

a. The *cession* of Sicily to Rome occurred at the end of the First Punic War.

b. The vegetation of tropical countries is *luxuriant.*

c. She *luxuriates* in fine clothes and expensive jewels.

d. *Infirmities* increase with advancing years.

3. *Verity* (Latin **vēritās, 215**) means truth; *verily* means truly, in reality; a *veritable* misfortune is a real or actual misfortune.

4. Many English verbs ending in *-fy* are formed from **faciō,** and mean to *make* or *prove.* You have already met *nullify* (**323,** 3), *identify* (**367,** 6), *satisfy* (**504,** 3 *b*). Another of these verbs is made from **vērus,** *verify,* to prove true. Make and define such verbs from **grātus, falsus, pāx, mors, rēctus.** Can you give others?

5. Many English words ending in *-ant* or *-ent* are merely the present participles of Latin verbs (base ending **-nt**). Define the following words so as to show their Latin derivation. How does the derivation help one to spell the last syllable of such words?

incipient	agent	intelligent
occupant	recipient	tangent
inhabitant	current	expectant
pertinent	efficient	

EXERCISES

574. Write, with English meanngs, according to the table given in 567, the participles of **iubeō, dō, sentiō, ēripiō, cōgnōscō.**

Give orally, with English meanings, all the participles of **eō, mittō, faciō, videō, līberō.**

What participles has **sum, possum, volō, nōlō, mālō?**

575. Give as rapidly as possible the Latin for the following participles:

1. standing
2. about to come
3. placed
4. chosen
5. choosing
6. found
7. defended
8. about to do
9. sitting
10. beginning
11. wounded
12. recognizing
13. brought
14. bringing

576. Decline the Latin for the following:

1. a captured city
2. a falling rock
3. a lost book
4. a running horse
5. an armed soldier
6. a loving son
7. a fortified place
8. a fighting legion

577. Recast the following sentences into an English form containing a participle, and write in Latin:

1. The enemy made an attack on us as we were pitching camp.

2. We saw the terrified soldiers fleeing in (into) all directions (parts).

3. Although the Gauls had been conquered, they were unwilling to give up their arms.

4. The lieutenant hastened with his soldiers to the town, because he had been ordered to bring aid.

5. We shall set fire to this town if it is captured.

6. I heard you while you were saying these things.

7. The messengers who were sent by the chief have not come.

578. The following words are those given in the Required Vocabularies of Chapters LIV–LVIII. See how rapidly you can give the vocabulary forms and meanings of the entire list.

accidō	māgnitūdō	putō
barbarus	multum (posse)	quīntus
caedō	octō	reperiō
cēdō	omnīnō	sextus
cōnficiō (bellum)	opprimō	spērō
consīdō	optimē	trādūcō
cōnsistō	plūrimum (posse)	ūndēvīgintī
crēdō	plūs (posse)	vērus
ēripiō	praeficiō	vetus
etsī	praesum	

APPENDIX

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

579. First Declension

	Singular	Case Endings	Plural	Case Endings
Nom.	terra	-a	terrae	-ae
Gen.	terrae	-ae	terrārum	-ārum
Dat.	terrae	-ae	terrīs	-īs
Acc.	terram	-am	terrās	-ās
Abl.	terrā	-ā	terrīs	-īs

580. Second Declension

Singular

	M.	case endings	*N.*	case endings
Nom.	servus	-us	oppidum	-um
Gen.	servī	-ī	oppidī	-ī
Dat.	servō	-ō	oppidō	-ō
Acc.	servum	-um	oppidum	-um
Voc.	serve	-e		
Abl.	servō	-ō	oppidō	-ō

Plural

Nom.	servī	-ī	oppida	-a
Gen.	servōrum	-ōrum	oppidōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	servīs	-īs	oppidīs	-īs
Acc.	servōs	-ōs	oppida	-a
Abl.	servīs	-īs	oppidīs	-īs

			Singular		
Nom.	puer	liber	vir	fīlius	praemium
Gen.	puerī	librī	virī	fīlī (fīliī)	praemī (praemiī)
Dat.	puerō	librō	virō	fīliō	praemiō
Acc.	puerum	librum	virum	fīlium	praemium
Voc.				fīlī	
Abl.	puerō	librō	virō	fīliō	praemiō
			Plural		
Nom.	puerī	librī	virī	fīliī	praemia
Gen.	puerōrum	librōrum	virōrum	fīliōrum	praemiōrum
Dat.	puerīs	librīs	virīs	fīliīs	praemiīs
Acc.	puerōs	librōs	virōs	fīliōs	praemia
Abl.	puerīs	librīs	virīs	fīliīs	praemiīs

581. Third Declension

1. CONSONANT STEMS

a. Nouns with Nominative Like the Base

	Singular	Case Endings for Consonant Stems	
		M. and F.	*N.*
Nom.	honor	arbor (s)	
Gen.	honōris	arboris -is	-is
Dat.	honōrī	arborī -ī	-ī
Acc.	honōrem	arborem -em	
Abl.	honōre	arbore -e	-e
		Plural	
Nom.	honōrēs	arborēs -ēs	-a
Gen.	honōrum	arborum -um	-um
Dat.	honōribus	arboribus -ibus	-ibus
Acc.	honōrēs	arborēs -ēs	-a
Abl.	honōribus	arboribus -ibus	-ibus

b. Nouns with Nominative Formed by Modification of Base

Singular

Nom.	dux	pater	virtūs	nōmen
Gen.	ducis	patris	virtūtis	nōminis
Dat.	ducī	patrī	virtūtī	nōminī
Acc.	ducem	patrem	virtūtem	nōmen
Abl.	duce	patre	virtūte	nōmine

Plural

Nom.	ducēs	patrēs	virtūtēs	nōmina
Gen.	ducum	patrum	virtūtum	nōminum
Dat.	ducibus	patribus	virtūtibus	nōminibus
Acc.	ducēs	patrēs	virtūtēs	nōmina
Abl.	ducibus	patribus	virtūtibus	nōminibus

2. VOWEL STEMS

	Singular				Case Endings for Vowel Stems	
					M. and F.	*N.*
Nom.	hostis	caedēs	pōns	animal	(-s)	
Gen.	hostis	caedis	pontis	animālis	-is	-is
Dat.	hostī	caedī	pontī	animālī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	hostem	caedem	pontem	animal	-em	
Abl.	hoste	caede	ponte	animālī	-e	-ī

Plural

Nom.	hostēs	caedēs	pontēs	animālia	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	hostium	caedium	pontium	animālium	-ium	-ium
Dat.	hostibus	caedibus	pontibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	hostīs (-ēs)	caedīs (-ēs)	pontīs (-ēs)	animālia	-īs (-ēs)	-ia
Abl.	hostibus	caedibus	pontibus	animālibus	-ibus	-ibus

582. FOURTH DECLENSION

SINGULAR

	M.	CASE ENDINGS	N.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	impetus	-us	cornū	-ū
GEN.	impetūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
DAT.	impetuī (-ū)	-uī (-ū)	cornū	-ū
ACC.	impetum	-um	cornū	-ū
ABL.	impetū	-ū	cornū	-ū

PLURAL

NOM.	impetūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
GEN.	impetuum	-uum	cornuum	-uum
DAT.	impetibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	impetūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
ABL.	impetibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

583. FIFTH DECLENSION

					CASE ENDINGS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ĕī	-ērum
DAT.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ĕī	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

584. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

SINGULAR

NOM.	vir	vīs	deus	fīlia
GEN.	virī	—	deī	fīliae
DAT.	virō	—	deō	fīliae
ACC.	virum	vim	deum	fīliam
ABL.	virō	vī	deō	fīliā

		Plural		
Nom.	virī	vīrēs	deī, diī, dī	fīliae
Gen.	virōrum	vīrium	deōrum, deum	fīliārum
Dat.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diīs, dīs	fīliābus
Acc.	virōs	vīrēs (-īs)	deōs	fīliās
Abl.	virīs	vīribus	deīs, diīs, dīs	fīliābus

	Singular		
Nom.	senex	iter	domus
Gen.	senis	itineris	domūs (-ī)
Dat.	senī	itinerī	domuī (-ō)
Acc.	senem	iter	domum
Abl.	sene	itinere	domō (-ū)
	Plural		
Nom.	senēs	itinera	domūs
Gen.	senum	itinerum	domuum (-ōrum)
Dat.	senibus	itineribus	domibus
Acc.	senēs	itinera	domōs (-ūs)
Abl.	senibus	itineribus	domibus

ADJECTIVES

585. First and Second Declensions

	Singular		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

	M.	F.	N.
		Plural	
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
		Singular	
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō
		Plural	
Nom.	miserī	miserae	miserā
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
		Singular	
Nom.	piger	pigra	pigrum
Gen.	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī
Dat.	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō
Acc.	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
Abl.	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō
		Plural	
Nom.	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Gen.	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
Dat.	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
Acc.	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
Abl.	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

586. THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
NOM.	celer	celeris	celere
GEN.	celeris	celeris	celeris
DAT.	celerī	celerī	celerī
ACC.	celerem	celerem	celere
ABL.	celerī	celerī	celerī

PLURAL

NOM.	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
GEN.	celerium	celerium	celerium
DAT.	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
ACC.	celerīs (-ēs)	celerīs (-ēs)	celeria
ABL.	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

SINGULAR

NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

NOM.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
Nom.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Gen.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
Dat.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Acc.	potentem	potēns	potentīs (-ēs)	potentia
Abl.	potentī (-ē)	potentī (-ē)	potentibus	potentibus

587. Present Active Participles

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
Nom.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Gen.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Acc.	amantem	amāns	amantīs (-ēs)	amantia
Abl.	amante (-ī)	amante (-ī)	amantibus	amantibus

Nom.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
Gen.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
Dat.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
Acc.	euntem	iēns	euntīs (-ēs)	euntia
Abl.	eunte (-ī)	eunte (-ī)	euntibus	euntibus

588. Irregular Adjectives

Singular

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō

Plural

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

Singular

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
Nom.	trēs	tria	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	trium	trium	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	tribus	tribus	mīlle	mīlibus
Acc.	trīs, trēs	tria	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	tribus	tribus	mīlle	mīlibus

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

589. Declension of Comparatives

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
Nom.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Gen.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
Dat.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Acc.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs (-īs)	lātiōra
Abl.	lātiōre (-ī)	lātiōre (-ī)	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
Abl.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus

590. Comparison of Adjectives

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
clārus, -a, -um (clār-)	clārior, -ius	clārissimus, -a, -um
brevis, -e (brev-)	brevior, -ius	brevissimus, -a, -um
audāx, -ācis (audāc-)	audācior, -ius	audācissimus, -a, -um
miser, -era, -erum (miser-)	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre (ācr-)	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
similis, -e (simil-)	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um

591. Irregular Comparison

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	māior, -ius	māximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	—— plūs, plūris	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a
īnferus, -a, -um	īnferior, -ius	īnfimus, -a, -um *or* īmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um	superior, -ius	suprēmus, -a, -um *or* summus, -a, -um
iuvenis, -e	iunior *or* minor nātū	minimus nātū
senex, senis	senior *or* māior nātū	māximus nātū
vetus, -eris	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
——	prior, prius	prīmus, -a, -um

592. Comparison of Adverbs

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
longē	longius	longissimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē
celeriter	celerius	celerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
māgnōpere	magis	māximē
parum	minus	minimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

593. NUMERALS

	ROMAN NUMERALS	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	II	duo, duae, duo	secundus (*or* alter)
3.	III	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	IV	quattuor	quārtus
5.	V	quīnque	quīntus
6.	VI	sex	sextus
7.	VII	septem	septimus
8.	VIII	octō	octāvus
9.	IX	novem	nōnus
10.	X	decem	decimus
11.	XI	ūndecim	
12.	XII	duodecim	
13.	XIII	tredecim	
14.	XIV	quattuordecim	
15.	XV	quīndecim	
16.	XVI	sēdecim	
17.	XVII	septendecim	
18.	XVIII	duodēvīgintī	
19.	XIX	ūndēvīgintī	
20.	XX	vīgintī	
100.	C	centum	
1000.	M	mīlle	

PRONOUNS

594.

	PERSONAL (AND REFLEXIVE)				REFLEXIVE (THIRD PERSON)	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
GEN.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī	suī	suī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

595. DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

	Singular		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	Plural		
Nom.	eīdem (īdem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

596. Relative

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

597. Interrogative Pronoun

	Singular		Plural		
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

598. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

REGULAR VERBS

599. FIRST CONJUGATION. STEMS IN **ā**

PRIN. PARTS: **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus,** *love*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
I love, am loving, do love		*I am loved, am being loved*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
amō	**amāmus**	**amor**	**amāmur**
amās	**amātis**	**amāris (-re)**	**amāminī**
amat	**amant**	**amātur**	**amantur**
IMPERFECT			
I was loving, used to love		*I was being loved, used to be loved*	
amābam	**amābāmus**	**amābar**	**amābāmur**
amābās	**amābātis**	**amābāris (-re)**	**amābāminī**
amābat	**amābant**	**amābātur**	**amābantur**
FUTURE			
I shall love		*I shall be loved*	
amābō	**amābimus**	**amābor**	**amābimur**
amābis	**amābitis**	**amāberis (-re)**	**amābiminī**
amābit	**amābunt**	**amābitur**	**amābuntur**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	

PERFECT

I have loved, loved, did love		*I have been loved, was loved*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
amāvī	**amāvimus**	**amātus** sum	**amātī** sumus
amāvistī	**amāvistis**	**(-a, -um)** es	**(-ae, -a)** estis
amāvit	**amāvērunt (-ēre)**	est	sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had loved		*I had been loved*	
amāveram	**amāverāmus**	**amātus** eram	**amātī** erāmus
amāverās	**amāverātis**	**(-a, -um)** erās	**(-ae, -a)** erātis
amāverat	**amāverant**	erat	erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have loved		*I shall have been loved*	
amāverō	**amāverimus**	**amātus** erō	**amātī** erimus
amāveris	**amāveritis**	**(-a, -um)** eris	**(-ae, -a)** eritis
amāverit	**amāverint**	erit	erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. **amā**, *love (thou)*	2. **amāte**, *love (ye)*	2. **amāre**, *be (thou) loved*	2. **amāminī**, *be (ye) loved*

INFINITIVES

PRES.	**amāre**, *to love*	**amārī**, *to be loved*
PERF.	**amāvisse**, *to have loved*	**amātus, -a, -um** esse, *to have been loved*
FUT.	**amātūrus, -a, -um** esse, *to be about to love*	

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	**amāns**, -antis, *loving*	——
PERF.	——	**amātus, -a, -um**, *having been loved*
FUT.	**amātūrus, -a, -um**, *about to love*	

600. Second Conjugation. Stems in ē

Prin. Parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus,** *advise*

INDICATIVE

Active

Passive

PRESENT

I advise, am advising, do advise		*I am advised, am being advised*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris (-re)	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT

I was advising, used to advise		*I was being advised, used to be advised*	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris (-re)	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE

I shall advise		*I shall be advised*	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis (-re)	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

I have advised, advised, did advise		*I have been advised, I was advised*	
monuī	monuimus	monitus sum	monitī sumus
monuistī	monuistis	(-a, -um) es	(-ae, -a) estis
monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)	est	sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had advised		*I had been advised*	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	(-a, -um) erās	(-ae, -a) erātis
monuerat	monuerant	erat	erant

Active		Passive	
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have advised		*I shall have been advised*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus erō	monitī erimus
monueris	monueritis	(-a, -um) eris	(-ae, -a) eritis
monuerit	monuerint	erit	erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. monē, *advise (thou)*	2. monēte, *advise (ye)*	2. monēre, *be (thou) advised*	2. monēminī, *be (ye) advised*

INFINITIVES

PRES.	monēre, *to advise*	monērī, *to be advised*
PERF.	monuisse, *to have advised*	monitus, -a, -um esse, *to have been advised*
FUT.	monitūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to advise*	

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	monēns, -entis, *advising*	——
PERF.	——	monitus, -a, -um, *having been advised*
FUT.	monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to advise*	

601. THIRD CONJUGATION. STEMS IN e

PRIN. PARTS: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I lead, am leading, do lead		*I am led, am being led*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
dūcō	dūcimus	dūcor	dūcimur
dūcis	dūcitis	dūceris (-re)	dūciminī
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcitur	dūcuntur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
IMPERFECT			
I was leading, used to lead		*I was being led, used to be led*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris (-re)	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbat	dūcēbant	dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur
FUTURE			
I shall lead		*I shall be led*	
dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris (-re)	dūcēminī
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur
PERFECT			
I have led, led, did lead		*I have been led, was led*	
dūxī	dūximus	ductus (-a, -um) sum	ductī (-ae, -a) sumus
dūxistī	dūxistis	es	estis
dūxit	dūxērunt (-ēre)	est	sunt
PLUPERFECT			
I had led		*I had been led*	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus (-a, -um) eram	ductī (-ae, -a) erāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis	erās	erātis
dūxerat	dūxerant	erat	erant
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have led		*I shall have been led*	
dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus (-a, -um) erō	ductī (-ae, -a) erimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	eris	eritis
dūxerit	dūxerint	erit	erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. dūc,* *lead (thou)*	2. dūcite, *lead (ye)*	2. dūcere, *be (thou) led*	2. dūciminī, *be (ye) led*

* **dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō,** have as present imperatives **dīc, dūc, fac, fer**; the regular form of other verbs ends in **-e**, as **gerō**, imperative **gere**.

INFINITIVES

	Active	Passive
Pres.	dūcere, *to lead*	dūcī, *to be led*
Perf.	dūxisse, *to have led*	ductus, -a, -um esse, *to have been led*
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to lead*	

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	dūcēns, -entis, *leading*	——
Perf.	——	ductus, -a, -um, *having been led*
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um, *about to lead*	

602. Fourth Conjugation. Stems in ī

Prin. Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus,** *hear*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I hear, am hearing, do hear		*I am heard, am being heard*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris (-re)	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT

I was hearing, used to hear		*I was being heard, used to be heard*	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris (-re)	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

I shall hear		*I shall be heard*	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris (-re)	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PERFECT			
I have heard, heard, did hear		*I have been heard, I was heard*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
audīvī	audīvimus	audītus sum	audītī sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis	(-a, -um) es	(-ae, -a) estis
audīvit	audīvērunt (-ēre)	est	sunt
PLUPERFECT			
I had heard		*I had been heard*	
audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis	(-a, -um) erās	(-ae, -a) erātis
audīverat	audīverant	erat	erant
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have heard		*I shall have been heard*	
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus erō	audītī erimus
audīveris	audīveritis	(-a, -um) eris	(-ae, -a) eritis
audīverit	audīverint	erit	erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. audī, *hear (thou)*	2. audīte, *hear (ye)*	2. audīre, *be (thou) heard*	2. audīminī, *be (ye) heard*

INFINITIVES

PRES.	audīre, *to hear*	audīrī, *to be heard*
PERF.	audīvisse, *to have heard*	audītus, -a, -um esse, *to have been heard*
FUT.	audītūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to hear*	

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	audiēns, -entis, *hearing*	——
PERF.	——	audītus, -a, -um, *having been heard*
FUT.	audītūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear*	

603. Third Conjugation. Verbs in -iō

Prin. Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus,** *take*

INDICATIVE

Active		Passive	
PRESENT			
I take, am taking, do take		*I am taken, am being taken*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
IMPERFECT			
I was taking, used to take		*I was being taken, used to be taken*	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur
FUTURE			
I shall take		*I shall be taken*	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur
PERFECT			
I have taken, took, did take		*I have been taken, was taken*	
cēpī	cēpimus	captus sum	captī sumus
cēpistī	cēpistis	(-a, -um) es	(-ae, -a) estis
cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)	est	sunt
PLUPERFECT			
I had taken		*I had been taken*	
cēperam	cēperāmus	captus eram	captī erāmus
cēperās	cēperātis	(-a, -um) erās	(-ae, -a) erātis
cēperat	cēperant	erat	erant

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
FUTURE PERFECT			
I shall have taken		*I shall have been taken*	
Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
cēperō	cēperimus	captus erō	captī erimus
cēperis	cēperitis	(-a, -um) eris	(-ae, -a) eritis
cēperit	cēperint	erit	erunt

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. cape, *take* (*thou*)	2. capite, *take* (*ye*)	2. capere, *be* (*thou*) *taken*	2. capiminī, *be* (*ye*) *taken*

INFINITIVES

PRES.	capere, *to take*	capī, *to be taken*
PERF.	cēpisse, *to have taken*	captus, -a, -um esse, *to have been taken*
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to take*	

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	capiēns, -entis, *taking*	——
PERF.	——	captus, -a, -um, *having been taken*
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um, *about to take*	

IRREGULAR VERBS

604. PRIN. PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,** *be*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*
es, *you are*	estis, *you are*
est, *he (she, it) is*	sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
eram, *I was*	erāmus, *we were*
erās, *you were*	erātis, *you were*
erat, *he was*	erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*	erimus, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	eritis, *you will be*
erit, *he will be*	erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, was*	fuimus, *we have been, were*
fuistī, *you have been, were*	fuistis, *you have been, were*
fuit, *he has been, was*	fuērunt (-ēre), *they have been, were*

PLUPERFECT

fueram, *I had been*	fuerāmus, *we had been*
fuerās, *you had been*	fuerātis, *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	fuerant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fueris, *you will have been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. es, *be* (*thou*)	2. este, *be* (*ye*)

	INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	esse, *to be*	——
PERF.	fuisse, *to have been*	——
FUT.	futūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to be*	futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be*

605. PRIN. PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī,** *be able, can*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
possum, *I am able, can*	possumus, *we are able, can*
potes, *you are able, can*	potestis, *you are able, can*
potest, *he (she, it) is able, can*	possunt, *they are able, can*

IMPERFECT

poteram, *I was able, could*	poterāmus, *we were able, could*

FUTURE

poterō, *I shall be able*	poterimus, *we shall be able*

PERFECT

potuī, *I have been able, could*	potuimus, *we have been able, could*

PLUPERFECT

potueram, *I had been able*	potuerāmus, *we had been able*

FUTURE PERFECT

potuerō, *I shall have been able*	potuerimus, *we shall have been able*

	INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	posse, *to be able*	potēns, -entis (used as adjective), *powerful*
PERF.	potuisse, *to have been able*	

606. PRIN. PARTS:

volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
mālō, mālle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam -ēs, etc.	nōlam -ēs, etc.	mālam -ēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

——	nōlī	——
——	nōlīte	——

INFINITIVES

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	volēns, -entis	nōlēns, -entis	——

607. PRIN. PARTS: **eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus,** *go*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
eō	īmus
īs	ītis
it	eunt

IMPERFECT

ībam	ībāmus

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Singular	*Plural*
ī	ītе

FUTURE		INFINITIVES	
Singular	*Plural*		
ībō	ībimus	PRES.	īre
PERFECT		PERF.	īsse
iī (īvī)	iimus	FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um esse
īstī	īstis		
iit	iērunt (-ēre)		
PLUPERFECT		PARTICIPLES	
ieram (īveram)	ierāmus	PRES.	iēns, euntis
FUTURE PERFECT		PERF.	——
ierō (īverō)	ierimus	FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um

SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

Agreement

1. A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. (**2**, 1, *e*; **62**, *g*)

2. Adjectives, whether attributive or predicate, including possessive adjectives, agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns to which they refer. (**62**, *h*)

a. A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive is in the nominative case, agreeing with the subject of the main verb. (**318**, 3)

b. A predicate adjective after an objective infinitive is in the accusative case, agreeing with the subject of the infinitive. (**489**, 3)

3. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. (**77**)

4. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends upon its use in its own clause. (**259–260**)

5. Participles agree in gender, number, and case with a noun or pronoun expressed or understood. (569, 1)

Noun Syntax

1. Nominative Case

a. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. (2, 1, *b*; 62, *a*)

b. A predicate noun or adjective, referring to the subject, is in the nominative case. (2, 1, *c*; 62, *a*)

2. Genitive Case

a. The genitive case is used to express possession. (10; 62, *b*)

b. Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive of the whole to which the part belongs. (497, 1; 498) But with cardinal numerals, except **mīlia**, and with **quīdam**, the ablative with **dē** or **ex** generally replaces the genitive of the whole. (497, 2)

3. Dative Case

a. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. (50; 62, *c*)

b. The dative is used with adjectives of fitness, nearness, likeness, friendliness, service, and the like, and their opposites. (281–282)

4. Accusative Case

a. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. (29; 62, *d*)

b. Place *to which* is regularly expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; with names of cities and towns, **domus, humus,** and **rūs**, by the accusative without a preposition. (158, 3; 180, 2, *c*; 510, 2)

c. The accusative is used with the following prepositions:

ad	extrā	ob	sub (with vbs.
ante	in (with vbs.	per	of motion)
apud	of motion)	post	suprā
circum	inter	praeter	trāns
contrā	intrā	propter	ultrā

d. Extent of space and duration of time are expressed by the accusative. (399–400)

e. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case. (486; 489)

5. Vocative Case

The vocative case is used for direct address. (24, 8; 62, *e*)

6. Ablative Case

a. Place *in which* is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in.** (158, 1; 180, 2, *a*)

b. Place *from which* is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē, ē** (**ex**); with names of cities and towns, **domus, humus,** and **rūs,** by the ablative without a preposition. (158, 2; 180, 2, *b*; 510, 3)

c. The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (100–101)

d. The ablative with **cum** is used to express the manner of an action, but **cum** may be omitted if the ablative phrase contains an adjective modifier. (201–202)

e. The ablative with **cum** is used to express accompaniment. (219–220)

f. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**). (232–233)

g. Time *when* or *within which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (270–271)

h. The ablative is used to express separation with verbs of removing, freeing, depriving, abstaining, lacking, and the like. A preposition (**ab, dē, ex**) is used if actual motion is expressed, or if the ablative word refers to a person. (378–379)

i. The ablative of comparison, without a preposition, may be used after comparatives instead of **quam** and the nominative, or **quam** and the accusative. (438–439)

j. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree of difference when two objects are compared. (448–449)

k. The ablative of specification, without a preposition, is used to tell in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. (459–460)

1. The following prepositions are followed by the ablative:

ā (ab)	in
cum	prō
dē	sine
ē (ex)	sub

7. Locative Case

Place *in which*, with names of cities and towns, **domus, humus,** and **rūs,** is expressed by the locative. (510, 1)

Verb Syntax

1. Indicative Mode

a. The indicative mode is used for direct statements of fact. (126)

b. A direct question has its verb in the indicative.

Questions may be introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs. (136)

Questions not introduced by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs are introduced by **-ne, nōnne,** or **num.** (136, 1, 2, 3; 180, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*)

2. Imperative Mode

a. Affirmative commands are expressed by the imperative. (126)

b. Negative commands are expressed by **nōlī** or **nōlīte** (imperative of **nōlō**) with a complementary infinitive. (499, 2)

3. Infinitives

a. A complementary infinitive is used with many verbs requiring another action of the same subject to complete their meaning. (318; 487)

b. An objective infinitive with subject accusative may be used after the verbs **iubeō, cōgō, prohibeō, volō, nōlō, mālō,** and **cupiō,** and a few others. (488)

c. An infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be the subject of a verb used impersonally. (485)

d. An indirect statement depending upon a verb of saying, thinking, knowing, or perceiving is expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative. (536–539)

4. Participles

Participles are verbal adjectives, used either as simple adjectives or as the equivalent of dependent clauses, relative, temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional. (569)

Syntax of Clauses

A clause is a part of a sentence containing a subject and predicate.

Every sentence contains one or more clauses; a simple sentence consists of one independent clause; a compound

sentence is composed of two or more independent clauses connected by *and*, *or*, *but*, etc.; a complex sentence is composed of an independent clause and one or more dependent, or subordinate, clauses modifying it.

Subordinate clauses are classed as substantive or noun clauses, adjective clauses, and adverbial clauses, according to their use in the sentence. (560)

Under adjective clauses is included the relative clause. (259; 302; 560)

Under adverbial clauses are included:

Causal clauses with **quod.** (302; 560)

Temporal clauses with **dum, ubi, postquam, simul atque,** and **priusquam.** (327; 474; 560)

Conditional clauses with **sī** and **nisi.** (500; 560)

Concessive clauses with **etsī.** (528; 560)

Under substantive clauses is included the indirect statement. (536; 560)

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
adj.	adjective.
adv.	adverb.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunction.
dat.	dative.
demonst.	demonstrative.
f.	feminine.
indecl.	indeclinable.
infin.	infinitive.
intens.	intensive.
interj.	interjection.
interrog.	interrogative.
m.	masculine.
n.	neuter.
neg.	negative.
pass.	passive.
pers.	personal.
plur.	plural.
prep.	preposition.
pron.	pronoun.
reflex.	reflexive.
rel.	relative.
sing.	singular.
superl.	superlative.
vb., vbs.	verb, verbs.

VOCABULARY

LATIN–ENGLISH

A

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, away from, by.
abeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (ab + eō), go away.
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (ab + sum), be absent, be away.
ac, *see* **atque.**
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (ad + cēdō), come to, approach.
accidō, -ere, -cidī, — (ad + cadō), befall, happen.
accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad + capiō), take to, receive, accept.
accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fit, adapt.
ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp, eager.
aciēs, aciēī, *f.*, edge, line of battle.
ācriter, *adv.*, sharply, fiercely.
Actium, -ī, *n.*, Actium, a promontory of Greece.
ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward, near.
adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (ad + eō), go towards, approach.
administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, direct, manage.
admīrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, wonder.
adōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ad + ōrō), entreat, worship.
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (ad + sum), be present, assist.
adventus, -ūs, *m.*, arrival.
adversārius, -ī, *m.*, rival, antagonist.
aedificium, -ī, *n.*, building.
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, build.
Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*, Egypt.
Aemilia, -ae, *f.*, Aemilia, a Roman name.
aequus, -a, -um, even, fair, equal.
aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer.
aetās, -tātis, *f.*, age.
Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, Africa.
ager, agrī, *m.*, field.
agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, drive.
āgmen, -minis, *n.*, column of march; **prīmum āgmen,** the van.
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, do, act; **vītam agere,** spend a life; **grātiās agere,** give thanks.
agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer.
āla, -ae, *f.*, wing.
Alba Longa, Albae Longae, *f.*, Alba Longa (the long white city), a city of Latium.
albus, -a, -um, white.
alius, alia, aliud, other, another. **aliī . . . aliī,** some . . . others.
Alpēs, -ium, *f. plur.*, the Alps.
alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), second; **alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other.
altus, -a, -um, high, deep.
ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, walk.
America, -ae, *f.*, America.
Americānus, -a, -um, American.
amīca, -ae, *f.*, friend.
amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.
amīcus, -ī, *m.*, friend.
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ā + mittō), let go away, lose.
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love, like.
amor, -ōris, *m.*, love.
amphora, -ae, *f.*, jar.
Amūlius, -ī, *m.*, Amulius, a king of Alba Longa.

ancilla, -ae, *f.*, female slave, maid-servant.
Ancus, -ī, *m.*, Ancus, a Roman name; **Ancus Mārtius,** fourth king of Rome.
angustus, -a, -um, narrow.
animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal.
animus, -ī, *m.*, spirit, feeling, mind.
annus, -ī, *m.*, year.
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before.
anteā, *adv.*, before.
antīquus, -a, -um, old, ancient.
Antōnius, -ī, *m.*, Antony, a Roman name.
apertus, -a, -um, open.
Apollō, Apollinis, *m.*, Apollo, god of archery, music, prophecy, and the sun.
appareō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, appear, become visible.
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, name, call.
Appius, -a, -um, Appian.
Appius, -ī, *m.*, Appius, a Roman name; **Appius Claudius,** "the blind censor."
appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, approach.
apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the presence of.
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.
aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle.
āra, -ae, *f.*, altar.
arātrum, -ī, *n.*, plow.
arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.
arca, -ae, *f.*, chest, box.
ārea, -ae, *f.*, court, yard.
arēna, -ae, *f.*, sand, arena.
āreō, -ēre, —, —, be dry, dry up.
āridus, -a, -um, dry.
arithmētica, -ae, *f.*, arithmetic.
arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, defensive arms, armor.
armentum, -ī, *n.*, herd of cattle.
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arm, equip.
arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, plow.
ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art.
ascendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, climb, ascend, mount.
Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia.
Atalanta, -ae, *f.*, Atalanta, a Greek maiden.
Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Athens, a city of Greece.
atque (ac), *conj.*, and also, and.
ātrium, -ī, *n.*, atrium, chief room of a Roman house.
auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, influence, authority.
audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness.
audāx, -ācis, bold.
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare.
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear.
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase, make larger.
augustus, -a, -um, majestic, august; **Augustus, -ī,** imperial title of Octavianus.
aureus, -a, -um, golden.
aurīga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer.
aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.
aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.
autem, *conj.* (*postpositive*), however, but, moreover, now.
auxilium, -ī, *n.*, aid, assistance.
āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus (ā + vertō), turn aside, avert.
avidus, -a, -um, greedy.
avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.

B

barbarus, -a, -um, savage, uncivilized, barbarous.
beātus, -a, -um, happy.
Belgae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, Belgians.
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war; **bellum gerere,** wage war; **bellum cōnficere,** bring a war to a successful close.
bene, *adv.*, well; *comp.*, **melius,** better; *superl.*, **optimē,** best, exceedingly well.

beneficium, -ī, *n.*, kindness, service, benefit.
bibliothēca, -ae, *f.*, library.
bonus, -a, -um, good; *comp.*, **melior, -ius,** better; *superl.*, **optimus, -a, -um,** best.
bracchium, -ī, *n.*, arm.
brevis, -e, brief, short.
breviter, *adv.*, briefly.
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain.
Brundisium, -ī, *n.*, Brundisium, a seaport of Italy.
Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Brutus, a Roman name; **Lūcius Iūnius Brūtus,** one of Rome's first consuls.
bulla, -ae, *f.*, a round ornament, locket, charm.

C

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, fall.
caecus, -a, -um, blind.
caedēs, -is, *f.*, slaughter.
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, cut, cut down, kill.
caelum, -ī, *n.*, heavens, sky.
Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Caesar, a Roman name; **Gāius Iūlius Caesar,** member of the first triumvirate, and conqueror of Gaul.
calceus, -ī, *m.*, shoe.
callidus, -a, -um, crafty, ingenious.
calor, -ōris, *m.*, heat.
camera, -ae, *f.*, room.
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, capture, seize; **cōnsilium capere,** form a plan.
Capitōlīnus, -a, -um, Capitoline, of the Capitol.
Capitōlium, -ī, *n.*, the Capitol, the citadel and temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill.
captīvus, -ī, *m.*, captive.
caput, -itis, *n.*, head.
carrus, -ī, *m.*, wagon (with two wheels).
Carthāginiēnsis, -e, Carthaginian; *as noun,* **Carthāginiēnsis, -is,** *m.*, a Carthaginian.
Carthāgō, -ginis, *f.*, Carthage, a city of northern Africa.
cārus, -a, -um, dear.
casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut.
Castōr, -oris, *m.*, Castor, brother of Pollux and Helen.
castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, camp; **castra movēre,** break camp; **castra pōnere,** pitch camp.
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, chance, accident, misfortune.
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, case.
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, move, yield, grant.
celeber, -bris, -bre, famous.
celer, -eris, -ere, swift.
celeritās, -tātis, *f.*, speed, swiftness.
celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly.
cella, -ae, *f.*, storeroom.
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, conceal, hide.
cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner.
cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dine.
centum, *indecl. adj.*, one hundred.
centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion, a military officer.
cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax.
certāmen, -minis, *n.*, contest.
charta, -ae, *f.*, map.
cibus, -ī, *m.*, food.
Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Cimbri, a German tribe.
Cincinnātus, -ī, *m.*, Cincinnatus, a Roman name.
Cīneās, -ae, *m.*, Cineas, friend of Pyrrhus.
circiter, *adv.*, about.
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around, about.
circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, -status, stand around, surround.
circus, -ī, *m.*, ring, race-course.
cīvīlis, -e, of a citizen, civil.
cīvis, -is, *m.*, citizen.
cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*, state, citizenship.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cry out, shout, exclaim.
clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, noise, shout.
clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright, famous.
Claudia, -ae, *f.*, Claudia, a Roman name.
Claudius, -ī, *m.*, Claudius, a Roman name; **Appius Claudius,** *see* **Appius.**
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, shut, close, imprison.
clausus, -a, -um, closed.
clēmentia, -ae, *f.*, kindness, gentleness.
cliēns, -entis, *m.*, dependent, follower.
clīvus, -ī, *m.*, hill, slope.
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, began (*used only in perfect tenses*).
cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think, consider, ponder.
cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, become acquainted with, learn, recognize; *perfect tenses,* know.
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus (**con** + **agō**), collect; *with infin.*, force, compel.
cohors, -hortis, *f.*, cohort, a division of the legion.
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus (**con** + **legō**), collect.
collis, -is, *m.*, hill.
collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**con** + **locō**), place together, put.
columba, -ae, *f.*, dove.
columna, -ae, *f.*, pillar, column.
comes, -itis, *m.*, companion.
committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (**con** + **mittō**), bring together, entrust, perform; **proelium committere,** begin battle.
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (**con** + **moveō**), alarm, startle.
commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change, exchange.
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill.
complūrēs, -a (**-ia**), several, very many.
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, win over, gain.
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, condemn.
condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, terms, agreement.
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (**con** + **faciō**), accomplish, complete, wear out, exhaust; **bellum cōnficere,** bring a war to a successful close.
cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make firm, establish.
cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**con** + **iaciō**), throw, hurl.
coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus (**con** + **iungō**), join together.
coniūnx, coniugis, *m. and f.*, husband *or* wife.
coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, conspire.
cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus (**con** + **scrībō**), enlist.
consīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus (**con** + **sedeō**), sit down, settle.
cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, plan, advice.
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, take a stand, halt.
cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, catch sight of, behold.
cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, cōnstitūtus, put together, establish, station; *with complementary infin.*, determine, decide.
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, become accustomed; *perfect tenses,* be accustomed.
cōnsul, -is, *m.*, consul.
cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*, consulship.
cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultus, ask advice, consult.
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, struggle, hasten, strive.
contineō, -ēre, -uī, contentus (**con** + **teneō**), hold together, restrain, keep.
contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against.
controversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute, controversy.

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (con + veniō), come together, assemble.
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (con + vocō), call together; summon, gather.
cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, plenty, supply.
cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, troops, forces.
corbula, -ae, *f.*, basket.
Coriolānus, -ī, *m.*, Coriolanus, a Roman name.
Corioli, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Corioli, a town of the Volscians.
Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, a Roman name.
cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing of an army.
corōna, -ae, *f.*, garland, crown.
corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.
cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily.
crās, *adv.*, to-morrow.
Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Crassus, a Roman name.
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, believe.
cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, burn up.
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, elect, appoint, make.
crēta, -ae, *f.*, crayon.
Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete, an island of the Mediterranean Sea.
crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.*, cruelty.
cubiculum, -ī, *n.*, sleeping-room.
culīna, -ae, *f.*, kitchen.
culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault.
culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, blame.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.
cum, *conj.*, when.
cūnctus, -a, -um, entire, all.
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, desire, wish.
cūr, *adv.*, why?
cūra, -ae, *f.*, care.
cūria, -ae, *f.*, senate house.
cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take care of.
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, run.
currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.
cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course, running.
cūstōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, custodian.
cymba, -ae, *f.*, boat.

D

Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, Daedalus, an Athenian exiled to Crete.
dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, concerning.
dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess.
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, owe, ought.
decem, *indecl. adj.*, ten.
decimus, -a, -um, tenth.
Decius, -ī, *m.*, Decius, a Roman name.
dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, rebellion, desertion.
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, defend, protect.
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired, exhausted.
deinde, *adv.*, then, next in order.
dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, please, delight.
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy.
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, choose, select.
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, show, point out.
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (dē + pōnō), put down, lay aside.
dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, go down, descend.
dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, desire, long for.
deus, -ī, *m.*, god.
dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, vow, devote.
dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand.
Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, goddess of the chase.
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell.
dictātor, -ōris, *m.*, dictator.
diēs, diēī, *m.*, day.
difficilis, -e, difficult.
dīgnitās, -tātis, *f.*, dignity.
dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, diligence, carefulness.
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (dis + mittō), send away, dismiss.
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (dis + cēdō), go away, depart, withdraw.

disciplīna, -ae, *f.*, training, instruction.
discipula, -ae, *f.*, pupil.
discipulus, -ī, *m.*, pupil.
dissimilis, -e, unlike.
diū, *adv.*, for a long time; *comp.*, **diūtius**; *superl.*, **diūtissimē.**
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, divide.
dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, riches, wealth.
dō, dare, dedī, datus, give; **in fugam dare,** put to flight; **poenās dare,** pay the penalty, suffer punishment.
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, teach.
doctor, -ōris, *m.*, teacher.
dolor, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain, sorrow.
domicilium, -ī, *n.*, dwelling.
domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress, ruler.
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, *especially* of a house.
domus, -ūs *or* **domī,** *f.*, home, house, family.
dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift.
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, —, sleep.
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, doubt, hesitate.
dubium, -ī, *n.*, doubt.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry.
dum, *conj.*, while.
duo, duae, duo, two.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, general.

E

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, out from.
ecce, *interj.*, behold! look!
ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bring up, rear, educate.
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (ex + faciō), bring about, effect, accomplish.
ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, I.
elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant, ivory.
emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus, buy.
enim, *conj.* (*postpositive*), for.
eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place.
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus, go.
Ēpīrus, -ī, *f.*, Epirus, a country of northern Greece.
eques, -itis, *m.*, horseman, knight; *plur.*, cavalry.
equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, a body of cavalry.
equus, -ī, *m.*, horse.
ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus (ex + rapiō), snatch, rescue.
errātum, -ī, *n.*, mistake, error.
et, *conj.*, and; **et . . . et,** both . . . and.
etiam, *adv. and conj.*, also, even.
Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, Etruria, a district of Italy.
Etrūscus, -a, -um, Etruscan, of Etruria: *as noun,* **Etrūscus, -ī,** *m.*, an Etruscan.
etsī, *conj.*, even if, although.
Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, Europe.
Eurydicē, -ēs, *f.*, Eurydice, wife of Orpheus.
exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example.
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (ex + eō), go out.
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, exercise, train.
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
exōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, adorn.
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (ex + pellō), drive out, expel.
exsilium, -ī, *n.*, exile.
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wait for, expect.
exspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, breathe forth.
extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside, beyond.
extrēmus, -a, -um, the end of, last, farthest.

F

Fabricius, -ī, *m.*, Fabricius, a Roman name.
fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, tale.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, -e, easy.

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, make, do; **proelium facere,** fight a battle.
factum, -ī, *n.*, deed.
falsus, -a, -um, deceitful, false.
fāma, -ae, *f.*, renown, fame, report, rumor.
familia, -ae, *f.*, family.
fātum, -ī, *n.*, fate, destiny.
fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.
fenestra, -ae, *f.*, window.
fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith, trust, honor, pledge.
fīdus, -a, -um, faithful, trusty.
fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
fīlius, -ī, *m.*, son.
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end, limit; *plur.*, **fīnēs, -ium,** boundaries, territory.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, near. **fīnitimī, -ōrum,** *m. plur.*, neighbors.
flagellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, whip.
flamma, -ae, *f.*, fire, flame.
flūmen, -minis, *n.*, river.
focus, -ī, *m.*, fireplace, hearth.
foedō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pollute, spoil, corrupt.
fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring, fountain.
fōrma, -ae, *f.*, shape, form, beauty.
fortis, -e, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, bravery, courage.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, lot, luck.
forum, -ī, *n.*, forum, market-place.
fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, moat.
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break, crush.
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain.
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, uselessly.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam dare,** put to flight.
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, flee, escape.
fulmen, -minis, *n.*, thunderbolt.

G

Gāius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius, a Roman name.
galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet.
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul.
Gallicus, -a, -um, of Gaul, Gallic.
gallīna, -ae, *f.*, hen.
Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul.
gaudium, -ī, *n.*, joy, gladness.
geminus, -a, -um, twin, double. **geminī, -ōrum,** *m. plur.*, twins.
gemma, -ae, *f.*, jewel, gem.
gēns, gentis, *f.*, clan, family, tribe, race.
geōgraphia, -ae, *f.*, geography.
Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany.
Germānicus, -a, -um, German.
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, wear, carry on, accomplish; *pass.*, go on, happen; **bellum gerere,** wage war.
gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*, gladiator
gladiātōrius, -a, -um, gladiatorial.
gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword.
glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown.
Gracchus, -ī, *m.*, Gracchus, a Roman name.
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece.
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; *m. plur.*, **Graecī, -ōrum,** the Greeks.
grātia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, favor; **grātiās agere,** give thanks.
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, grateful.
gravis, -e, heavy, severe, grave.
graviter, *adv.*, heavily, severely, seriously.

H

habēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, reins.
habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, have, hold.
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, live, dwell.
Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, Hannibal, a Carthaginian general.
Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Helvetians, a tribe of Gaul.
herba, -ae, *f.*, vegetation, grass, herb.
herī, *adv.*, yesterday.
hīberna, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, winter-quarters.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland.
hic, haec, hoc, *demonst. adj. and pron.*, this; *pers. pron.*, he, she, it.
hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place.
hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.
Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain.
hodiē, *adv.*, to-day.
homō, hominis, *m.*, human being, man.
honor, -ōris, *m.*, honor, esteem.
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.
Horātius, -ī, *m.*, Horatius, a Roman name.
horreum, -ī, *n.*, storehouse, barn.
horribilis, -e, horrible, dreadful.
hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden.
hostīlis, -e, hostile.
hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy.
hūc, *adv.*, hither, to this place.
humilis, -e, low, humble.

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, lie, be prostrate.
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, hurl.
iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, throw, hurl.
iam, *adv.*, now, already.
iānua, -ae, *f.*, door.
ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place.
Īcarius, -a, -um, Icarian.
Īcarus, -ī, *m.*, Icarus, son of Daedalus.
īdem, eadem, idem, *demonst. pron. and adj.*, same.
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable.
igitur, *conj.* (*postpositive*), therefore.
īgnis, -is, *m.*, fire.
ille, illa, illud, *demonst. pron. and adj.*, that; *pers. pron.*, he, she, it.
immortālis, -e, immortal.
impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*, hindrance.
impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, baggage, baggage train.
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hinder, prevent.
imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, commander, commander-in-chief of an army.
imperium, -ī, *n.*, military authority, power; empire.
impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack.
impluvium, -ī, *n.*, impluvium, basin for receiving rain-water.
improbus, -a, -um, wicked.
īmus, -a, -um, *see* **īnferus.**
in, *prep. with abl.*, in, on; *with acc.*, into, to, against, upon.
incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, set on fire, kindle.
incertus, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain.
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**in** + **capiō**), begin.
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, urge on, incite.
incōgnitus, -a, -um, unknown.
incola, -ae, *m. and f.*, inhabitant.
inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place.
īnferior, -ius, *see* **īnferus.**
īnferus, -a, -um, below; *comp.*, **īnferior, -ius,** lower; *superl.*, **īnfimus, -a, -um,** *or* **īmus, -a, -um,** lowest, the bottom of.
īnfimus, -a, -um, *see* **īnferus.**
īnfīrmus, -a, -um, weak, infirm.
īnflammō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, set fire to.
ingenium, -ī, *n.*, ability, genius.
ingēns, -gentis, huge, enormous, vast.
inimīcus, -a, -um, unfriendly.
iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong.
inopia, -ae, *f.*, lack, want, need.
inquit, he (she) says, he (she) said; *plur.*, **inquiunt,** they say, they said.
īnsānus, -a, -um, insane.
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, arrange, draw up.
īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island.
integritās, -tātis, *f.*, integrity, honesty, uprightness.
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus (**inter** + **legō**), understand.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among.
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + faciō), kill.
interim, *adv.*, in the meanwhile.
intrepidus, -a, -um, undaunted, intrepid.
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, enter.
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (in + veniō), come upon, find.
invidia, -ae, *f.*, envy, jealousy.
Iō, *interj.*, hurrah!
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *demonst. pron. and adj.*, self, very.
īra, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath.
is, ea, id, *demonst. pron. and adj.*, this, that; *pers. pron.*, he, she, it.
ita, *adv.*, so, thus.
Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.
itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore.
iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, road, march.
iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.
iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus, order, bid.
iūdicium, -ī, *n.*, judgment, decision.
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, judge, decide.
Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, a Roman name.
Iūlius, -ī, *m.*, Julius, a Roman name.
iūmentum, -ī, *n.*, beast of burden.
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join.
iūnior, *see* **iuvenis.**
Iūnius, -ī, *m.*, Junius, a Roman name; **Lūcius Iūnius Brūtus,** *see* **Brūtus.**
Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter, king of the gods.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice.
iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, *n.*, oath, sworn pledge.
iūstus, -a, -um, just, fair.
iuvenis, -e, young; *as noun,* **iuvenis, -is,** young man, youth: *comp.*, **iūnior,** *or* **minor nātū,** younger; *superl.*, **minimus nātū,** youngest.
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid.

L

labor, -ōris, *m.*, work, labor.
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, work.
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, Lacedaemonian, Spartan; *as noun, m.*, a Spartan.
lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.
laetus, -a, -um, joyful, glad.
lātē, *adv.*, widely.
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin, belonging to Latium; *m. plur.*, **Latīnī, -ōrum,** the Latins.
Lātōna, -ae, *f.*, Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.
latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, pirate.
lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide.
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, praise.
laus, -laudis, *f.*, praise.
lavō, -āre, lāvī, lavātus, wash.
lectīca, -ae, *f.*, litter.
lectus, -ī, *m.*, bed, couch.
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, envoy, ambassador, lieutenant.
legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion (a division of the army).
legiōnārius, -a, -um, of a legion, legionary.
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, gather, choose, read.
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.
libenter, *adv.*, gladly, willingly.
liber, librī, *m.*, book.
līber, -era, -erum, free.
līberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, children.
līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, set free, liberate.
lībertās, -tātis, *f.*, freedom, liberty.
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
līnum, -ī, *n.*, linen, thread.
līttera, -ae, *f.*, letter (of the alphabet); *plur.*, a letter, epistle, literature.
lītus, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach.
Līvius, -ī, *m.*, Livy, a Roman writer.
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, place, put.
locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, **locī,** *m., and* **loca,** *n.*, place.

longē, *adv.*, a long distance, far.
longus, -a, -um, long.
lucerna, -ae, *f.*, lamp.
Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius, a Roman name.
lūdus, -ī, *m.*, school; game, sport.
lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon.
lupa, -ae, *f.*, she-wolf.
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light; **prīmā lūce,** at daybreak.
lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury.
Lȳdia, -ae, *f.*, Lydia, a country of Asia Minor.
Lȳdus, -ī, *m.*, Lydus, name of a slave.

M

maculōsus, -a, -um, spotted, tainted.
Maecēnās, -ae, *m.*, Maecenas, adviser of Augustus.
magis, *see* **māgnōpere.**
magister, -trī, *m.*, master (of a school), teacher.
magistra, -ae, *f.*, teacher, schoolmistress.
māgnificē, *adv.*, splendidly.
māgnificus, -a, -um, imposing, magnificent.
māgnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, size, greatness.
māgnōpere, *adv.*, greatly; *comp.*, **magis,** more; *superl.*, **māximē,** most greatly, especially.
māgnus, -a, -um, large, great; *comp.*, **māior, -ius,** larger; *superl.*, **māximus, -a, -um,** largest.
māior, -ius, *see* **māgnus; māior nātū,** *see* **senex.**
mālō, mālle, māluī, — (**magis** + **volō**), wish rather, prefer.
malus, -a, -um, bad; *comp.*, **peior, -ius,** worse; *superl.*, **pessimus, -a, -um,** worst.
mandātum, -ī, *n.*, command, instruction, order.
māne, *adv.*, early, in the morning.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, remain.
mānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, drip, trickle, flow.
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, band of men.
Mārcellus, -ī, *m.*, Marcellus, a Roman name.
Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus, a Roman name.
mare, -is, *n.*, sea.
Marius, -ī, *m.*, Marius, a Roman name.
marmoreus, -a, -um, marble.
Mārtius, -ī, *m.*, Martius, a Roman name; **Ancus Mārtius,** *see* **Ancus.**
māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.
mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.*, marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry.
mātrōna, -ae, *f.*, married woman, matron.
māximē, *see* **māgnōpere.**
māximus, -a, -um, *see* **māgnus; māximus nātū,** *see* **senex.**
medicus, -ī, *m.*, physician.
medius, -a, -um, middle of.
melior, -ius, *see* **bonus.**
melius, *see* **bene.**
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory.
mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind.
mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table, desk.
mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.
Mercurius, -ī, *m.*, Mercury, messenger of the gods, inventor of the lyre, and god of commerce.
mēta, -ae, *f.*, goal-post.
meus, -a, -um, my, mine.
mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier.
mīlitāris, -e, military.
mīlle, *indecl. adj.*, a thousand; *plur.*, **mīlia, -ium,** *n.*, thousands.
minimē, *see* **minus.**
minimus, -a, -um, *see* **parvus; minimus nātū,** *see* **iuvenis.**
minor, -us, *see* **parvus; minor nātū,** *see* **iuvenis.**
Mīnōtaurus, -ī, *m.*, the Minotaur, a monster dwelling in Crete.

minus, *comp. adv.*, less; *superl.*, **minimē,** least; not in the least, not at all.
miser, -era, -erum, unhappy, miserable.
Mithridātēs, -is, *m.*, Mithridates, a king of Pontus.
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, send.
modus, -ī, *m.*, manner, way.
moenia, -ium, *n. plur.*, walls (of a city), fortifications.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, advise, warn.
mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.
mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, marvel, portent, monster.
monumentum, -ī, *n.*, memorial, monument.
mora, -ae, *f.*, delay.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mortuus, -a, -um, dead.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, habit; *plur.*, manners, character.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move; **castra movēre,** break camp.
mox, *adv.*, soon.
Mūcius, -ī, *m.*, Mucius, a Roman name.
mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.
multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, large number, multitude.
multō, *adv.*, much.
multum, *adv.*, much; *comp.*, **plūs,** more; *superl.*, **plūrimum,** most; **multum (plūs, plūrimum) posse,** to have much (more, most) power.
multus, -a, -um, much; *plur.*, **multī, -ae, -a,** many; *comp.*, **plūs, plūris,** more; *superl.*, **plūrimus, -a, -um,** most.
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, fortify, build.
mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.
mūsicus, -a, -um, of music, musical.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, change, alter.

N

nam, *conj.*, for.
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tell, narrate.
natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, swim.
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature.
nātus, -a, um, born; **septem annōs nātus sum,** I am seven years old.
nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor.
nāvālis, -e, naval.
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, sail, sail over, navigate.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship.
-ne, *enclitic, attached to first word of question implying neither affirmative nor negative answer.*
nē . . . quidem, *adv.*, not even.
nec, *see* **neque.**
necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, kill.
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, say no, deny.
negōtium, -ī, *n.*, business, difficulty.
nēmō, *dat.*, **nēminī,** *acc.*, **nēminem,** *m. and f.*, no one, nobody.
neque (nec), *conj.*, and . . . not, nor, neither; **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
neuter, -tra, -trum, neither (of two).
niger, -gra, -grum, black.
nihil, *indecl. noun, n.*, nothing.
nimius, -a, -um, too great, excessive.
Niobē, -ēs, *f.*, Niobe, a queen of Thebes.
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless.
nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.
nōbilis, -e, distinguished, high-born, noble.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (**nōn** + **volō**), be unwilling.
nōmen, -minis, *n.*, name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nōnne, *adv., introduces question implying affirmative answer.*
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.
nōs, nostrum *or* **nostrī,** *pers. pron.*, we.
noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.
novem, *indecl. adj.*, nine.

novus, -a, -um, new.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
nūllus, -a, -um, not any, no, none.
num, *adv., introduces question implying negative answer.*
numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.
Numitor, -ōris, *m.*, Numitor, a king of Alba Longa.
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, announce, report.
nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger, message.
nūtrīmentum, -ī, *n.*, nourishment.

O

Ō, O, *with vocative.*
ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*, hostage.
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus (**ob** + **caedō**), cut down, kill.
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, seize, take possession of.
ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, ocean, sea.
Octāviānus, -ī, *m.*, Octavianus, first emperor of Rome.
octāvus, -a, -um, eighth.
octo, *indecl. adj.*, eight.
oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye.
ōdī, ōdisse, hate (*perfect tenses only, with meanings of the present, imperfect, and future*).
officium, -ī, *n.*, duty, service.
oleum, -ī, *n.*, olive oil, oil.
ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once, once upon a time.
olīva, -ae, *f.*, olive tree.
ōmen, -minis, *n.*, sign, omen.
omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, completely; *with neg.*, at all.
omnis, -e, every, all.
oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town.
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus (**ob** + **premō**), crush, overwhelm.
oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**ob** + **pūgnō**), attack, assault.
optimē, *see* **bene.**
optimus, -a, -um, *see* **bonus.**
opus, -eris, *n.*, work, task.
ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*, oracle.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, plea, oration.
ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, orator, pleader.
orbis, -is, *m.*, circle; **orbis terrārum,** the world.
ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*, decoration, ornament, trinket.
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pray, beg, plead.
Orpheus, -ī, *m.*, Orpheus, a famous bard of Greece.
ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth, face, countenance.
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, show, expose to view.
ōstium, -ī, *n.*, entrance.

P

pābulum, -ī, *n.*, fodder.
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make peaceful, reduce to peace, subdue.
paedagōgus, -ī, *m.*, paedagogus, a slave who conducted his master's son to school.
paene, *adv.*, almost.
paenīnsula, -ae, *f.*, peninsula.
palaestra, -ae, *f.*, wrestling-place.
palma, -ae, *f.*, palm branch, prize.
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh.
pār, paris, equal.
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare, make ready.
pars, partis, *f.*, part, party.
parvus, -a, -um, small, little; *comp.*, **minor, -us**; *superl.*, **minimus, -a, -um.**
passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace; **mīlle passūs,** a mile, *plur.*, **mīlia passuum.**
pāstor, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd.
pater, patris, *m.*, father.
patria, -ae, *f.*, native country, fatherland.
paucī, -ae, -a, few.
paulō, *adv.*, a little.

pauper, -eris, poor, lowly.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money.
pedes, -itis, *m.*, foot-soldier; *plur.*, infantry.
pedester, -tris, -tre, on foot, by land.
peior, -ius, *see* **malus.**
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, strike, drive, rout.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through.
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (per + faciō), accomplish, finish, carry out.
perfidus, -a, -um, faithless, treacherous.
perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, peril.
peristȳlum, -ī, *n.*, peristyle, court enclosed by a colonnade.
perītus, -a, -um, skilled.
perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus (per + terreō), terrify thoroughly, demoralize.
pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (per + teneō), extend; relate to, belong to.
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, confuse, disturb.
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (per + veniō), arrive (*with* **ad** *and acc.*).
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.
pessimus, -a, -um, *see* **malus.**
petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus, seek, beg.
Phaethōn, -thontis, *m.*, Phaethon, son of Phoebus.
Philippī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Philippi, a town of Macedonia.
Phoebus, -ī, *m.*, Phoebus, a name of Apollo as the sun-god.
Phoenīcia, -ae, *f.*, Phoenicia, a country on the east coast of the Mediterranean.
pīctūra, -ae, *f.*, picture.
piger, -gra, -grum, lazy.
pīlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin.
pinna, -ae, *f.*, feather.
plānus, -a, -um, level, flat.
plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, common people, plebeians.
plēnus, -a, -um, full.
plūrimum, *adv.*, *see* **multum.**
plūrimus, -a, -um, *see* **multus.**
plūs, *adv.*, *see* **multum.**
plūs, plūris, *see* **multus.**
Plūtō, -ōnis, *m.*, Pluto, god of the lower world.
pluvius, -a, -um, rain-, relating to rain.
poena, ae, *f.*, punishment; **poenās dare,** pay the penalty, suffer punishment.
Poenī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Phoenicians, Carthaginians.
poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.
Pollūx, -ūcis, *m.*, Pollux, brother of Castor and Helen.
pompa, -ae, *f.*, procession, parade.
Pompēius, -ī, *m.*, Pompey, rival of Caesar.
pōmum, -ī, *n.*, apple.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, put, place; **castra pōnere,** pitch camp.
pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
Pontus, -ī, *m.*, Pontus, a district of Asia Minor.
populāris, -e, of the people, popular, democratic.
populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation.
porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry.
portus, -ūs, *m.*, port, harbor.
possum, posse, potuī, — (potis + sum), be able, can.
post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind; *adv.*, afterwards, later.
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.
posterus, -a, -um, next, following, later.
postquam, *conj.*, after.
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, demand, require.
potēns, potentis, powerful.
potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power.
praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, spoil, plunder.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (prae + faciō), put at the head of, put in command of (*with dat.*).
praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward.
praesidium, -ī, *n.*, protection, garrison.
praesum, -esse, fuī, -futūrus (prae + sum), be at the head of (*with dat.*).
praetextus, -a, -um, bordered.
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, press hard, overwhelm.
pretium, -ī, *n.*, price.
prex, precis, *f.*, prayer, entreaty.
prīmō, *adv.*, at first.
prīmum, *adv.*, first.
prīmus, -a, -um, *see* **prior.**
prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*, chief.
prior, prius, *comp. adj.*, former, earlier, first (of two); *superl.*, **prīmus, -a, -um,** first.
prīscus, -a, -um, ancient.
priusquam, *conj.*, before, sooner than.
prīvātus, -a, -um, private.
prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, deprive, rob.
prō, *prep. with abl.*, for, in return for, in behalf of, instead of.
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prove, approve.
procus, -ī, *m.*, suitor, wooer.
proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle; **proelium facere,** fight a battle; **proelium committere,** begin battle.
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, keep away, restrain.
prope, *prep. with acc.*, near; *also adv.*, nearly, almost.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten.
propinquus, -a, -um, near; *as noun, m.*, kinsman.
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
prōscrīptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a publishing, a proscription.
Proserpina, -ae, *f.*, Proserpina, wife of Pluto and queen of the lower world.
prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.
pūblicus, -a, -um, public.
Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, Publius, a Roman name.
puella, -ae, *f.*, girl.
puer, puerī, *m.*, boy.
pūgna, -ae, *f.*, fight.
pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, pretty, beautiful.
Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic, Carthaginian.
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, punish.
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think, suppose.
Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*, Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.

Q

quadrīgae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, chariot (with four horses abreast).
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, -sītus, seek, search for, ask, inquire.
quālis, -e, of what kind?
quam, *interrog. adv.*, how?
quam, *adv. and conj.*, than.
quandō, *adv.*, when?
quantus, -a, -um, how great?
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.
quattuor, *indecl. adj.*, four.
-que, *conj.*, and (*enclitic attached to the second of two connected words*).
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that; *interrog. adj.*, what? which?
quidem, *adv.*, indeed, certainly (*stands after the word it emphasizes*).
quīndecim, *indecl. adj.*, fifteen.
quīnque, *indecl. adj.*, five.
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.
quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? what?
quō, *adv.*, whither? to what place?
quod, *conj.*, because.
quoque, *adv.*, also.
quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many?

R

radius, -ī, *m.*, ray, radius.
rapidus, -a, -um, quick, rapid.
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, snatch, seize.
raptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, seize, carry off.
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (re + capiō), take back, receive; **sē recipere,** betake oneself, return.
rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right, proper.
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (re + dō), give back, return.
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (re + eō), go back, return.
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus (re + emō), buy back, redeem.
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (re + dūcō), lead back.
redundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, overflow.
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (re + faciō), make over, repair, refresh.
rēgia, -ae, *f.*, palace.
rēgīna, -ae, *f.*, queen.
regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, region.
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, reign, be king.
rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, royal power, kingdom, throne.
Rēgulus, -ī, *m.*, Regulus, a hero of the Punic wars.
relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus, leave, leave behind.
reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of.
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (re + moveō), remove, move back.
Remus, -ī, *m.*, Remus, brother of Romulus.
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, find out, discover.
reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (re + portō), bring back.
rēs, reī, *f.*, thing; **rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,** state, commonwealth.
respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsus, reply, answer.
respōnsum, -ī, *n.*, reply.
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (re + teneō), hold back, restrain, detain.
revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (re + vocō), call back, recall.
rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king.
Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae, *f.*, Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.
Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine.
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, laugh, laugh at, mock.
rīma, -ae, *f.*, crack, crevice.
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, inquire.
Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; *as noun,* **Rōmānus, -ī,** *m.*, a Roman.
Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, Romulus, founder and first king of Rome.
rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose.
rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel.
rotundus, -a, -um, round, circular.
ruber, -bra, -brum, red.
Rubicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Rubicon, a river of Italy.
ruīna, -ae, *f.*, ruin.
rūrsus, *adv.*, again, back again.
rūs, rūris, *n.*, country (as opposed to city).

S

Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine; *m. plur., as noun,* **Sabīnī, -ōrum,** Sabines, a people of Italy.
sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred, holy.
sacrificium, -ī, *n.*, sacrifice.
saepe, *adv.*, often.
sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow.
salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, greet, salute.
salvē, *plur.* **salvēte,** good morning! greetings!
Samnītēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, Samnites, a people of Italy.
Sardinia, -ae, *f.*, Sardinia.
satis, *indecl. adj. and adv.*, enough.

saxum, -ī, *n.*, stone, rock.
scientia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge, skill.
sciō, scīre, scīvī *or* **sciī, scītus,** know, know how.
Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Scipio, a Roman name.
scrība, -ae, *m.*, clerk, secretary.
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write.
scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*, writer.
scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield.
secundus, -a, -um, second.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sēdecim, *indecl. adj.*, sixteen.
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, sit, settle.
sella, -ae, *f.*, seat, chair.
semper, *adv.*, always.
Semprōnius, -ī, *m.*, Sempronius, a Roman name.
senātor, -ōris, *m.*, senator.
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate.
senex, senis, *m.*, old man; *as adj.*, old; *comp.*, **senior** *or* **māior nātū**; *superl.*, **māximus nātū.**
senior, *see* **senex.**
sententia, -ae, *f.*, opinion, decision.
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive, realize.
septem, *indecl. adj.*, seven.
septimus, -a, -um, seventh.
sepulcrum, -ī, *n.*, place of burial, tomb.
sērius, -a, -um, earnest, serious.
serpēns, -entis, *m.*, snake.
Servius, -ī, *m.*, Servius, a Roman name.
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, keep, protect.
servus, -ī, *m.*, slave.
sevērus, -a, -um, severe, stern.
sex, *indecl. adj.*, six.
sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
sī, *conj.*, if.
Sibylla, -ae, *f.*, Sibyl, a prophetess.
Sibyllīnus, -a, -um, Sibylline.
sīc, *adv.*, so, in this manner.
Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.
sīgnum, -ī, *n.*, signal, standard.
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods.
similis, -e, like, similar.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time, together; **simul atque (ac),** *conj.*, as soon as.
simulācrum, -ī, *n.*, image.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left-hand.
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs, allow.
socius, -ī, *m.*, ally.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.
solium, -ī, *n.*, throne.
sōlum, *adv.*, only, alone.
sōlus, -a, -um, only, sole.
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, loose, unbind, melt, dissolve.
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus, sound, resound.
soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister.
spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, distance.
spectāculum, -ī, *n.*, sight, show.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, look at, face.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hope.
spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.
spīna, -ae, *f.*, spina, a wall in the middle of the Circus Maximus.
splendidus, -a, -um, shining, brilliant.
statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
statua, -ae, *f.*, statue.
stella, -ae, *f.*, star.
stilus, -ī, *m.*, stylus, a pointed instrument for writing.
stō, stāre, stetī, status, stand.
stola, -ae, *f.*, robe.
studium, -ī, *n.*, eagerness, zeal.
stultus, -a, -um, stupid, foolish.
sub, *prep. with abl.*, under, at the foot of; *with acc.*, under (*with vbs. of motion*).
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.
subitus, -a, -um, sudden.
subsellium, -ī, *n.*, a low bench.
suī, *reflex. pron.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Sulla, a Roman name.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be, exist.

summus, -a, -um, *see* **superus.**
superbia, -ae, *f.*, pride, arrogance, haughtiness.
superbus, -a, -um, proud, arrogant, haughty.
superior, -ius, *see* **superus.**
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, conquer, surpass.
superus, -a, -um, above; *comp.*, **superior, -ius,** higher, former; *superl.*, **suprēmus, -a, -um,** *or* **summus, -a, -um,** highest, the top of.
suprā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, beyond.
suprēmus, -a, -um, *see* **superus.**
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**sub** + **capiō**), undertake.
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (**sub** + **teneō**), hold out against, sustain.
suus, -a, -um (*reflex.*), his, her, its, their (own).

T

tabella, -ae, *f.*, tablet.
taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop, stall.
tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent.
tabernārius, -ī, *m.*, shopkeeper.
tablīnum, -ī, *n.*, room where family records were kept.
tabula, -ae, *f.*, blackboard; tablet, list, record.
tālis, -e, of such a kind, such.
tam, *adv.*, so.
tamen, *conj.*, however, nevertheless.
tandem, *adv.*, at length, finally.
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch.
tantus, -a, -um, so great, so much.
tardus, -a, -um, slow, late, tardy.
Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, Tarentum, a town of southern Italy.
Tarpēia, -ae, *f.*, Tarpeia, a Roman name.
Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*, Tarquin, name of two Roman kings.
taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull.
tēctum, -ī, *n.*, roof, covering.
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover.
tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon.
tempestās, -tātis, *f.*, storm, tempest.
templum, -ī, *n.*, temple.
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, try, tempt.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, hold, keep.
ter, *adv.*, three times.
tergum, -ī, *n.*, back; **ā tergō,** in the rear, from behind.
terminus, -ī, *m.*, limit, end.
terra, -ae, *f.*, land, earth, country; **orbis terrārum,** the world.
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, frighten, terrify.
tertius, -a, -um, third.
testāmentum, -ī, *n.*, will.
Teutonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, Teutones, a people of Germany.
Thēbae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Thebes, a city of Greece.
Tiberis, -is, *m.*, Tiber, the river on which Rome is situated.
Tiberius, -ī, *m.*, Tiberius, a Roman name.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, fear.
timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear.
toga, -ae, *f.*, toga.
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, raise, lift up, remove.
tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many.
tōtus, -a, -um, whole, all.
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (**trāns** + **dō**), hand over, give up, surrender.
trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (**trāns** + **dūcō**), lead across.
trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, drag, draw.
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, over, through.
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus (**trāns** + **eō**), cross over.
trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (**trāns** + **portō**), carry over, transport.
trēs, tria, three.
tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, tribune.
tribūtum, -ī, *n.*, tribute.

trīclīnium, -ī, *n.*, dining-room.
triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, triumph.
triumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumph.
triumvir, -ī, *m.*, triumvir.
trivium, -ī, *n.*, place where three roads meet; crossroads.
tū, tuī, *pers. pron.*, you (*sing.*).
tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet.
Tullius, -ī, *m.*, Tullius, a Roman name.
tum, *adv.*, then.
tunica, -ae, *f.*, tunic.
tūtus, -a, -um, safe.
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*used when speaking to one person only*).

U

ubi, *conj.*, when; **ubi,** *adv.*, where.
ūllus, -a, -um, any.
ultimus, -a, -um, last, farthest.
ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond.
umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow; ghost.
umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time (*usually with a negative*).
unde, *adv.*, whence, from what place.
ūndēvīgintī, *indecl. adj.*, nineteen.
ūnus, -a, -um, one.
urbānus, -a, -um, of a city, in a city.
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, advantage, experience.
ūtilis, -e, useful, serviceable.
ūva, -ae, *f.*, grape.
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacca, -ae, *f.*, cow.
valē, *plur.*, **valēte,** good-by! farewell!
validus, -a, -um, strong, powerful.
vāllum, -ī, *n.*, wall, rampart.
vānus, -a, -um, empty, groundless, vain.
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, lay waste, ravage.
vehementer, *adv.*, violently, earnestly.
vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectus, carry; *pass.*, be carried, ride, sail.
vel, *conj.*, or.
vēlōx, -ōcis, swift, quick.
venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison, drug.
Venetī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Veneti, a Gallic tribe.
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come.
ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.
Venus, -eris, *f.*, Venus, goddess of love and beauty.
verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.
Vergilius, -ī, *m.*, Vergil, a Roman poet.
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn.
vērus, -a, -um, true, real.
Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta, goddess of the hearth.
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*used when speaking to more than one person*).
vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, clothing.
vetus, -eris, old, of long standing; *comp.*, **vetustior, -ius;** *superl.*, **veterrimus, -a, -um.**
via, -ae, *f.*, road, way, street.
viātor, -ōris, *m.*, traveler, wayfarer.
victor, -ōris, victorious; *as noun, m.*, victor.
victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory.
vīcus, -ī, *m.*, village.
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; *pass.*, seem.
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, watch.
vīgintī, *indecl. adj.*, twenty.
vīlica, -ae, *f.*, overseer's wife, stewardess.
vīlicus, -ī, *m.*, overseer, steward.
vīlla, -ae, *f.*, country estate, villa.
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, conquer, vanquish.
vinculum, -ī, *n.*, bond, chain.
vīnea, -ae, *f.*, vineyard.
vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine.
viola, -ae, *f.*, violet.

vir, virī, *m.*, man.
virgō, -ginis, *f.*, maiden.
virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, courage, manliness, virtue.
vīs, vim, vī, *f.*, force, energy; *plur.*, **vīrēs, -ium,** strength.
vīsitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, visit, go to see.
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life; **vītam agere,** spend a life.
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call, summon.
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fly.
volō, velle, voluī, —, wish, be willing.
Volscus, -ī, *m.*, a Volscian.
voluntās, -tātis, *f.*, wish, good will.
vōs, vestrum *or* **vestrī,** *pers. pron.*, you (*plur.*).
vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice.
Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan, god of fire.
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wound.
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH–LATIN

A

able, potēns, potentis; **be able,** possum, posse, potuī, —.
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*
adopt (a plan), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, *f.*
after, *prep.*, post, *with acc.: conj.*, postquam.
against, contrā, *prep. with acc.*
ago, ante.
aid, *noun*, auxilium, -ī, *n.*; *vb.*, iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus.
alarm, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
all, cūnctus, -a, -um; omnis, -e; (**whole**), tōtus, -a, -um.
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
alone, sōlus, -a, -um.
altar, āra, -ae, *f.*
although, etsī, *conj.*
always, semper, *adv.*
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.
and, et; -que (*enclitic*).
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*
another, alius, alia, aliud.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsus.
any, ūllus, -a, -um.
Apollo, Apollō, Apollinis, *m.*
appear, appareō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
Appian, Appius, -a, -um.
Appius Claudius, Appius Claudius, Appī Claudī, *m.*
apple, pōmum, -ī, *n.*
approach, *noun*, adventus, -ūs, *m.*; *vb.*, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
approve, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
arena, arēna, -ae, *f.*
arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
arms (defensive), arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *with* ad *and acc.*
arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*
as . . . as possible, quam *with superlative of adj. or adv.*
as soon as, simul atque (ac), *conj.*
ascend, ascendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.
at, in *with abl.; locative of names of towns, etc.*
at once, statim, *adv.*
Atalanta, Atalanta, -ae, *f.*
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
atrium, ātrium, -ī, *n.*
attack, *noun*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*; *vb.*, oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
away from, ā (ab) *with abl.*

B

bad, malus, -a, -um.
baggage, baggage train, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
barn, horreum, -ī, *n.*
basket, corbula, -ae, *f.*

battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*; **line of battle,** aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
be able, possum, posse, potuī, —.
be at the head of, praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*
be here, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.
be willing, volō, velle, voluī, —.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod, *conj.*
before, *prep.*, ante, *with acc.*; *conj.*, priusquam.
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptus (*used only in perfect tenses*).
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus; **begin battle,** proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
behind, post, *prep. with acc.*
bench, subsellium, -ī, *n.*
best, optimus, -a, -um.
betake oneself, sē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
better, melior, -ius.
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
boat, cymba, -ae, *f.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldly, audācter.
boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*
book, liber, librī, *m.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
break, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*
but, sed, *conj.*
by (*agency*), ā (ab), *prep. with abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **call together,** convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **call by name,** appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, posse, potuī, —.
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*; dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
carefully, dīligenter.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **carry on,** gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus; **carry out** (**a plan**), perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -ginis, *f.*
Carthaginians, Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
catch sight of, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.
chariot, currus, -ūs, *m.*; quadrīgae, -ārum.
charioteer, aurīga, -ae, *m.*
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
circus, circus, -ī, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m. and f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
clear, clārus, -a, -um.
close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.
come, vēniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus; **come together,** conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
command, imperium, -ī, *n.*
companion, comes, -itis, *m.*
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.
conquer, superō, -āre, -āvī -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
contend, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
contest, certāmen, -minis, *n.*
Coriolanus, Coriolānus, -ī, *m.*
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*

country, terra, -ae, *f.*; **native country,** patria, -ae, *f.*; **country** (*distinguished from city*), rūs, rūris, *n.*
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
crevice, rīma, -ae, *f.*
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus.

D

Daedalus, Daedalus, -ī, *m.*
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m.*
daybreak, prīma lūx, prīmae lūcis, *f.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -tūtus; iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.
delay, mora, -ae, *f.*
deliver (a speech), ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
deprive, prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
desire, dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.
desk, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
detain, retineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus.
determine, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -tūtus.
devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
do not, nōlī, nōlīte *with complementary infinitive.*
door, iānua, -ae, *f.*
down from, dē, *prep. with abl.*
draw up, īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.
drive out, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus.
driver, aurīga, -ae, *m.*
dwell, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

E

eagerly, ācriter.
eagerness, studium, -ī, *n.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*
enormous, ingēns, -gentis.
enough, satis, *indecl. adj. and adv.*
enter, intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
entreaty, prex, precis, *f.*
entrust, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
equal, pār, paris.
Etruscan, Etrūscus, -a, -um; **an Etruscan,** Etrūscus, -ī, *m.*
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*
even, etiam, *adv.*; **even if,** etsī, *conj.*
ever, umquam, *adv.*
excel, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
exclaim, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

F

faith, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
faithful, fīdus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
fate, fātum, -ī, *n.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fear, timor, -ōris, *m.*
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.
fiercely, ācriter.
fight, pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **fight a battle,** proelium faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
fill, compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.

find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus; **find out,** reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; **successfully finish a war,** bellum cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
fire, īgnis, -is, *m.*; **set fire to,** incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —.
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
fly, volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
fodder, pābulum, -ī, *n.*
following, posterus, -a, -um.
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*; **at the foot of,** sub, *prep. with abl.*
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *prep.*, prō, *with abl.*; *conj.*, nam, enim (*postpositive*).
force, *noun,* vīs, vim, vī, *f.*; *vb.*, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
form (a plan), cōnsilium capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
forum, forum, -ī, *n.*
four, quattuor, *indecl. adj.*
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, set free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
from, ā (ab), *prep. with abl.*; **out from,** ē (ex), *prep. with abl.*; **down from,** dē, *prep. with abl.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um.

G

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
George, Georgius, -ī, *m.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus; **give over, give up,** trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; **give thanks,** grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus.
gladiator, gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*
gladiatorial, gladiātōrius, -a, -um.
glad to (do), libenter, *adv.*
go, eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus; **go away,** discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; **go on, happen,** *passive of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus; **go out,** exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus.
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.*
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
graceful, gracilis, -e.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grape, ūva, -ae, *f.*
great, māgnus, -a, -um; *comp.*, **greater,** māior, -ius; *superl.*, **greatest,** māximus, -a, -um.
greatly, māgnōpere; *comp.*, **more greatly,** magis; *superl.*, **most greatly,** māximē.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
Greetings, salvē, salvēte (*plur.*).
grief, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
ground, humus, -ī, *f.*; **on the ground,** humī (*locative*).
groundless, vānus, -a, -um.

H

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*; **right hand,** dextra, -ae, *f.*; **hand over,** trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus.
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
he, is, hic, ille.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*; **be at the head of,** praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*

hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
heaven, caelum, -ī, *n.*
heavy, gravis, -e.
help, *noun,* auxilium, -ī, *n.*; *vb.,* iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus.
hence, from this place, hinc, *adv.*
her, ēius, hūius, illīus; *reflex.,* suus, -a, -um.
herd, armentum, -ī, *n.*
here, hīc, *adv.*; **here (hither),** hūc, *adv.*; **from here,** hinc.
high, altus, -a, -um.
higher, superior, -ius.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*; clīvus, ī, *m.*
himself, *intens.,* ipse; *reflex.,* suī.
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
his, ēius, hūius, illīus; *reflex.,* suus, -a, -um.
hither, hūc, *adv.*
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus.
home, domus, -ūs (-ī), *f.*; **at home,** domī (*locative*).
honor, honor, -ōris, *m.*
hope, *noun,* spēs, speī, *f.*; *vb.,* spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
Horatius, Horātius, -ī, *m.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domicilium, -ī, *n.*
how? *interrog. adv. modifying adj. or adv.,* quam; **how? (in what manner?),** quō modō?
how many? quot, *indecl. adj.*
how much? quantus, -a, -um.
human being, homō, -minis, *m.*
humble, humilis, -e.
hundred, centum, *indecl. adj.*
husband, coniūnx, coniugis, *m.*
hurl, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus.
hut, casa, -ae, *f.*

I, ego, meī.
if, sī, *conj.*
in, in, *prep. with abl.*
in behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl.*
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m. and f.*
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
it, id, hoc, illud.
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
its, ēius, hūius, illīus; *reflex.,* suus, -a, -um.
itself, *intens.,* ipse, ipsa, ipsum; *reflex.,* suī.

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus.
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
joy, gaudium, -ī, *n.*
joyful, laetus, -a, -um.

K

keep, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **keep away,** prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
kill, necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī (sciī), scītus.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*

L

labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
land, terra, -ae, *f.*; **native land,** patria, -ae, *f.*; **territory,** fīnēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
large, māgnus, -a, -um (*see* **great**).
later, post, *adv.,* posteā, *adv.*
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead back,** redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
least, minimus, -a, -um.
leave, leave behind, relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

less, minor, minus.
letter, epistle, lītterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
liberate, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
lie, iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
like, *adj.*, similis, -e.
like, *vb.*, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
little, parvus, -a, -um; **a little,** paulō, *adv.*
live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
long, longus, -a, -um; **for a long time,** diū, *adv.*
longer, *adv.*, diūtius.
look after, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
look at, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
love, *noun*, amor, -ōris, *m.*; *vb.*, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
lower, īnferior, -ius.
Lucius, Lūcius, -ī, *m.*
Lydia, Lȳdia, -ae, *f.*

M

maiden, virgō, -ginis, *f.*
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, -minis, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a.
map, charta, -ae, *f.*
Marcellus, Mārcellus, -ī, *m.*
march, *noun*, iter, itineris, *n.*; *vb.*, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
Marius, Marius, -ī, *m.*
master (**of a house**), dominus, -ī, *m.*; (**of a school**), magister, -trī, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
Mettius Curtius, Mettius Curtius, Mettī Curtī, *m.*
mile, mīlle passūs; **miles,** mīlia passuum.
mine, meus, -a, -um.
misfortune, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
mistress, domina, -ae, *f.*
moat, fossa, -ae, *f.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
monument, monumentum, -ī, *n.*
more, plūs, plūris; *plur.*, plūres, -a.
most, plūrimus, -a, -um.
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
much, *adj.*, multus, -a, -um; *adv.*, multō.
Mucius, Mūcius, -ī, *m.*
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
musical, mūsicus, -a, -um.
must, necesse (*indecl. adj.*) est.
my, meus, -a, -um.
myself, *intens.*, ipse, -a, -um; *reflex.*, *see* ego (*all cases but nominative*).

N

name, nōmen, -minis, *n.*
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
naval, nāvālis, -e.
near, prope, *prep. with acc.*
necessary, necesse, *indecl. adj.*
neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
never, numquam, *adv.*
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
nine, novem, *indecl. adj.*
no, *adj.*, nūllus, -a, -um, *or* nihil *with genitive of the whole.*
noble, nōbilis, -e.
noise, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
not, nōn, *adv.*
not at all, minimē, *adv.*
now, nunc, *adv.*
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

often, saepe, *adv.*
old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis; **older,** senior *or* māior nātū; **oldest,** māximus nātū.

old man, senex, senis, *m.*
on, in, *prep. with abl.*
on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*
once, at once, statim, *adv.*
one, ūnus, -a, -um.
only, sōlus, -a, -um.
open, apertus, -a, -um.
or, aut, *conj.*; vel, *conj.*
oracle, ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*
order, iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus.
Orpheus, Orpheus, -ī, *m.*
other, alius, alia, aliud.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
ourselves, nōs (*in oblique cases*); *intens.*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
out of, ē (ex), *prep. with abl.*
overcome, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
overseer, vīlicus, -ī, *m.*
own, his (her, its, their) own, *reflex.*, suus, -a, -um.

P

paedagogus, paedagōgus, -ī, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
pen, stilus, -ī, *m.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*; **common people,** plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
peristyle, peristȳlum, -ī, *n.*
picture, pīctūra, -ae, *f.*
pirate, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*
pitch (camp), castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
place, *noun*, locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, locī, *m., and* loca, *n.*; *vb.*, locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*; **form a plan,** cōnsilium capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
please, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
plow, *noun*, arātrum, -ī, *n.*; *vb.*, arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
point out, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
Pompey, Pompēius, -ī, *m.*
position, locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, locī, *m., and* loca, *n.*
possessions, *possessive adj., neuter plural.*
possible, as . . . as possible, quam *with superlative.*
power, potestās, -tātis, *f.*; **have much (more, most) power,** multum (plūs, plūrimum) possum, posse, potuī, —.
powerful, potēns, potentis.
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, —.
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
price, pretium, -ī, *n.*
procession, pompa, -ae, *f.*
protect, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
public, pūblicus, -a, um.
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*; **suffer punishment,** poenās dō, dare, dedī, datus.
pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.*; discipula, -ae, *f.*
put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
put to flight, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
quickly, celeriter.

R

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
rapidly, celeriter, rapidē.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus.

receive, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
recognize, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.
red, ruber, -bra, -brum.
region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, *m.*
reins, habēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus.
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus.
report, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
return (go back), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus.
reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*
right hand, dextra, -ae, *f.*
river, flūmen, -minis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*
rock, saxum, -ī, *n.*
Roman, *adj.*, Rōmānus, -a, -um; *noun,* Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
room, camera, -ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
ruin, ruīna, -ae, *f.*
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus.

S

Sabine, Sabīnus, ī, *m.*
sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.
sacrifice, sacrificium, -ī, *n.*
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail, nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus; *with direct quotation,* inquit, *plur.*, inquiunt.
Scaevola, Scaevola, -ae, *m.*
school, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
schoolmaster, magister, -trī, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
seat, sella, -ae, *f.*; subsellium, -ī, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus.
seem, *passive of* videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
self, *see* **myself, himself,** *etc.*
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.
servant, servus, -ī, *m.*; **maid-servant,** ancilla, -ae, *f.*
set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.
several, complūrēs, -a (-ia).
severe, gravis, -e; sevērus, -a, -um.
she, ea, haec, illa.
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shop, taberna, -ae, *f.*
short, brevis, -e.
shout, *noun,* clāmor, -ōris, *m.*; *vb.*, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
show, *vb.*, ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus; dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *noun,* spectāculum, ī, *n.*
shut, clausus, -a, -um.
Sibyl, Sibylla, -ae, *f.*
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus.
size, māgnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
skill, ars, artis, *f.*
skillful, perītus, -a, -um.
sky, caelum, -ī, *n.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*; ancilla, -ae, *f.*
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, tam, *adv. modifying adj. or adv.*; ita, sīc, *advs. modifying verb.*
so many, tot, *indecl. adj.*
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
soon, mox, *adv.*; **as soon as,** simul atque (ac), *conj.*
space, spatium, -ī, *n.*
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
speed, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
spotted, maculōsus, -a, -um.
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, status.
state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*

statue, statua, -ae, *f.*
stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus.
stern, sevērus, -a, -um.
storm, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vīrēs, -ium, *f. plur.*
strong, validus, -a, -um.
sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
successfully finish (a war), bellum cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
such, tālis, -e.
sudden, subitus, -a, -um.
suffer, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
suitor, procus, -ī, *m.*
Sulla, Sulla, -ae, *m.*
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
summon, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
surpass, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
surrender, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
swift, celer, -eris, -ere; vēlōx, -ōcis.
swiftly, celeriter.
swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
swim, natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

table, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*
tablet, tabella, -ae, *f.*
Tarpeia, Tarpēia, -ae, *f.*
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*; magistra, -ae, *f.*
tell, nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
ten, decem, *indecl. adj.*
tent, tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
than, quam, *adv. and conj.*
thanks, grātia, -ae, *f.*; **give thanks,** grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus.
that, those, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; *or pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
that famous, ille, illa, illud (*following a noun*).
their, eōrum, eārum; *reflex.*, suus, -a, -um.
themselves, *reflex.*, suī; *intens.*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
then, tum, *adv.*
thence, inde, *adv.*
there (in that place), ibi, *adv.*; **(to that place),** eō, *adv.*; **from there,** inde, *adv.*
there is, est.
they, eī, eae, ea.
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
this, these, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
thither, eō, *adv.*
thousand, mīlle, *indecl. adj.*; *plur.*, mīlia, -ium, *n.*
three, trēs, tria.
through, per, *prep. with acc.*
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus.
Tiber, Tiberis, -is, *m.*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
to, ad, *prep. with acc.*
to-day, hodiē, *adv.*
to-morrow, crās, *adv.*
top of, summus, -a, -um.
toward, ad, *prep. with acc.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
traveler, viātor, -ōris, *m.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versus.
twenty, vīgintī, *indecl. adj.*
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um.

unless, nisi, *conj.*
unwilling, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.
upon, in, *prep. with acc.*
us, nōs, nostrum (nostrī).
useful, ūtilis, -e.

V

valor, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*; fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
van, prīmum āgmen, prīmī āgminis, *n.*
Venus, Venus, -eris, *f.*
very, *intens.*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
villa, vīlla, -ae, *f.*
vineyard, vīnea, -ae, *f.*
visit, vīsitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W

wage (war), bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
wait, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*; **walls (fortifications),** moenia, -ium, *n. plur.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
watch, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way (road), via, -ae, *f.*; **(manner),** modus, -ī, *m.*
we, nōs, nostrum (nostrī).
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
well, bene, *adv.*; *comp.*, melius; *superl.*, optimē.
what? *interrog. adj.*, quī, quae, quod? *interrog. pron.*, quid?
what kind of? quālis, -e?
when, *conj.*, ubi; *interrog. adv.*, quandō?
whence? where from? unde, *adv.*
where (in what place?), ubi? *adv.*; **(to what place?),** quō? *adv.*
which (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog. adj.*), quī, quae, quod?
while, dum, *conj.*
whip, flagellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
who (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog. pron.*), quis?
whole, tōtus, -a, -um.
why? cūr? *adv.*
wicked, improbus, -a, -um.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*; coniūnx, coniugis, *f.*
willing, be willing, volō, velle, voluī, —.
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
window, fenestra, -ae, *f.*
wing, āla, -ae, *f.*
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
wish, volō, velle, voluī, —; cupiō, cupere, -īvī, -ītus.
with, cum, *prep. with abl.*
without, sine, *prep. with abl.*
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
world, orbis (-is, *m.*) terrārum.
worse, peior, -ius.
worship, adōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
worst, pessimus, -a, -um.
wound, *noun*, vulnus, -eris, *n.*; *vb.*, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yes, sānē, *adv.*; vērō, *adv.*
yesterday, herī, *adv.*
you, tū, tuī; *plur.*, vōs, vestrum (vestrī).
young, iuvenis, -e; **younger,** iūnior *or* minor nātū; **youngest,** minimus nātū.

young man, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

your, tuus, -a, -um (*addressed to one person*); vester, -tra, -trum (*addressed to more than one person*).

yourself, *intens.*, ipse, -a, -um; *reflex.*, tū, tuī (*in oblique cases*).

Z

zealously, *use* studium, -ī, *n.*

INDEX

Numbers refer to sections unless otherwise specified. The abbreviation Ap. stands for Appendix, Int., for Introduction, *vs.*, " distinguished from." The Index is supplemented by the Table of Contents.

ā (ab), as prefix, 549.
  preposition with the ablative, 158, 2; 180, 2*b*; 232; 233; 278; 378; 379; Ap. p. 479.
  vs. **ab**, 158.
abs, 382, 6.
Ablative, definition of, 19.
  like dative, 50; 191, 3.
  of accompaniment, 219; 220; Ap. p. 479.
  of agent, 232; 233; Ap. p. 479.
  of comparison, 438; 439; Ap. p. 480.
  of degree of difference, 448; 449; Ap. p. 480.
  of manner, 201; 202; Ap. p. 479.
  of means, 100; 101; Ap. p. 479.
  of place from which, 158, 2; 180, 2*b*; 378; Ap. p. 479.
  of place in which, 19; 62*f*; 158, 1; 180, 2*a*; Ap. p. 479.
  of separation, 378; 379; Ap. p. 480.
  of specification, 459; 460; Ap. p. 480.
  of time when or within which, 270; 271; Ap. p. 479.
  prepositions with, Ap. p. 480.
Ablative singular, of 3 termination adjective of 3rd declension, 269, 2.
  of vowel stems, 217, 2, 3.
Accent, rules for, Int. IV, 6; 10; 41; 87, 3.
Accompaniment, ablative of, 219; 220; Ap. p. 479.
Accusative, as object of prepositions, 30; 62*d*; 158, 3; Ap. p. 479.
  as subject of infinitive, 485; 486; 489, 2, 4; Ap. p. 479.
  as subject of infinitive in indirect statement, 536; 539; Ap. p. 479.
  as direct object, of verb, 29; 62*d*; Ap. p. 478.
  of duration of time, 399; 400; Ap. p. 479.
  of extent of space, 399; 400; Ap. p. 479.
  of place to which, 30; 62*d*; 158, 3; 180, 2*c*; Ap. p. 478.
  prepositions with, Ap. p. 479.
Accusative singular, in **im**, 217, 2.
Actium, battle of, p. 437; 571.
Active voice, *see* first conjugation, etc.; present indicative, etc.
  formation of indicative tenses of, 148.
  personal endings of, 41.
  vs. passive, 229.
ad, as prefix, 548, 1; 549.
  preposition with the accusative, 30; 62*d*; 158, 3; 180, 2*c*; Ap. pp. 478–479.
Adjectives, agreement of, *see* agreement.
  attributive, 2, 1*f*; 2, 2*b*.
  comparison of, *see* comparative, comparison.
  declension of, *see* declension.
  interrogative, 137; Ap. 598.
  nounless, 206, 2.
  of special declension, 359; **duo, trēs,** 388; **mīlia,** 389; Ap. 588.
  possessive, *see* possessive.
  position of, Int. V, 5; 6, 3; 189, 3.
  predicate, 2, 1*f*; 2, 2*b*; 62*a*; 318, 3; 489, 3.
  with the dative, 281; 282.
Adjective clauses, 302; 560.
Adverbs, comparison of, *see* comparison.
  equivalent of ablative of manner, 458, 4.
  formation of, (regular), 457; (irregular), 458, 2.
  of place, 511.
  position of, 6, 2; 189, 4.
Adverbial clauses, 302; 500; 528; 560; Ap. p. 482.
adversus, 463, 4.

ae = English *e*, 122, 1; 153, 3; 464, 2.
Aeneas, p. 139; p. 295.
Aeneid, 572, 8.
Aequians, p. 217; 304.
Africa, 284; 286, 2; 530.
Africanus, *see* Scipio.
Agent, ablative of, 232; 233; Ap. p. 479.
Agreement, of adjective with masculine noun 1st declension, 66.
of an appositive, 77; Ap. p. 477.
of attributive adjectives, 2, 2*b*; 62*h*; Ap. p. 477.
of participles, 243, 1; 527, 2; 538, 2; 567, 1, 2; 569, 1; Ap. p. 478.
of possessive adjectives, 11; 62*h*; Ap. p. 477.
of predicate adjectives, 2, 2*b*; 62*h*; 318, 3; 489, 3; Ap. p. 477.
of the relative pronoun, 259; 260; Ap. p. 477.
of verbs, 2, 1*e*; 62*g*; Ap. p. 477; with antecedent of relative pronoun, 259, end.
Alaric, p. 324.
Alba Longa, p. 139; 193; 195, 1; 262.
alius, 359, Ap. 588.
Alphabet, the Latin, Int. IV, 1.
alter, 359, Ap. 588.
Amulius, 193.
Ancus Martius, 262.
Answers to questions, 138.
Antecedent, of relative pronoun, 259; 260; 348, 5.
Antonius, Marcus, 571.
Appian Way, *see* **Via Appia.**
Appius Claudius, 245; 247, 6; 462; 463, 6.
Apollo, 235; 237, 3; 273; 275, 1; 284; 364; p. 295.
Apposition, 77.
Appositive, agreement of, *see* agreement.
position of, 189, 5.
vs. predicate noun, 77.
Ariovistus, 553.
Article, not expressed in Latin, 2, 2*a*.
Asia, 402; 403, 2; 531, 5; 541.
Ascanius, p. 139.
Assimilation, 548, 1.
Atalanta, p. 286; 381.
Attribute complement, nominative used for, 2, 1*c*; 62*a*; Ap. p. 478.
audeō, 382, 4.
Augustus, Int. II; p. 437; 571; 572, 1, 5, 6, 14.
autem, 237, 1.

Base, how obtained, 191.
of 3rd declension adjectives in **-r,** 269, 3.
of 3rd declension nouns, 191; 200.
Belgae, 553; 554, 7.
Britain, Roman occupation of, 24, 2; 106, 2; p. 423; 553; 554, 8.
Brundisium, 245; 513.
Brutus, Lucius Junius, p. 188; 262.
Brutus, Marcus, 562; 571.
bulla, 54, 2; 55, 5; 452; 453, 6.

cadō, *vs.* **caedō** *and* **cedō,** 551.
Caesar, Julius, Int. II; 24, 2, 5; 541; 542, 8; 553; 554, 2, 9; 562; 563, 2, 4, 9, 10; p. 423; p. 429; 571; 572, 1.
Calendar, 563, 9.
Cannae, battle of, 492, 11.
Capitoline Hill, *see* **Capitōlium.**
Capitōlium, 173, 4; 195, 6; 206, 1; 265, 4; p. 214; 295; 297, 3; 391; 429; 430, 5; 452; 453, 9.
Cardinals, *see* Numerals.
Carthage, Int. II; p. 370; 491; 492, 3, 4, 7, 13; 530. *See* Punic Wars.
Case, *see* nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, ablative, locative.
of an appositive, 77.
of noun after a comparative with **quam,** 426, 1; 427.
of noun after a comparative with **quam** omitted, 438; 439.
of predicate nouns, 2, 1*c*; 62*a*.
of the relative pronoun, 259; 260.
See agreement.
Cassius, 562; 571.
Castor (and Pollux), p. 241; 330; 332, 1, 3, 5, 9.
Cato the Elder, 491.
Causal clause, 302; 559; 560; Ap. p. 482; participle substitute for, 569, 1.
cēna, 45, 2.
centum, 389.
Ceres, 150.
Chariot races and charioteers, *see* Roman games.
Cimbrī, 530.
Cineas, 462.

Circus Maximus, p. 111; 160; 162, 2, 3, 6, 7, 8; 171; 173, 5, 6, 8, 9.
Cities and towns, expression of place with names of, 509; 510; Ap. p. 480.
Claudius, *see* Appius Claudius.
Clauses, subordinate, *see* causal, concessive, conditional, relative, substantive, temporal.
  position of, 264, 8.
  position of subject in, 327.
  relation of, 264, 8; 559.
  summary of, 560; Ap. pp. 481–482.
  translation of participles by, 569, 1.
Clusium, p. 155.
cōgō, 488.
Collatinus, 264, 6.
Commands, 126.
  negative, 499, 2.
  position of verb in, 189, 8.
Comparative, declension of, 425; 436; 589.
  definition of, 424, 1.
  formation of, 424, 2; 436; 437.
  of **plūs**, 450.
  translations of, 426, 2.
  with genitive of the whole, 497, 1.
Comparison, ablative of, 438; 439.
  of adjectives, in **-er**, 436; in **-lis**, 437; 442, 5; irregular, 450; Ap. 591; regular, 424; Ap. 590.
  of adverbs, 458, 1, 2, 3; Ap. 592.
  with **quam**, 426, 1; 427.
Complementary infinitive, 318; 487; 489, 1; 499, 2.
  agreement of predicate adjective with, 318; 3; 489, 3.
  forms of, 318, 4.
  position of, 318, 1.
  with an object, 318, 3.
con (cum), as prefix, 548, 1; 549.
Concessive clause, 528; 560.
  participle substitute for, 569.
  with **etsī**, 528; 560; Ap. p. 482.
Conditional clause (with **sī, nisi**), 500; 560; Ap. p. 482.
  participle substitute for, 569.
Conjugations, Int. V, 3; 20; 61.
  how distinguished, 124.
  first, Ap. 599.
  second, Ap. 600.
  third, Ap. 601.
  -iō verbs of third, Ap. 603.
  fourth, Ap. 602.
  See present indicative, etc.
  See **sum, possum, volō, nōlō, mālō, eō.**
Constantinople, capture of, 572, 11.
Consuls, 262; 264, 5; 514, 9.
Contrast, *see* Emphasis;
  ille and **hic** used for, 300.
  use of personal pronouns for, 348.
  use of possessive adjectives for, 351, 2.
Cornelia, 513.
Crassus, Marcus, 541; 562.
cum, as enclitic, 228 note; 350.
  with ablative of accompaniment, 219, 220; Ap. p. 479.
  with ablative of manner, 201; 202.
Cumae, p. 295.
Cūnctātor, 492, 10.
cūnctus, 497, 3.
cupiō, 488.
Cures, 206, 5.
Cybele, p. 286.

Daedalus (and Icarus), p. 252; 341; 343, 6.
Dative, as indirect object, 50; 62*c*; Ap. p. 478.
  like ablative, 50; 191, 3.
  source of term, 50.
  with adjectives, 281; 282; Ap. p. 478.
  with compound verbs, 563, 7; 572, 10.
  with verbs and expressions meaning *to trust*, 413, 4; 554, 4.
dē, used to express place from which, 158, 2; 180, 2*b*; Ap. p. 479.
  used to express separation, 180, 2*b*; 378; 379; Ap. p. 480.
  with cardinal numerals, 497, 2; Ap. p. 478.
  with **quīdam**, 497, 2; Ap. p. 478.
dea, declension of, 54, 4.
dēbeō, complementary infinitive with, 527, 2.
Declension, of adjectives, of 1st and 2nd declensions, 66; 99; Ap. 585.
  of 3rd declension (3 terminations), 269; (2 terminations), 280; (1 termination), 280.
Declensions of nouns, *see* first, second, third, fourth, fifth.
  distinctive endings of first three, 191, 5.
  how distinguished, Int. V, 2; 12.
  special declensions, Ap. 584.

Demonstratives, *see* **hic, īdem, ille, ipse, is.**
definition of, 298.
use as adjectives and pronouns, 298; 299.
use of genitive of, 351, 3.
used to indicate persons or things by gender, 301.
Derivation notebook, suggestions for, 59.
See review chapters.
Derivatives, *see* review chapters, chapters on Latin word formation, and sections on relation of Latin words to English.
derivatives from **agricola,** 46, 1; **amīca,** 55, 3; **annus,** 71, 9; **aqua,** 25, 2; 59, 2; **arma,** 106, 1; **bulla,** 55, 5; **canō,** 367, 5; **capiō,** 344, 3; **caput,** 265, 4; **Capitōlium,** 265, 4; **castra,** 106, 2; **celer,** 276, 3; **claudō,** 344, 8; **corpus,** 238, 2; **domus,** 515, 2; **dūcō,** 333, 5; **efficiō,** 504, 2; **faciō,** 344, 2; 573, 4; **fīnis,** 225, 2; **frangō,** 504, 1; **frāter,** 207, 3; **imperium,** 106, 7; **lingua,** 515, 4; **littera,** 71, 7; **locus,** 82, 3; **mīles,** 225, 5; **mittō,** 333, 5; **nātura,** 276, 4; **nihil,** 504, 4; **nōmen,** 207, 5; **numerus,** 82, 4; **nūntiō,** 265, 6; **occupō,** 106, 10; **omnis,** 287, 3; **pater,** 207, 4; **pōnō,** 333, 5; **populus,** 106, 8; **portō,** 46, 9; **premō,** 333, 5; **prīmus,** 174, 2; **prīnceps,** 323, 5; **pūgna,** 131, 4; **quartus,** 174, 6; **rēx,** 225, 4; **rūsticus,** 515, 3; **sacer,** 153, 6; **scrībō,** 393, 7; **servus,** 71, 8; **sōl,** 276, 5; **spectō,** 46, 10; **stō,** 106, 1; 276, 5; **terra,** 25, 6; **trēs,** 393, 6; **ūnus,** 142, 4; **veritās,** 573, 3; **via,** 25, 6; **vincō,** 333, 5; **vōx,** 356, 3.
Latin words used in English with no change of form, 7, 2; 25, 6; 36, 2; 59, 1; 122, 1; 153, 3; 163, 1; 184, 1; 196, 1; 257, 1; 307, 1; 315, 1; 376, 1; 423, 1; 454, 1; 473, 1; 525, 1.
prefixes (English, derived from Latin), *equi-*, 464, 2; *in-*, 333, 2; *omni-*, 287, 3; *tri-*, 393, 6.
proportion of Latin derivatives in English, Int. III, 5, and note.
suffixes (English, derived from Latin), *-acious*, 291; *-al*, 293; *-an*, *-ane*, 114, 3; *-ant*, 573, 5; *-ar*, *-ary*, 293; *-ate*, 196, 3; *-ble*, *-bile*, 292; *-ce*, 113; *-ent*, 573, 5; *-fy*, 573, 4; *-ic*, 114, 2; *-id*, 114, 1; *-il*, *-ile*, 113; 292; 293; *-in*, *-ine*, 114, 3; *-ive*, 114, 4; *-ocious*, 291; *-or*, 212; 214; *-ose*, *-ous*, 114, 5; *-sion*, 216; *-sor*, 213; *-tion*, 216; *-tor*, 213; *-tude*, 7, 3; 113; 214; *-ty*, 215; *-y*, 112.
(Latin), of adjectives: **-āx,** 291; **-ālis,** 293; **-ānus,** 114, 3; **-āris,** 293; **-bilis,** 292; **-icus,** 114, 2; **-idus,** 114, 1; **-ilis,** 292; **-īlis,** 71, 4; 113; 293; **-īnus,** 114, 3; **-īvus,** 114, 4; **-ōx,** 291; **-ōsus,** 114, 5.
of nouns: **-ella,** 46, 3; 71, 5; **-ia,** 112; 113; **-or,** 212; **-siō,** 216; **-sor,** 213; **-tās,** 215; **-tia,** 113; **-tiō,** 216; **-tor,** 213; **-tūdō,** 7, 3; 113; 214.
value of knowledge of, 115.
deus, Ap. 584.
Diana, 150; 152, 3; 235; 381.
Dictator, 304; 306, 3, 10; 491; 531, 7.
Difference, ablative of degree of, 448; 449; Ap. p. 480.
Direct address, 24, 8; 62*e*.
Direct object, accusative used for, 29; 50; 62*d*; Ap. p. 478.
clause used as, 536.
position of, 35, 1; 189, 2.
vs. predicate noun, 31.
diū, comparison of, 458, 3.
dō, vowel of present stem of, 51 note.
domus, declension of, 508; Ap. 584.
expression of place with, 509; 510; Ap. p. 480.
dum, participle substitute for temporal clause with, 569, 3.
used to introduce a temporal clause, 327; 328.
duo, 388, 2; Ap. 588.

ē (ex), as prefix, 548, 1; 549.
used to express place from which, 158, 2; 180, 2*b*.
used to express separation, 378; 379.
vs. **ex,** 158.
with cardinals and **quīdam,** 497, 2.
ēius, eōrum, eārum, *vs.* **suus,** 351, 3.

Emphasis, change in normal word order for, Int. V, 5; 189.
use of personal pronouns for, 130, 3; 348.
use of possessive adjectives for, 351, 2.
Empire of the East, 571; 572, 11.
Enclitic, Int. IV, 6*d*.
cum as, 228 note; 350.
definition of, Int. IV, 6*d*.
-ne as, 136, 1.
-que as, 244.
Endings, to show meaning, Int. V, 1; 6, 1.
English, how different from Latin, Int. V; 2, 2.
how influenced by Latin, Int. III.
how similar to Latin, 2, 1.
English progressive present, how expressed in Latin, 415; 569.
eō, 410; Ap. 607.
Epirus, p. 349; 462; 463, 2.
Ēridanus, 284; 286, 4, 5.
Ethiopians, 286, 2.
Etruria, p. 155; 262.
Etruscans, p. 155; 222; p. 217; 441; 442, 1.
etsī, concessive clauses introduced by, 528; 560; Ap. p. 482.

Fabius, 491; Fabian policy, 492, 10.
Fabricius, p. 363; 478.
faciō, source of English *-fy*, 573, 4.
translation of passive of, 382, 2.
Faustulus, 193.
Fifth declension, 408; Ap. 583.
fīlia, 54, 4; Ap. 584.
First conjugation, active, 41; Ap. 599.
passive, 230; 231; 243; Ap. 599.
See present indicative, etc.
First declension, gender of, 35, 2; 45, 3.
summary of, 56; 98; Ap. 579.
Forum, 152, 4; 153, 5; 332, 9.
Fourth conjugation, 377; Ap. 602; *see* present indicative, etc.
Fourth declension, 398; Ap. 582.
irregular dative and ablative of some nouns of, 398, 2.
Future indicative, of 1st conjugation, 135; 148; 230; Ap. 599.
of 2nd conjugation, 168; 230; Ap. 600.
of 3rd conjugation, 326, 1; 326, 1*d*; Ap. 601.
of **-iō** verbs of 3rd conjugation, 338, 3; Ap. 603.
of 4th conjugation, 377, 2; Ap. 602.
of **possum**, 317; Ap. 605.
of **sum**, 88; Ap. 604.
Future perfect indicative, of 1st conjugation, 147; 148; 243; Ap. 599.
of 2nd conjugation, 168; 243; Ap. 600.
of 3rd conjugation, 326, 1; Ap. 601.
of **-iō** verbs of 3rd conjugation, 338, 4; Ap. 603.
of 4th conjugation, Ap. 602.
of **possum**, 317; Ap. 605.
of **sum**, 316; Ap. 604.
tense sign of, 147, 4.
use of, 146.

Gaul, 24, 5; 541; p. 423; 553; 554, 2, 3, 9.
Geminī, *see* Castor (and Pollux).
Gender, grammatical in Latin, Int. V, 4; 2, 2*c*.
of 1st declension, 35, 2; 45, 3.
of 2nd declension, 65; 75.
of 3rd declension, 191.
of 4th declension, 398.
of 5th declension, 408.
of participles, 569, 1.
of the relative pronoun, 259; 260.
use of nounless adjective or of pronoun to indicate persons or things by, 206, 2; 301; 306, 1.
See agreement.
Genitive, of nouns with **mīlia**, 389; 497, 2; p. 478.
of possession, 10; 62*b*; Ap. p. 478.
of the whole, 497, 1; 498; Ap. p. 478.
position of, 189, 3.
shortened form of in **-ius, -ium** nouns, 87, 1, 3.
use of genitive of **hic, is, ille**, 351, 3.
Germany, Caesar in, 553.
-gintā, 492, 14.
Gladiatorial contests and gladiators, *see* Roman games.
Gracchus, Gaius, 513.
Sempronius, 513.
Tiberius, p. 389; 513; 514, 7, 8.
See Cornelia.
Greek proper names, 237, 4; 366, 4.
Greeks, Roman wars with the, 462; p. 349; 463, 3.

Hamilcar, 491.
Hannibal, 491; 492, 8.
Helen, 332, 1.
Helvetians, 553.
Herminius, 222.
hic, declension of, 298; Ap. 595.
use of genitive of, 351, 3.
used as adjective and pronoun, 299.
used as substitute for personal pronoun of 3rd person, 348.
used for contrast, 300.
used to indicate persons or things by gender, 301; 306, 1.
Hills of Rome, 224, 4; *See* Capitoline, Janiculum.
Hippomenes, p. 286; 381.
Horace, 571; 572, 8.
Horatius Cocles, 222.
Hostage, 479, 3.
hostīlis *vs.* **inimīcus,** 297, 2.
humus, expressions of place with, 509; 510; Ap. p. 480.

Icarus, *see* Daedalus (and Icarus).
īdem, declension of, 360; Ap. 595.
use of as adjective and pronoun, 362.
iēns, declension of, 568; Ap. 587.
ille, declension of, 298; Ap. 595.
special meaning of, 300.
use of genitive of, 351, 3.
used as adjective and pronoun, 299.
used as substitute for personal pronoun of 3rd person, 348.
used for contrast, 300.
used to indicate persons or things by gender, 301.
used to introduce a new sentence, 306, 6.
Imperative, present, irregular forms of, 326, 2.
of 1st conjugation, 126; 231; Ap. 599.
of 2nd conjugation, 169; 231; Ap. 600.
of 3rd conjugation, 326, 2; Ap. 601.
of **-iō** verbs of 3rd conjugation, Ap. 603.
of 4th conjugation, 377, 3; Ap. 602.
of **sum,** 316; Ap. 604.
position of verb in, 189, 8.
use of, 126.
imperātor, 531, 3; 563, 10; 571; 572, 5, 6.
Imperfect indicative, meaning of, 125.
of 1st conjugation, 125; 230; Ap. 599.
of 2nd conjugation, 168; 230; Ap. 600.
of 3rd conjugation, 326, 1; Ap. 601.
of **-iō** verbs of 3rd conjugation, 338, 2; Ap. 603.
of 4th conjugation, 377, 2; Ap. 602.
of **possum,** 317; Ap. 605.
of **sum,** 88; Ap. 604.
vs. perfect, 146.
in, as prefix, 333, 2; 548, 1; 549.
used to express place in which, 62*f*; 158, 1; 158, 3; 180, 2*a*.
used to express place into which, 158, 3; 180, 2*c*.
Indicative, in conditions, 500.
table for formation of tenses of indicative active 1st conjugation, 148.
use of, 126; Ap. p. 480.
Indirect object, dative used for, 50; 62*c*; Ap. p. 478.
position of, 189, 2.
Indirect statement, 536; 537; 538; 539; 560.
agreement of participles in infinitive forms in, 538, 2.
tenses of infinitives in, 537.
use of reflexive adjective and pronoun of 3rd person in, 538, 3.
Infinitives, *see* complementary, objective, subjective, indirect statement.
accusative subject of, 486; 536.
agreement of participles in, 538, 2.
formation of, 318; 326; 377, 4; 484; 526; Ap. 599–607.
tenses of, 526; 527, 1, 2.
use of in indirect statement, 536; 537.
Inflection, definition of, 61.
inquit, 24, 7.
Interrogative adjective, declension of, 137; 258; Ap. 598.
use of, 136; 137.
vs. interrogative pronoun, 137.
Interrogative adverb, use of, 136.
Interrogative pronoun, declension of, 137; Ap. 597.
use of, 136; 137.
use of **cum** as enclitic with, 228 note; 350.

Interrogative pronouns *vs.* interrogative adjective, 137.
vs. relative, 260.
-iō verbs of 3rd conjugation, 338; Ap. 603; *see* third conjugation, present indicative, etc.
ipse, declension of, 361; Ap. 595.
use as adjective and pronoun, 362.
vs. **suī,** 362.
is, declension of, 298; Ap. 595.
use of genitive of, 351, 3.
used as adjective and pronoun, 299.
used as substitute for personal pronoun of 3rd person, 348.
used to indicate persons or things by gender, 301.
vs. **suī,** 349, 3.
iter, declension of, Ap. 584.
iubeō, 488.

Janiculum Hill, 224, 4.
Janus, temple of, 571; 572, 7.
Jugurtha, 531, 2.
Julia, 562.
Juno, 150.
Jupiter, 150; 453, 9; 284; 330; 332, 5; 391; 429; 452; 453, 9.
Justinian, code of, p. 437.

Labyrinth, 341; 343, 4.
Lacedaemonians, 502; 503, 2.
Larēs, 453, 4.
Lars Porsena, *see* Porsena.
Lartius, 222.
Latin, how different from English, Int. V; 2, 2.
how like English, 2, 1.
parts of speech in, 2, 1*a*.
pronunciation of, Int. IV.
reasons for study of, Int. I.
Latin words and phrases used in English, Int. I, 1; 59, 3; 122, 3; 184, 3; 257, 3; 315, 3; 376, 3; 423, 3; 473, 3; 525, 3.
Latins, 330; 353; 355, 2; p. 349.
Latium, 195, 1; p. 144; p. 217; p. 232; 355, 2.
Latona, 235.
Lavinium, p. 139.
Līber, 452; 453, 2.
Līberalia, p. 340; 452; 453, 2.
Livy, 571; 572, 8.
Locative case, 509; 510; Ap. p. 480.
Maecenas, 571.
Magna Graecia, p. 349; 462; 463, 1.
mālō, 499; Ap. 606.
Manner, ablative of, 201; 202; Ap. p. 479.
Marcius, Gaius, 320.
Marius, Gaius, p. 403; 530; p. 411; 531, 2.
Mars, 150; 152, 2; 193; 195, 5.
Means, ablative of, 100; 101; Ap. p. 479.
Megareus, 381.
Mercury, 150; 364; 366, 6.
Metamorphoses, 237, 2; p. 198, 286, 5; p. 286.
mīlle, mīlia, declension of, 389; Ap. 588.
genitive of nouns with, 389; 497, 2.
Minerva, 150.
Minos, 341.
Minotaur, 341; 343, 4.
Mithridates, 530; 531, 5; 541.
mittō, followed by preposition with accusative, 355, 3.
Mucius, Gaius, 441.

Names, *see* vocative. *See* Roman names.
-ne, 136, 1; 180, 1*a*; *see* enclitic.
necesse est, subjective infinitive with, 527, 2.
Neptune, 150; 381.
Neuter, nominative and accusative alike, 75, 2; 200; 398, 4.
of **hic,** 298, 3.
neuter, 359; Ap. 588.
nihil, with genitive of the whole, 497, 1.
Niobe, 235; 237, 2, 4.
nisi, clauses introduced by, 500.
nōlō, 499; Ap. 606.
Nominative, as predicate noun or attribute complement, 2, 1*c*; 62*a*.
as subject, 2, 1*b*; 62*a*.
nōn, position of, 6, 2.
position of with complementary infinitive, 318, 1.
nōnne, 136, 2; 180, 1*b*.
Noun clauses, *see* substantive clauses.
Nouns, *see* attribute complement, case, first declension, etc., gender, predicate noun.
with corresponding masculine and feminine forms, 67.
nūllus, 359; Ap. 588.
Numa Pompilius, 26*a*.

Number, of adjectives, 2, 2*b*.
of nouns, 2, 1*d*.
of participles, 569, 1.
of relative pronoun, 259; 260.
of verbs, 2, 1*e*; 41; 62*g*.
See agreement.
Numerals, 388; Ap. 593.
cardinal, used with **dē, ex,** 497, 2.
Numidia, Jugurtha, king of, *see* Jugurtha.
Numitor, 193.
num, 136, 3; 180, 1*c*.

ob, as prefix, 548, 1; 549.
Object, *see* direct object, indirect object.
Objective infinitive, 488.
agreement of predicate adjective after, 489, 3.
subject accusative with, 489, 2.
with **volō, nōlō, mālō,** 499, 2.
Octavianus, *see* Augustus.
Olympus, 152, 1.
omnis, 497, 3.
Oracles, p. 286; 381; 382, 1; 412, 413, 2.
Order of words, Int. V, 5; 6, 1; 189.
in questions, 136.
position of subject common to a main and subordinate clause, 327; 474, 2(4).
Ordinals, *see* Numerals.
Orpheus, 330; 332, 2; p. 271; 364.
Ovid, 235; 237, 2; p. 198; p. 252; p. 271; p. 286; 571.

paedagōgus, 70, 6.
Paris, 332, 1.
Parts of speech in Latin and English, 2, 1*a*.
Participles, 567; 569; Ap. 599–607.
agreement of, 243, 1; 567, 2; 569, 1.
declension of perfect passive, 243, 2; 568, 2.
declension of present, 567; 568, 1; Ap. 587.
formation of, 567, 3.
future active, 316; 567, 2; 568, 2; 569.
perfect passive, use in formation of perfect tenses, 243; 569.
substitutes for, 569, 2, 3.
tenses of, 569.
those lacking in Latin, 567, 2.
translation of, 569, 2, 3, 4.
use of, 567, 1.
Passive voice, 229; 230; 243; *see* first conjugation, etc.; present indicative, etc.
Patricians, 322, 2.
pecūnia, 54, 6.
Perfect indicative, meaning of, 146.
of 1st conjugation, 147; 243; Ap. 599.
of 2nd conjugation, 168; 243; Ap. 600.
of 3rd conjugation, 326, 1; Ap. 601.
of **-iō** verbs of 3rd conjugation, 338, 4; Ap. 603.
of 4th conjugation, Ap. 602.
of **possum,** 317; Ap. 605.
of **sum,** 316; Ap. 604.
special personal endings of, 147.
stem of, 123; 147, 1.
used in clauses introduced by **postquam, simul atque, ubi,** 474, 2(1); 474, 2(1, 2); 475.
used in clauses introduced by **priusquam,** 474, 2(3); 476.
vs. imperfect, 146.
Person, 20; 41.
of relative pronoun, 259; 260.
of verb, 20; 41; 62*g*; 259.
Personal endings of verb, active, 41; 125; 135, 2; 147; 147, 2.
passive, 229.
use of, Int. V, 1; 20; 41.
Personal pronouns, **cum** as enclitic with, 228 note; 350.
not expressed, 20; 41; 348.
summary of, 351; Ap. 594.
Phaethon, 273; 284; 286, 2, 5.
Philippi, 571; 572, 3.
Phoebus, 275, 1; *see* Apollo.
Phoenicia, 491; 492, 2.
Place, adverbs of, 511.
Place from which, 158, 2; 180, 2*b*; 378.
with names of cities and towns, **domus, rūs,** 509, 1; 510, 3; Ap. p. 480.
Place in which, expressed by the ablative, 62*f*; 158, 1; 180, 2*a*.
expressed by the locative, 509, 3; 510, 1; Ap. p. 480.
Place to which, accusative of, 158, 3; 180, 2*c*.
with names of cities and towns, **domus, rūs,** 509, 2; 510, 2; Ap. p. 480.

Plebeians, 320; 322, 2, 3; 513.
Pluperfect indicative, of 1st conjugation, 147; 243; Ap. 599.
of 2nd conjugation, 168; 243; Ap. 600.
of 3rd conjugation, 326, 15; Ap. 601.
of **-iō** verbs of 3rd conjugation, 338, 4; Ap. 603.
of 4th conjugation, Ap. 602.
of **possum**, 317; Ap. 605.
of **sum**, 316; Ap. 604.
stem of, 123.
tense sign of, 147, 3.
use of, 146.
Plural of nouns, 2, 1*d*.
plūs, declension of, 450.
Pluto, 364.
Pollux, *see* Castor.
Pompey, Int. II; 541; 542, 4, 8; p. 429; 562.
Pont du Gard, 247, 4.
Pontus, Mithridates, king of; *see* Mithridates.
Porsena, Lars, p. 155; 222; 441; 442, 1.
Positive, of the adjective, 424, 1.
Possession, genitive of, 10; 62*b*; Ap. p. 478.
use of possessive adjectives, 11; 351.
Possessive adjectives, agreement of, 11; 62*h*; 351, 2; Ap. p. 477.
list of, 351, 1, 3.
no possessive adjective for non-reflexive pronoun of 3rd person, 351, 3.
not expressed, 35, 3; 351, 2.
position of, 189, 3.
Possessive pronouns, how expressed in Latin, 11.
possum, 317; Ap. 605.
with a passive infinitive, used impersonally, how translated, 343, 5; *see* present indicative, etc.
post, with ablative of degree of difference, 453, 8; 503, 3.
with accusative, Ap. p. 479.
Postpositive, definition of, 237, 1.
postquam, 474, 2 (1, 2); 475.
substitute for clauses with, 569, 3.
Postumius, Aulus, 330.
prae, 382, 10; 549; 563, 7.
Predicate adjectives, *see* adjectives.
Predicate noun, nominative used for, 2, 1*c*; 62*a*.
position of, 189, 2.
vs. appositive, 77.
vs. direct object, 31.
Prefixes, English, *see* derivatives.
Latin, verb, 547; 548; 549.
Prepositions, summary of, with ablative, Ap. p. 480.
with accusative, Ap. p. 479.
Present indicative, of 1st conjugation, 41; 230; Ap. 599.
of 2nd conjugation, 168; 230; Ap. 600.
of 3rd conjugation, 326, 1; Ap. 601.
of **-iō** verbs of 3rd conjugation, 338, 1; Ap. 603.
of 4th conjugation, 377, 1; Ap. 602.
of **possum**, 317; Ap. 605.
of **sum**, 19; Ap. 604.
translation of, 41.
use in **dum** clauses, 327; 328.
Principal parts of verbs, 123.
priusquam, 474, 2; 474, 2(3); 476
prō, as prefix, 549.
Procas, 193.
proeliō, an ablative of means, 224, 2.
prohibeō, 488.
Pronouns, *see* agreement, demonstrative, interrogative, personal, possessive, reflexive, relative.
summary of personal and reflexive, and possessive adjectives, 351.
Proserpina, 364.
Punic Wars, p. 370; 491; 492, 5; p. 380; 502; p. 389.
Pyrrhus, p. 349; 462; 463, 3; p. 363; p. 370.
Pyrrhic victory, 462, 463, 5; 478.

Quaestors, 530; 531, 3.
quam, ablative with **quam** omitted, 438, 439.
to express comparison, 426, 1; 427.
with a superlative, 554, 6.
-que, *see* enclitic.
Questions, how answered, 138.
how introduced, 136; 180, 1*a*, *b*, *c*.
position of verb in, 189, 8.
See **-ne, nōnne, num.**
quī, quae, quod, *see* relative pronoun.
quīdam, used with **dē, ex**, 497, 2.
Quirītes, 204; 206, 5.
quod, used to introduce a causal clause, 302, 1, 2.

re, as prefix, 549.
red = re, 548, 2.
Reflexive adjective, **suus** *vs.* **ēius, eārum, eōrum,** 351, 3.
use in indirect statement, 538, 3.
Reflexive pronoun, 349; Ap. 594.
corresponding possessive adjective for, 351, 1.
cum as enclitic with, 350.
suī *vs.* **is,** 349, 3.
use in indirect statement, 538, 3.
Relative clause, 259; 302; 559; 560.
substitute for, 569.
Relative pronoun, agreement of, 259.
cum as enclitic with, 228 note; 350.
declension of, 258; Ap. 596.
use of, 259.
vs. interrogative pronoun, 260.
Remus, *see* Romulus.
rēs pūblica, 514, 5.
Rhea Silvia, 193.
Roman books, 70, 4.
Roman city houses and their furnishings, 90; 92, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7; 453, 4.
Roman day, 453, 3.
Roman dress, 54, 1, 2, 3; 70, 2, 3; 306, 7; 430, 8; *see also* **bulla, toga.**
Roman education, 70, 1; p. 340.
Roman farming and agriculture, p. 53; 81, 2, 3, 5.
Roman forms of greeting and farewell, 70, 7.
Roman games, 160; 162, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9; 171; 173, 2, 3, 6, 8, 9.
Roman government and administration, 264, 5; 306, 3, 10; 322, 3; 514, 9; 531, 3; *see* consuls, dictator, etc.
Roman history, as republic, p. 349; 491; p. 370; p. 403; p. 411; p. 429; p. 437.
as empire, p. 437; 571; 572, 4, 5, 11.
Roman laws and customs, p. 340; 452; 453, 6; 463, 4; 479, 3; 563, 2, 4; 572, 7.
Roman legendary history, p. 11; p. 188; 193; 195, 7; 262; 262, 4; p. 349; 491. *See chapters* XX (*Romulus and Remus*), XXI (*The Sabine Women*), XXIII (*Horatius*), XXVII (*The Kings of Rome and Brutus*), XXXI (*Cincinnatus*), XXXIII (*Coriolanus*), XXXIV (*Castor and Pollux*), XXXVI (*Decii*), XL (*Sibylline Books*), XLII (*Mettius Curtius*), XLV (*Mucius Scaevola*).
Roman letters, 70, 5.
Roman meals, 45, 2.
Roman myths, *see chapters* XXIV (*Niobe*), XXVIII–XXIX (*Phaethon*), XXXV (*Daedalus and Icarus*), XXXVII (*Orpheus and Eurydice*), XXXIX (*Atalanta*).
Roman names, 35, 4; 264, 3.
Roman night, division into watches, 403, 13.
Roman overseers, p. 18; 81, 1.
Roman provinces, 24, 4; 491; 492, 13; 554, 2, 3, 8; 571.
Roman religion, p. 102; 150; 152, 1, 2, 3; 195, 3, 4, 5; 235; 237, 3; 275, 1; 332, 3, 4, 5; p. 259; 364; 366, 6; p. 286; 382, 1; p. 295; 392, 4; 453, 2, 4. *See* Apollo, Diana, Jupiter, Latona, Vesta, oracles, etc.
Roman roads, 24, 6; p. 174; 245; 247, 1, 2, 3, 5; 322, 4.
Roman shops, 54, 5.
Roman slaves, 45, 1; p. 53; 81, 6.
Roman social classes, *see also* slaves; 322, 2, 3.
Roman triumph, p. 324; 429; 430, 1, 3, 8, 9.
Roman villas, p. 18; p. 53.
Roman warfare, p. 69; 103; 402.
armor, 105, 3, 4, 5.
army, 403, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10.
camps, 105, 1, 2; 402; 403, 12.
method of battle, 403, 15; 492, 5.
standard, 403, 14.
Roman writing materials, 70, 5; *see* Roman letters.
Romans, Int. II; books about the, Int. II.
Rome, economic condition of, p. 389; 513; 572, 14.
legacy of, p. 11; p. 423; p. 437.
See Roman history, Roman legendary history.
Romulus (and Remus), 152, 2; p. 139; 193; 195, 7; 204; 206, 1, 4; 262.
Rostra, 152, 4.
Rubicon, 562; 563, 3.
rūs, expression of place with, 509; 510; Ap. p. 480.

Sabines, p. 144; 204; 206, 4, 5; 295; 297, 4; p. 214; p. 217.

Sacra via, 430, 5.
Samnites, 353; p. 349.
satis, 497, 1.
Scipio, Africanus, 491; 492, 11, 16; 513.
Minor, 492, 16; 530.
Second conjugation, active, 167; 168; 169; Ap. 600.
passive, 230; 231; 243; Ap. 600.
See present indicative, etc.
Second declension (nouns), 65; 75; 87; 98; Ap. 580.
Senate, Roman, 430, 3; 442, 4; 514, 9; 531, 7.
decline of power of, p. 411; 541.
senex, declension of, Ap. 584.
Separation, ablative of, 378; 379; Ap. p. 480.
Servius Tullius, 262; 264, 2.
sī, clauses introduced by, 500; 560; Ap. p. 482.
Sibyl, p. 295; 391.
Sibylline books, 391; 392, 4.
Sicily, 491; 492, 4.
simul atque, 474, 2 (1, 2); 475.
sōlus, 359; Ap. 588.
Space, accusative of extent of, 399; 400; Ap. p. 479.
Spain, 491; 492, 7, 13; 571.
Specification, ablative of, 459; 460; Ap. p. 480.
Stems, of nouns: 217; 218; 398; 408.
of verbs: definition, 41.
present, 123; 124; 125; 135, 1; 167; 168; 326, 1; 338; 377; 410, 1; 567, 3.
perfect, 123; 147, 1; 167; 168; 326, 1.
participial, 123.
sub, as prefix, 548, 1; 549.
Subject, accusative in indirect statement, 536; 539.
accusative with objective infinitive, 489, 2.
clause used as, 536.
nominative used for, 2, 1*b*; 62*a*.
position of, 189, 2.
position of when common to a principal and subordinate clause, 327, 474, 2(4).
with subjective infinitive, 489, 4.
Subjective infinitive, 485; 486; 489, 4; 527, 2.
Subordinate clause, *see* clause.
position of, 264, 8.
Substantive clause, 536; 560.
Suffixes, English and Latin, *see* derivatives.
suī, *vs.* **ipse,** 362.
vs. **is,** 349, 3.
Sulla, Lucius Cornelius, p. 403; 530; p. 411; 541.
dictator, 531, 7.
proscriptions of, 530; 531, 6.
sum, Int. V, 5; 6, 4; 20; 35, 1; 88; 189, 7; 243; 316; 569; Ap. 604.
Superlative, declension of, 425.
definition of, 424, 1.
formation of, 424, 2.
of adverbs, 458, 1.
of **-er** adjectives, 436.
of **-lis** adjectives, 437; 442, 5.
translation of, 426, 3.
translation of with **quam,** 554, 6.
with genitive of the whole, 497, 1.
suus, use in indirect statement, 538, 3.
vs. **ēius, eārum, eōrum,** 351, 3.
vs. genitive forms of **hic, is, ille,** 351, 3.
Syllables, division into, Int. IV, 4.
quantity of, Int. IV, 5.
Synopsis, definition of, 155.
Syntax, definition of, 62.
summary of rules of, Ap. pp. 477–482.

tablīnum, 92, 6.
Tarentum, 463, 1; 478.
Tarquins, p. 188; 572, 6.
Tarquinius Priscus, 262.
Tarquinius Superbus, p. 155; 262; 330; p. 295; 391.
Tellūs, 284.
Temporal clauses, 327; 328; 474; 475; 476; 559; 560; Ap. p. 482;
participles substitute for, 569.
see **dum, priusquam, postquam, simul atque, ubi.**
Tense, *see* present, imperfect, etc.; infinitives, participles, etc.
definition of, 20.
table of tenses, 148.
Tense sign, lacking in future of 3rd conjugation, 326, 1*c*.
of future, 135, 3, 4.
of future perfect, 147, 4.
of imperfect, 125.
of pluperfect, 147, 3.

Teutonēs, 530.
That, untranslated, 538, 1.
Thebes, 235.
Theodosius, 572, 11.
Theseus, 343, 4.
Third conjugation, active and passive, 326, 1; Ap. 601; **-iō** verbs of, 338; Ap. 603.
See present indicative, etc.
Third declension, adjectives, of the, 269; 280; Ap. 586.
nouns of, 191; 200; 217; 218; Ap. 581.
Time, duration of, 399; 400; Ap. p. 479.
when or within which, 270; 271; 399; Ap. p. 479.
Titus Tatius, 204; 206, 4.
toga, pīcta, 430, 8.
praetexta, 70, 2; p. 340; 452.
vīrīlis, 70, 2; 306, 7; p. 340; 452.
tōtus, 359; 497, 3; Ap. 588.
Trajan, Int. II.
trāns as prefix, 549.
trā = trāns, 548, 3.
Translation, suggestions for, 35, 5; 185–190; 264, 8.
of participles, 569, 2.
of present tense, 41; 569.
trēs, 388, 2; Ap. 588; Ap. 593.
Tribunes, 322, 3.
Triumvirate, First, 541; 542, 8.
Trojan War, p. 139; 332, 1.
tuba, 105, 6.
Tullus Hostilius, 262.

ubi, 474, 2(1, 2); 475.
participle substitute for clause with, 569, 3.
ūllus, 359; Ap. 588.
ūnus, 359; Ap. 588.
uter, 359; Ap. 588.
uterque, 359; Ap. 588.

Valerius, 262; 264, 6.
Veneti, 553.
Venus, p. 286; 381.
Verbs, *see* first conjugation, etc., active, passive, imperative, participles, infinitives, tense, present indicative, etc.
agreement of, 2, 1*e*; 62*g*; with relative pronoun subject, 259, end.
compound, 339; 352.
conjugations of, Ap. 599–607; how distinguished, 124.
irregular, Ap. 604–607.
personal endings of, *see* personal endings.
position of, Int. V, 5; 35, 1; 189, 2.
position of modifiers of, 189, 2.
syntax of, Ap. p. 480.
transitive, definition of, 29.
verbs and expressions meaning *trust,* 413, 4.
with dative, 413, 4; 563, 7.
Vercingetorix, 553.
Vergil, 571; 572, 8.
Vesta, 150; 195, 3.
Vestal Virgins, 193; 195, 4.
Veturia, 320.
Via Appia, 245; 247, 5.
videō, 382, 11.
vītae, 70, 8.
Vocative, of 1st declension, 24, 8.
of **-ius,** nouns of 2nd declension, 87, 2.
of 3rd declension, 191, 6.
of **meus,** 81, 4.
of neuter nouns of 2nd declension, 75, 3.
of proper names in **-ius,** 87, 2.
position of, 24, 8; 189, 6.
of **-us** nouns of 2nd declension, 65, 4.
use of, 24, 8; 62*e*; Ap. p. 479.
volō, 409, 488, Ap. 606.
Volscians, p. 217; 320; 322, 1; p. 349.
Volumnia, 320.
Vowels, quantity of, Int. IV, 3.
Vowel changes in compounds, 339; 352.
Vowel stems, 217.
ablative singular endings of, 217, 2, 3.
3rd declension adjectives with, 269, 1, 2.
rules for recognizing, 218.
with accusative in **im,** 217, 2.
Vulcan, 150; 273.
Vulso, 502.

Whole, genitive of the, 497, 1; 498.
With, translations of, 219.